



# Learning Mandarin Chinese

xué  
學  
学

learn practice  
to learn

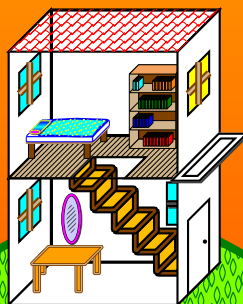
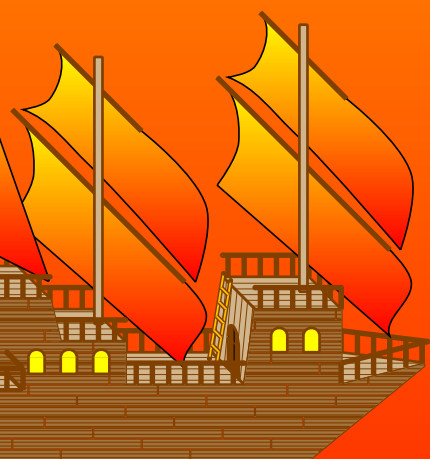
xí  
習  
习

zhōng  
中  
中


center composition  
Chinese Language

wén  
文  
文

Daniel J. Greenhoe



*Middle Kingdom Rosetta Stone series*

Note: The elephant and “super hero” images appearing on the front cover have been adapted from  (1996–\*) *Animation Factory* (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>).







title: *Learning Mandarin Chinese*  
document type: book  
series: *Middle Kingdom Rosetta Stone*  
volume: 1  
author: Daniel J. Greenhoe  
version: VERSION 1.20  
time stamp: 2018 January 17 (Wednesday) 02:48am UTC  
copyright: Copyright © 2018 Daniel J. Greenhoe. All rights reserved.  
license: [Creative Commons](#) license [CC BY-NC-ND 4.0](#)  
document url: <https://www.researchgate.net/project/Language-Toolbox>  
TECkit maps: <https://github.com/dgreenhoe/teckitmaps>  
<https://github.com/dgreenhoe/unihan>

Copyright © 2018 Daniel J. Greenhoe  
All rights reserved

*“Here, on the level sand,  
Between the sea and land,  
What shall I build or write  
Against the fall of night?”*



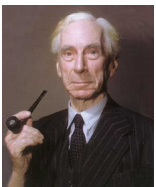
*“Tell me of runes to grave  
That hold the bursting wave,  
Or bastions to design  
For longer date than mine.”*

Alfred Edward Housman, English poet (1859–1936) <sup>1</sup>



*“The uninitiated imagine that one must await inspiration in order to create. That is a mistake. I am far from saying that there is no such thing as inspiration; quite the opposite. It is found as a driving force in every kind of human activity, and is in no wise peculiar to artists. But that force is brought into action by an effort, and that effort is work. Just as appetite comes by eating so work brings inspiration, if inspiration is not discernible at the beginning.”*

Igor Fyodorovich Stravinsky (1882–1971), Russian-born composer <sup>2</sup>



*“As I think about acts of integrity and grace, I realise that there is nothing in my knowledge to compare with Frege's dedication to truth. His entire life's work was on the verge of completion, much of his work had been ignored to the benefit of men infinitely less capable, his second volume was about to be published, and upon finding that his fundamental assumption was in error, he responded with intellectual pleasure clearly submerging any feelings of personal disappointment. It was almost superhuman and a telling indication of that of which men are capable if their dedication is to creative work and knowledge instead of cruder efforts to dominate and be known.”*

Bertrand Russell (1872–1970), British mathematician, in a 1962 November 23 letter to Dr. van Heijenoort. <sup>3</sup>



- 
- <sup>1</sup> quote: 📖 [Housman \(1936\): \*More Poems\*](#), page 64 (“Smooth Between Sea and Land”),  
📖 [Hardy \(1940\): \*A Mathematician's Apology\*](#) (section 7)  
image: <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Housman.jpg>
- <sup>2</sup> quote: 📖 [Ewen \(1961\): \*The New Book of Modern Composers\*](#), page 408,  
📖 [Ewen \(1950\): \*The Book of Modern Composers\*](#)  
image: [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Igor\\_Stravinsky.jpg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Igor_Stravinsky.jpg)
- <sup>3</sup> quote: 📖 [Heijenoort \(1967\): \*From Frege to Gödel : A Source Book\*](#), page 127  
image: <http://www-history.mcs.st-andrews.ac.uk/PictDisplay/Russell.html>



<b>Front matter</b>	<b>i</b>
Front cover . . . . .	i
Title page . . . . .	v
Copyright and typesetting . . . . .	vi
Quotes . . . . .	vii
Contents . . . . .	ix
 <b>Main matter</b>	 <b>1</b>
<b>1 Graphemes of Mandarin Chinese</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Language scripts . . . . .	1
1.2 Chinese glyphs . . . . .	3
1.3 Onomatopoeia characters . . . . .	5
1.4 Radicals . . . . .	8
<b>2 Phonemes of Mandarin Chinese</b>	<b>13</b>
2.1 Languages . . . . .	13
2.2 Consonants and Vowels . . . . .	13
2.3 Phonetic Systems . . . . .	15
2.3.1 PinYin . . . . .	18
2.3.2 ZhuYin . . . . .	18
2.4 Caveats . . . . .	19
2.5 Some vocabulary . . . . .	20
<b>3 Phones of Mandarin Chinese</b>	<b>21</b>
3.1 How many phones do you have? . . . . .	21
3.2 Spoken Chinese . . . . .	21
<b>4 Grammar</b>	<b>29</b>
4.1 Personal pronouns . . . . .	29
4.2 Quantifiers . . . . .	31
4.3 Adjectives . . . . .	35
4.4 Questions . . . . .	36
4.5 Conditionals . . . . .	38
4.6 Conjunctions . . . . .	38
4.7 Interjections . . . . .	42
4.8 Prepositional phrases . . . . .	42
4.9 More . . . . .	43
4.10 Similes . . . . .	44
<b>5 Verbs</b>	<b>45</b>
5.1 Sentence structure . . . . .	45
5.2 Number and tense . . . . .	46
5.3 Aspect . . . . .	48

5.4	(Verb) around	51
5.5	(Verb) it down	51
<b>6</b>	<b>Negation</b>	<b>53</b>
6.1	Simple negation	53
6.2	Success and failure in verbs.	54
6.3	Double negation	56
6.4	Emphasizing negation	57
<b>7</b>	<b>Adverbs</b>	<b>59</b>
7.1	Degree of Precision	59
7.2	Adverbial phrases	60
<b>8</b>	<b>Time</b>	<b>65</b>
8.1	Absolute time	65
8.2	Relative time	69
8.3	Rates of time	70
8.4	Occurance	72
8.5	Progressive events	72
8.6	Multiple events	73
8.7	Quantifiers for time	75
<b>9</b>	<b>Simple conversation</b>	<b>77</b>
9.1	Greetings	77
9.2	Introductions	78
9.3	Civilities	79
9.4	Communications	82
<b>10</b>	<b>On the Move</b>	<b>87</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>The Heart of Man</b>	<b>91</b>
11.1	Emotions	91
11.2	Character	95
11.3	Thought processes	98
11.4	The will	99
<b>12</b>	<b>Work and Rest</b>	<b>101</b>
12.1	Work	101
12.2	Rest	104

## Appendices 109

<b>A</b>	<b>Grammar Terminology</b>	<b>109</b>
<b>B</b>	<b>Numbers</b>	<b>113</b>
<b>C</b>	<b>Songs</b>	<b>117</b>
C.1	Old McDonald	118
C.2	1 2 3 Fish	120
C.3	Head Shoulders Knees and Toes	122
C.4	Bright Moon	123
C.5	Amazing Grace	126
C.6	You are my flower	128
<b>D</b>	<b>Names</b>	<b>131</b>
D.1	Family Names	131
D.2	Characters for male names	134
D.3	Characters for female names	136
D.4	Characters for either male or female names	137
D.5	Famous names	138
D.6	Non-Chinese names	140

<b>E Mathematics</b>	<b>143</b>
E.1 Branches	143
E.2 Arithmetic	145
E.3 Sets	146
E.4 Spaces	146
E.5 Relations	147
<b>F Font Information</b>	<b>149</b>
F.1 Typesetting engine	149
F.2 Latin fonts	150
F.3 IPA typesetting	150
F.4 PinYin typesetting	150
F.5 Traditional Chinese typesetting	151
F.6 Ruby characters	151
F.7 Simplified Chinese typesetting	152
F.8 Generating the zht2zhs TECKit map file	153
F.9 Default bullet	153
<b>Back Matter</b>	<b>155</b>
References	155
Reference Index	165
Chinese Character Index	167
PinYin Index	169
English Word Index	171
General Index	173
License	173
End of document	173





# CHAPTER 1

## GRAPHEMES OF MANDARIN CHINESE

### 1.1 Language scripts

Many spoken languages also have written forms, which express information in terms of symbols, called *graphemes*. Linguists roughly classify written languages into two categories based on the graphemes that they use:

- ① *phonograms* (or *phonographs*)    symbols represent sounds
- ② *logogram* (or *logographs*)        graphemes represent words

The advantage of a phonogram is that it is somewhat easier to know how a grapheme “sounds”, but relatively more difficult to know what it means. The advantage of a logogram is that it is somewhat easier to know what a grapheme means, but relatively more difficult to know how it “sounds”.

Examples of Phonographic languages include all the written languages based on the *Latin alphabet* such as English, German, Spanish, French, etc., as well as Greek and other languages. One of the most famous examples, howbeit not currently in common use, of a logograph is *Egyptian hieroglyphics*, a language that the entire world forgot how to read until the discovery of the *Rosetta Stone* by Napoleon’s troops and subsequent decipherment by *Thomas Young* and *Jean-Francois Champollion*.

*Example 1.1* (U.S. National Park Service). And the *U.S. National Park Service* uses a kind of logographic language, as illustrated in Figure 1.1 (page 2).<sup>1</sup>

In any written language (a script), each basic written picture is called a **grapheme**. In English, a grapheme is usually called a “letter”. In Chinese, a grapheme is usually called a “character”. In general there are many ways to render (or draw) any given grapheme. Each such rendering is called a **glyph**.

*Example 1.2* (The “a” grapheme).

In English, all these **glyphs** (font typefaces) represent the same **grapheme** (character):

Œ, œ, a, ɑ, ɑ, a

*Example 1.3* (The 山 grapheme).<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:National\\_Park\\_Service\\_sample\\_pictographs.svg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:National_Park_Service_sample_pictographs.svg)

<sup>2</sup> FireFly font: 山; UKai font: 山; Han Wang CC02 font: 山; HanWangKanDaYan font: 山;



Figure 1.1: Pictographs used by the U.S. National Park Service

E  
X

In Chinese, all of these **glyphs** (font typefaces) represent the same **grapheme** (character):

山, 山, 山, 山, 山, 山, 山, 山

**Example 1.4** (Egyptian Hieroglyphs). <sup>3</sup> The English **script** is mostly *phonetic*. The Chinese **script** is mostly *ideographic*. Egyptian Hieroglyphics combines

- phonetic graphemes (e.g. 𐀀="h" sound, 𐀁="n" sound, 𐀂="w" sound) and
- ideographic graphemes (e.g. 𐀃=liquid, 𐀄=jubilation, 𐀅=man, 𐀆=woman, |||=plural)

Here are some examples:

E  
X

- |    |           |  |             |
|----|-----------|--|-------------|
| 1. | 𐀀 𐀁 𐀂 𐀃   | = h+n+w+liquid                               | = beer pot  |
| 2. | 𐀀 𐀁 𐀂 𐀄   | = h+n+w+jubilation                           | = rejoicing |
| 3. | 𐀀 𐀁 𐀂 𐀅 𐀆 | = h+n+w+(man and woman over a plural symbol) | = neighbors |

**Example 1.5** (Assorted scripts). Here are some examples of scripts and graphemes belonging to those scripts:

E  
X

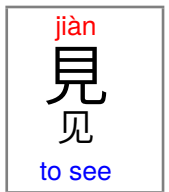
- |    |   |        |
|----|---|--------|
| 1. | ΑΒΓΔΕΖΗΘΙ...ΤΥΦΧΨΩ αβγδεζηθικλμνξοπρστυφχψω   | Greek  |
| 2. | A B C D E F G H I ... U V W X Y Z a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z   | Latin  |
| 3. | א ב ג ד ה ו ז ח ט י כ ל מ נ ס ע פ צ ק ר ש ת וו אבגדהוזחטיךכלםמן   | Hebrew |
| 4. | ذ ر ز س ش ض ط ظ ع غ ا ب ت ث ج ح خ د   | Arabic |
| 5. | ᜆ ᜇ ᜈ ᜉ ᜊ ᜋ ᜌ ᜍ ᜎ ᜏ ᜐ ᜑ ᜒ ᜓ ᜔ ᜕ ᜖ ᜗ ᜘ ᜙ ᜚ ᜛ ᜜ ᜝ ᜞ ᜟ ᜠ ᜡ ᜢ ᜣ ᜤ ᜥ ᜦ ᜧ ᜨ ᜩ ᜪ ᜫ ᜬ ᜭ ᜮ ᜯ ᜰ ᜱ ᜲ ᜳ ᜴ ᜵ ᜶ ᜷ ᜸ ᜹ ᜺ ᜻ ᜼ ᜽ ᜾ ᜿ ᝀ ᝁ ᝂ ᝃ ᝄ ᝅ ᝆ ᝇ ᝈ ᝉ ᝊ ᝋ ᝌ ᝍ ᝎ ᝏ ᝐ ᝑ ᝒ ᝓ ᝔ ᝕ ᝖ ᝗ ᝘ ᝙ ᝚ ᝛ ᝜ ᝝ ᝞ ᝟ ᝠ ᝡ ᝢ ᝣ ᝤ ᝥ ᝦ ᝧ ᝨ ᝩ ᝪ ᝫ ᝬ ᝭ ᝮ ᝯ ᝰ ᝱ ᝲ ᝳ ᝴ ᝵ ᝶ ᝷ ᝸ ᝹ ᝺ ᝻ ᝼ ᝽ ᝿ ក ខ គ ឃ ង ច ឆ ជ ឈ ញ ដ ឋ ឌ ឍ ណ ត ថ ទ ធ ន ប ផ ព ភ ម យ រ ល វ ឝ ឞ ស ហ ឡ អ ឣ ឤ ឥ ឦ ឧ ឨ ឩ ឪ ឫ ឬ ឭ ឮ ឯ ឰ ឱ ឲ ឳ ឴ ឵ ា ិ ី ឹ ឺ ុ ូ ួ ឿ ៀ េ ែ ៃ ោ ៅ ំ ះ ៈ ៉ ៊ ់ ៌ ៍ ៎ ៏ ័ ៑ ្ ៓ ។ ៕ ៖ ៗ ៘ ៙ ៚ ៛ ៜ ៝ ៞ ៟ ០ ១ ២ ៣ ៤ ៥ ៦ ៧ ៨ ៩ ៪ ៫ ៬ ៭ ៮ ៯ ៰ ៱ ៲ ៳ ៴ ៵ ៶ ៷ ៸ ៹ ៺ ៻ ៼ ៽ ៿ ᠀ ᠁ ᠂ ᠃ ᠄ ᠅ ᠆ ᠇ ᠈ ᠉ ᠊ ᠋ ᠌ ᠍ ᠎ ᠏ ᠐ ᠑ ᠒ ᠓ ᠔ ᠕ ᠖ ᠗ ᠘ ᠙ ᠚ ᠛ ᠜ ᠝ ᠞ ᠟ ᠠ ᠡ ᠢ ᠣ ᠤ ᠥ ᠦ ᠨ ᠬ ᠭ ᠰ ᠴ ᠷ ᠺ ᠻ ᠼ ᠾ ᠿ ᡀ ᡁ ᡂ ᡃ ᡄ ᡅ ᡆ ᡇ ᡈ ᡉ ᡊ ᡋ ᡌ ᡍ ᡎ ᡏ ᡐ ᡑ ᡒ ᡓ ᡔ ᡕ ᡖ ᡗ ᡘ ᡙ ᡚ ᡛ ᡜ ᡝ ᡞ ᡟ ᡠ ᡡ ᡢ ᡣ ᡤ ᡥ ᡦ ᡧ ᡨ ᡩ ᡪ ᡫ ᡬ ᡭ ᡮ ᡯ ᡰ ᡱ ᡲ ᡳ ᡴ ᡵ ᡶ ᡷ ᡸ ᡹ ᡺ ᡻ ᡼ ᡽ ᡿ ᢀ ᢁ ᢂ ᢃ ᢄ ᢅ ᢆ ᢇ ᢈ ᢉ ᢊ ᢋ ᢌ ᢍ ᢎ ᢏ ᢐ ᢑ ᢒ ᢓ ᢔ ᢕ ᢖ ᢗ ᢘ ᢙ ᢚ ᢛ ᢜ ᢝ ᢞ ᢟ ᢠ ᢡ ᢢ ᢣ ᢤ ᢥ ᢦ ᢧ ᢨ ᢩ ᢪ ᢫ ᢬ ᢭ ᢮ ᢯ ᢰ ᢱ ᢲ ᢳ ᢴ ᢵ ᢶ ᢷ ᢸ ᢹ ᣀ ᣁ ᣂ ᣃ ᣄ ᣅ ᣆ ᣇ ᣈ ᣉ ᣊ ᣋ ᣌ ᣍ ᣎ ᣏ ᣐ ᣑ ᣒ ᣓ ᣔ ᣕ ᣖ ᣗ ᣘ ᣙ ᣚ ᣛ ᣜ ᣝ ᣞ ᣟ ᣠ ᣡ ᣢ ᣣ ᣤ ᣥ ᣦ ᣧ ᣨ ᣩ ᣪ ᣫ ᣬ ᣭ ᣮ ᣯ ᣰ ᣱ ᣲ ᣳ ᣴ ᣵ ᣶ ᣷ ᣸ ᣹ ᣺ ᣻ ᣼ ᣽ ᣾ ᣿ ᤀ ᤁ ᤂ ᤃ ᤄ ᤅ ᤆ ᤇ ᤈ ᤉ ᤊ ᤋ ᤌ ᤍ ᤎ ᤏ ᤐ ᤑ ᤒ ᤓ ᤔ ᤕ ᤖ ᤗ ᤘ ᤙ ᤚ ᤛ ᤜ ᤝ ᤞ ᤟ ᤠ ᤡ ᤢ ᤣ ᤤ ᤥ ᤦ ᤧ ᤨ ᤩ ᤪ ᤫ ᤬ ᤭ ᤮ ᤯ ᤰ ᤱ ᤲ ᤳ ᤴ ᤵ ᤶ ᤷ ᤸ ᤹ ᥀ ᥁ ᥂ ᥃ ᥄ ᥅ ᥆ ᥇ ᥈ ᥉ ᥊ ᥋ ᥌ ᥍ ᥎ ᥏ ᥐ ᥑ ᥒ ᥓ ᥔ ᥕ ᥖ ᥗ ᥘ ᥙ ᥚ ᥛ ᥜ ᥝ ᥞ ᥟ ᥠ ᥡ ᥢ ᥣ ᥤ ᥥ ᥦ ᥧ ᥨ ᥩ ᥪ ᥫ ᥬ ᥭ ᥮ ᥯ ᥰ ᥱ ᥲ ᥳ ᥴ ᥵ ᥶ ᥷ ᥸ ᥹ ᥺ ᥻ ᥼ ᥽ ᥿ ᦀ ᦁ ᦂ ᦃ ᦄ ᦅ ᦆ ᦇ ᦈ ᦉ ᦊ ᦋ ᦌ ᦍ ᦎ ᦏ ᦐ ᦑ ᦒ ᦓ ᦔ ᦕ ᦖ ᦗ ᦘ ᦙ ᦚ ᦛ ᦜ ᦝ ᦞ ᦟ ᦠ ᦡ ᦢ ᦣ ᦤ ᦥ ᦦ ᦧ ᦨ ᦩ ᦪ ᦫ ᦬ ᦭ ᦮ ᦯ ᦰ ᦱ ᦲ ᦳ ᦴ ᦵ ᦶ ᦷ ᦸ ᦹ ᦺ ᦻ ᦼ ᦽ ᦿ ᧀ ᧁ ᧂ ᧃ ᧄ ᧅ ᧆ ᧇ ᧈ ᧉ ᧊ ᧋ ᧌ ᧍ ᧎ ᧏ ᧐ ᧑ ᧒ ᧓ ᧔ ᧕ ᧖ ᧗ ᧘ ᧙ ᧚ ᧛ ᧜ ᧝ ᧞ ᧟ ᧠ ᧡ ᧢ ᧣ ᧤ ᧥ ᧦ ᧧ ᧨ ᧩ ᧪ ᧫ ᧬ ᧭ ᧮ ᧯ ᧰ ᧱ ᧲ ᧳ ᧴ ᧵ ᧶ ᧷ ᧸ ᧹ ᧺ ᧻ ᧼ ᧽ ᧿ ᨀ ᨁ ᨂ ᨃ ᨄ ᨅ ᨆ ᨇ ᨈ ᨉ ᨊ ᨋ ᨌ ᨍ ᨎ ᨏ ᨐ ᨑ ᨒ ᨓ ᨔ ᨕ ᨖ ᨗ ᨘ ᨙ ᨚ ᨛ ᨜ ᨝ ᨞ ᨟ ᨠ ᨡ ᨢ ᨣ ᨤ ᨥ ᨦ ᨧ ᨨ ᨩ ᨪ ᨫ ᨬ ᨭ ᨮ ᨯ ᨰ ᨱ ᨲ ᨳ ᨴ ᨵ ᨶ ᨷ ᨸ ᨹ ᨺ ᨻ ᨼ ᨽ ᨿ ᩀ ᩁ ᩂ ᩃ ᩄ ᩅ ᩆ ᩇ ᩈ ᩉ ᩊ ᩋ ᩌ ᩍ ᩎ ᩏ ᩐ ᩑ ᩒ ᩓ ᩔ ᩕ ᩖ ᩗ ᩘ ᩙ ᩚ ᩛ ᩜ ᩝ ᩞ ᩟ ᩠ ᩡ ᩢ ᩣ ᩤ ᩥ ᩦ ᩧ ᩨ ᩩ ᩪ ᩫ ᩬ ᩭ ᩮ ᩯ ᩰ ᩱ ᩲ ᩳ ᩴ ᩵ ᩶ ᩷ ᩸ ᩹ ᩺ ᩻ ᩼ ᩽ ᩿ ᪀ ᪁ ᪂ ᪃ ᪄ ᪅ ᪆ ᪇ ᪈ ᪉ ᪊ ᪋ ᪌ ᪍ ᪎ ᪏ ᪐ ᪑ ᪒ ᪓ ᪔ ᪕ ᪖ ᪗ ᪘ ᪙ ᪚ ᪛ ᪜ ᪝ ᪞ ᪟ ᪠ ᪡ ᪢ ᪣ ᪤ ᪥ ᪦ ᪧ ᪨ ᪩ ᪪ ᪫ ᪬ ᪭ ᪮ ᪯ ᪰ ᪱ ᪲ ᪳ ᪴ ᪵ ᪶ ᪷ ᪸ ᪹ ᪺ ᪻ ᪼ ᪽ ᪿ ᫀ ᫁ ᫂ ᫃ ᫄ ᫅ ᫆ ᫇ ᫈ ᫉ ᫊ ᫋ ᫌ ᫍ ᫎ ᫏ ᫐ ᫑ ᫒ ᫓ ᫔ ᫕ ᫖ ᫗ ᫘ ᫙ ᫚ ᫛ ᫜ ᫝ ᫞ ᫟ ᫠ ᫡ ᫢ ᫣ ᫤ ᫥ ᫦ ᫧ ᫨ ᫩ ᫪ ᫫ ᫬ ᫭ ᫮ ᫯ ᫰ ᫱ ᫲ ᫳ ᫴ ᫵ ᫶ ᫷ ᫸ ᫹ ᫺ ᫻ ᫼ ᫽ ᫿ ᬀ ᬁ ᬂ ᬃ ᬄ ᬅ ᬆ ᬇ ᬈ ᬉ ᬊ ᬋ ᬌ ᬍ ᬎ ᬏ ᬐ ᬑ ᬒ ᬓ ᬔ ᬕ ᬖ ᬗ ᬘ ᬙ ᬚ ᬛ ᬜ ᬝ ᬞ ᬟ ᬠ ᬡ ᬢ ᬣ ᬤ ᬥ ᬦ ᬧ ᬨ ᬩ ᬪ ᬫ ᬬ ᬭ ᬮ ᬯ ᬰ ᬱ ᬲ ᬳ ᬴ ᬵ ᬶ ᬷ ᬸ ᬹ ᬺ ᬻ ᬼ ᬽ ᬿ ᭀ ᭁ ᭂ ᭃ ᭄ ᭅ ᭆ ᭇ ᭈ ᭉ ᭊ ᭋ ᭌ ᭍ ᭎ ᭏ ᭐ ᭑ ᭒ ᭓ ᭔ ᭕ ᭖ ᭗ ᭘ ᭙ ᭚ ᭛ ᭜ ᭝ ᭞ ᭟ ᭠ ᭡ ᭢ ᭣ ᭤ ᭥ ᭦ ᭧ ᭨ ᭩ ᭪ ᭫ ᭬ ᭭ ᭮ ᭯ ᭰ ᭱ ᭲ ᭳ ᭴ ᭵ ᭶ ᭷ ᭸ ᭹ ᭺ ᭻ ᭼ ᭽ ᭿ ᮀ ᮁ ᮂ ᮃ ᮄ ᮅ ᮆ ᮇ ᮈ ᮉ ᮊ ᮋ ᮌ ᮍ ᮎ ᮏ ᮐ ᮑ ᮒ ᮓ ᮔ ᮕ ᮖ ᮗ ᮘ ᮙ ᮚ ᮛ ᮜ ᮝ ᮞ ᮟ ᮠ ᮡ ᮢ ᮣ ᮤ ᮥ ᮦ ᮧ ᮨ ᮩ ᮪ ᮫ ᮬ ᮭ ᮮ ᮯ ᮰ ᮱ ᮲ ᮳ ᮴ ᮵ ᮶ ᮷ ᮸ ᮹ ᮺ ᮻ ᮼ ᮽ ᮿ ᯀ ᯁ ᯂ ᯃ ᯄ ᯅ ᯆ ᯇ ᯈ ᯉ ᯊ ᯋ ᯌ ᯍ ᯎ ᯏ ᯐ ᯑ ᯒ ᯓ ᯔ ᯕ ᯖ ᯗ ᯘ ᯙ ᯚ ᯛ ᯜ ᯝ ᯞ ᯟ ᯠ ᯡ ᯢ ᯣ ᯤ ᯥ ᯦ ᯧ ᯨ ᯩ ᯪ ᯫ ᯬ ᯭ ᯮ ᯯ ᯰ ᯱ ᯲ ᯳ ᯴ ᯵ ᯶ ᯷ ᯸ ᯹ ᯺ ᯻ ᯼ ᯽ ᯿ ᰀ ᰁ ᰂ ᰃ ᰄ ᰅ ᰆ ᰇ ᰈ ᰉ ᰊ ᰋ ᰌ ᰍ ᰎ ᰏ ᰐ ᰑ ᰒ ᰓ ᰔ ᰕ ᰖ ᰗ ᰘ ᰙ ᰚ ᰛ ᰜ ᰝ ᰞ ᰟ ᰠ ᰡ ᰢ ᰣ ᰤ ᰥ ᰦ ᰧ ᰨ ᰩ ᰪ ᰫ ᰬ ᰭ ᰮ ᰯ ᰰ ᰱ ᰲ ᰳ ᰴ ᰵ ᰶ ᰷ ᰸ ᰹ ᰺ ᰻ ᰼ ᰽ ᰿ ᱀ ᱁ ᱂ ᱃ ᱄ ᱅ ᱆ ᱇ ᱈ ᱉ ᱊ ᱋ ᱌ ᱍ ᱎ ᱏ ᱐ ᱑ ᱒ ᱓ ᱔ ᱕ ᱖ ᱗ ᱘ ᱙ ᱚ ᱛ ᱜ ᱝ ᱞ ᱟ ᱠ ᱡ ᱢ ᱣ ᱤ ᱥ ᱦ ᱧ ᱨ ᱩ ᱪ ᱫ ᱬ ᱭ ᱮ ᱯ ᱰ ᱱ ᱲ ᱳ ᱴ ᱵ ᱶ ᱷ ᱸ ᱹ ᱺ ᱻ ᱼ ᱽ ᱿ ᳀ ᳁ ᳂ ᳃ ᳄ ᳅ ᳆ ᳇ ᳈ ᳉ ᳊ ᳋ ᳌ ᳍ ᳎ ᳏ ᳐ ᳑ ᳒ ᳓ ᳔ ᳕ ᳖ ᳗ ᳘ ᳙ ᳚ ᳛ ᳜ ᳝ ᳞ ᳟ ᳠ ᳡ ᳢ ᳣ ᳤ ᳥ ᳦ ᳧ ᳨ ᳩ ᳪ ᳫ ᳬ ᳭ ᳮ ᳯ ᳰ ᳱ ᳲ ᳳ ᳴ ᳵ ᳶ ᳷ ᳸ ᳹ ᳺ ᳻ ᳼ ᳽ ᳿ ᴀ ᴁ ᴂ ᴃ ᴄ ᴅ ᴆ ᴇ ᴈ ᴉ ᴊ ᴋ ᴌ ᴍ ᴎ ᴏ ᴐ ᴑ ᴒ ᴓ ᴔ ᴕ ᴖ ᴗ ᴘ ᴙ ᴚ ᴛ ᴜ ᴝ ᴞ ᴟ ᴠ ᴡ ᴢ ᴣ ᴤ ᴥ ᴦ ᴧ ᴨ ᴩ ᴪ ᴫ ᴬ ᴭ ᴮ ᴯ ᴰ ᴱ ᴲ ᴳ ᴴ ᴵ ᴶ ᴷ ᴸ ᴹ ᴺ ᴻ ᴼ ᴽ ᴿ ᵀ ᵁ ᵂ ᵃ ᵄ ᵅ ᵆ ᵇ ᵈ ᵉ ᵊ ᵋ ᵌ ᵍ ᵎ ᵏ ᵐ ᵑ ᵒ ᵓ ᵔ ᵕ ᵖ ᵗ ᵘ ᵙ ᵚ ᵛ ᵜ ᵝ ᵞ ᵟ ᵠ ᵡ ᵢ ᵣ ᵤ ᵥ ᵦ ᵧ ᵨ ᵩ ᵪ ᵫ ᵬ ᵭ ᵮ ᵯ ᵰ ᵱ ᵲ ᵳ ᵴ ᵵ ᵶ ᵷ ᵸ ᵹ ᵺ ᵻ ᵼ ᵽ ᵿ ᶀ ᶁ ᶂ ᶃ ᶄ ᶅ ᶆ ᶇ ᶈ ᶉ ᶊ ᶋ ᶌ ᶍ ᶎ ᶏ ᶐ ᶑ ᶒ ᶓ ᶔ ᶕ ᶖ ᶗ ᶘ ᶙ ᶚ ᶛ ᶜ ᶝ ᶞ ᶟ ᶠ ᶡ ᶢ ᶣ ᶤ ᶥ ᶦ ᶧ ᶨ ᶩ ᶪ ᶫ ᶬ ᶭ ᶮ ᶯ ᶰ ᶱ ᶲ ᶳ ᶴ ᶵ ᶶ ᶷ ᶸ ᶹ ᶺ ᶻ ᶼ ᶽ ᶿ ᷀ ᷁ ᷂ ᷃ ᷄ ᷅ ᷆ ᷇ ᷈ ᷉ ᷊ ᷋ ᷌ ᷍ ᷎ ᷏ ᷐ ᷑ ᷒ ᷓ ᷔ ᷕ ᷖ ᷗ ᷘ ᷙ ᷚ ᷛ ᷜ ᷝ ᷞ ᷟ ᷠ ᷡ ᷢ ᷣ ᷤ ᷥ ᷦ ᷧ ᷨ ᷩ ᷪ ᷫ ᷬ ᷭ ᷮ ᷯ ᷰ ᷱ ᷲ ᷳ ᷴ ᷵ ᷶ ᷷ ᷸ ᷹ ᷺ ᷻ ᷼ ᷽ ᷿ Ḁ ḁ Ḃ ḃ Ḅ ḅ Ḇ ḇ Ḉ ḉ Ḋ ḋ Ḍ ḍ Ḏ ḏ Ḑ ḑ Ḓ ḓ Ḕ ḕ Ḗ ḗ Ḙ ḙ Ḛ ḛ Ḝ ḝ Ḟ ḟ Ḡ ḡ Ḣ ḣ Ḥ ḥ Ḧ Ḧ Ḩ ḩ Ḫ ḫ Ḭ ḭ Ḯ ḯ Ḱ ḱ Ḳ ḳ Ḵ ḵ Ḷ ḷ Ḹ ḹ Ḻ ḻ Ḽ ḽ Ḿ ḿ Ṁ ṁ Ṃ ṃ Ṅ ṅ Ṇ ṏ Ṑ ṑ Ṓ ṓ Ṕ ṕ Ṗ ṗ Ṙ ṙ Ṛ ṛ Ṝ ṝ Ṟ ṟ Ṡ ṡ Ṣ ṣ Ṥ ṥ Ṧ ṧ Ṩ ṩ Ṫ ṫ Ṭ ṭ Ṯ ṯ Ṱ ṱ Ṳ ṳ Ṵ ṵ Ṷ ṷ Ṹ ṹ Ṻ ṻ Ṽ ṽ Ṿ ṿ Ṱ ṱ Ṳ ṳ Ṵ ṵ Ṷ ṷ Ṹ ṹ Ṻ ṻ Ṽ ṽ Ṿ ṿ |        |

<sup>3</sup> Sears (2017): *Chinese Etymology* (<http://hanziyuan.net/#%E5%B1%B1>: J21374, S06639, L06208, B14280)

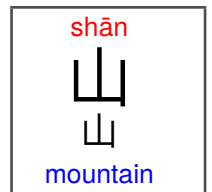
<sup>3</sup> Atiya (2006): *Ancient Egypt* page 52

## 1.2 Chinese glyphs

By far the most commonly used logographic language in the world today is Chinese. This logograph, as far as current common use is concerned, comes in two forms, *traditional Chinese* and *simplified Chinese*. In much of this text, typesetting is performed as illustrated to the right with PinYin (see Section 2.3.1 page 18) on top, the traditional character below that, the simplified character below that, and English meanings below that.



Because Chinese is a *logographic* language, sometimes one can make an educated guess as to the meaning of a grapheme (called a *character* for the Chinese written language) by the way it “looks”. For example, the character 山 means “mountain”, and it kind of looks like a three peak mountain. In some older forms, the resemblance is even closer (see Example 1.3 page 1).



But this only really works for some characters. Over the centuries since the publication in 121 A.D. of 說文解字 (Shuō Wén Jiě Zì) by 許慎 (Xǔ Shèn), characters are often organized into these six categories:<sup>4</sup>

① pictographs xiàng xíng 象 形 象 形 appearance shape	② ideographs zhǐ shì 指 事 指 事 finger affair	③ associative compounds huì yì 會 意 会 意 to meet meaning
④ phonetic compounds xíng shēng 形 聲 形 声 shape sound	⑤ false borrowings jiě jià 假 借 假 借 false to borrow	⑥ semantic derivations zhuǎn zhù 轉 注 转 注 to turn to pour

Example 1.6 (pictographs). Here are some examples of *pictographs*:

shuǐ 水 水 water streams flowing together	rén 人 人 person a person standing two legs	rén 儿 儿 person the two legs of a person
rù 入 入 to enter roots descending into the ground	lì 力 力 force a tendon	dāo 刀 刀 knife a knife
dīng 丁 丁 nail a nail	jī 几 几 small table a small table or stool	dà 大 大 big resembles a standing person with open arms

<sup>4</sup> ④ Ross and heng Sheng Ma (2006): *Modern Mandarin Chinese Grammar: A Practical Guide* pages 14–15  
 ⑤ Harbaugh (2009): 中文字譜 *Chinese Characters: A Genealogy and Dictionary*  
 ⑥ 許慎 (121): 說文解字注 (*Shuō Wén Jiě Zì Zhù*, *Explanatory Notes of Chinese Characters*)

<p><b>shī</b></p> <p>尸</p> <p>尸</p> <p>corpse</p>	<p>resembles a person lying down</p>	<p><b>yì</b></p> <p>弋</p> <p>弋</p> <p>stake</p>	<p>a stake</p>	<p><b>jī</b></p> <p>几</p> <p>几</p> <p>stool</p>	<p>a stool or workbench</p>
<p><b>fán</b></p> <p>凡</p> <p>凡</p> <p>all</p>	<p>earlier form was an encompassing square</p>	<p><b>gān</b></p> <p>干</p> <p>干</p> <p>shield</p>	<p>a shield</p>	<p><b>gōng</b></p> <p>工</p> <p>工</p> <p>work</p>	<p>a carpenter's square</p>
<p><b>fāng</b></p> <p>匚</p> <p>匚</p>	<p>a hollowed out piece of wood</p>	<p><b>jīn</b></p> <p>巾</p> <p>巾</p> <p>cloth</p>	<p>a hanging handkerchief</p>	<p><b>nǚ</b></p> <p>女</p> <p>女</p> <p>woman</p>	<p>a kneeling woman</p>
<p><b>zǐ</b></p> <p>子</p> <p>子</p> <p>son</p>	<p>an infant with legs bundled together</p>	<p><b>yě</b></p> <p>也</p> <p>也</p> <p>also</p>	<p>an ancient funnel or wash basin</p>	<p><b>jiàn</b></p> <p>見</p> <p>见</p> <p>to see</p>	<p>resembles an eye</p>
<p><b>kǒu</b></p> <p>口</p> <p>口</p> <p>mouth</p>	<p>resembles an open mouth</p>	<p><b>mù</b></p> <p>木</p> <p>木</p> <p>wood/tree</p>	<p>resembles a tree</p>	<p><b>kū</b></p> <p>哭</p> <p>哭</p> <p>to cry</p>	<p>resembles a person with two tear drops in the eyes</p>
<p><b>qù</b></p> <p>去</p> <p>去</p> <p>to go</p>	<p>resembles a walking person</p>	<p><b>shān</b></p> <p>山</p> <p>山</p> <p>mountain</p>	<p>resembles a three peak mountain</p>	<p><b>shàng</b></p> <p>上</p> <p>上</p> <p>above</p>	<p>the vertical and small strokes are <i>above</i> the long horizontal stroke</p>
<p><b>xià</b></p> <p>下</p> <p>下</p> <p>below</p>	<p>the diagonal and small strokes are <i>below</i> the long horizontal stroke</p>	<p><b>xiào</b></p> <p>笑</p> <p>笑</p> <p>to smile</p>	<p>resembles a smiling person with a moustache</p>	<p><b>zhǎo</b></p> <p>爪</p> <p>爪</p> <p>claw/talon</p>	<p>resembles the claw of an animal (e.g. lion)</p>

Moreover, complex characters are sometimes constructed from more primitive ones. If you know the meaning of the primitive characters, it can help suggest the meaning of some complex ones.

*Example 1.7* (Complex from primitive).

<p><b>lín</b></p> <p>林</p> <p>林</p> <p>forest</p>	<p>resembles two trees (木) as in 林=木+木.</p>	<p><b>sēn</b></p> <p>森</p> <p>森</p> <p>trees</p>	<p>resembles three trees as in 森=木+木+木</p>
<p><b>xiān</b></p> <p>仙</p> <p>仙</p> <p>celestial being</p>	<p>resembles a man (亻, rén) of the mountains (山, shān).</p>	<p><b>hǎo</b></p> <p>好</p> <p>好</p> <p>good</p>	<p>life is good for a man who has a wife (女=woman, nǚ) and son (子, zǐ)</p>
<p><b>bǎo</b></p> <p>保</p> <p>保</p> <p>to protect</p>	<p>a man (亻, rén) with a baby (呆, dāi)</p>	<p><b>chuán</b></p> <p>船</p> <p>船</p> <p>boat</p>	<p><b>chuán</b> = <b>zhou</b> + <b>bā</b> + <b>kǒu</b> ;<sup>5</sup></p> <p>船 舟 八 口</p> <p>船 舟 八 口</p> <p>boat boat boat 8 mouth</p>



## 1.3 Onomatopoeia characters

Despite Chinese being a logographic language and therefore characters represent meanings rather than sounds, there are some characters that, although they have meanings, are not primarily used for those meanings, but rather are primarily used just for the sound that they make. That is, these characters represent *onomatopoeias*. Most of these characters contain the 口 (kǒu, mouth) character, indicating that the character represents a sound (made with the mouth). If you wish to write, say, stories for children, then such characters may come in very handy. Table 1.3 provides some examples of such characters, while Example 1.8 (page 7) illustrates their use with sentences.<sup>6</sup>

Table 1.3: Onomatopoeias characters

ā 啊 啊	the “ah” sound made such as when scared	āi 哎 哎	the expression “hey” or “ah”; can be used together with 唷 as an exclamation as in 哎唷! (āi yó!)
aó 嗷 嗷 cry of hunger	嗷=口+敖 (ào, proud)	bā 叭 叭 trumpet	the honking sound of a car; 叭=口+八 (bā, 8)
bā 吧 吧 (a particle)		bì 啤 啤	the “beep” sound of a whistle
chī 嗤 嗤 to sneer	sound of ripping paper	dāng 噹 噹	metallic crashing sound
dīng 叮 叮 to sting	used with 咚 (dōng) for the “ding-dong” sound of a doorbell	dōng 咚 咚	sound of a drum, sound of falling object impacting the ground
dū 嘟 嘟	the “toot” sound of vehicles such as trains; 嘟=口+都 (dū, big city)	gā 嘎 嘎	the “quack quack” sound of ducks as in “嘎嘎”
gé 咯 咯 a click	a click	gū 咕 咕 to murmur	the hooting sound of an owl, the crowing sound of a rooster

<sup>5</sup> 船 = 舟+八+口: Interestingly enough, this has similarity to the Biblical account of the flood in [Genesis 6–9](#).

<sup>6</sup> ㄟ (2007a)動物說話 (dòng wù shuō huà—animals are speaking 1)  
 ㄟ (2007b)動物說話 (dòng wù shuō huà—animals are speaking 2)  
 ㄟ (2007d)生活說話 (shēng huó shuō huà—life is speaking 1)  
 ㄟ (2007e)生活說話 (shēng huó shuō huà—life is speaking 2)  
 ㄟ (2007c)有聲世界 (yǒu shēng shì jiè—sounds of the world)  
 ㄟ (2007f)車車說話 (chē chē de shuō huà—cars are speaking)

<p><b>gūa</b> 呱呱 呱呱</p>	the “ribbet ribbet” croaking sound of frogs as in “呱呱”	<p><b>hā</b> 哈哈 哈哈 to breathe on</p>	the “ha ha” laughing sound as in “哈哈!”, the “achoo” sneezing sound as in 哈啾 (hā jiū)
<p><b>hāi</b> <sup>7</sup> 嗨 嗨 “hi”</p>	the greeting “Hi”	<p><b>hǒu</b> 吼 吼 to roar</p>	the roaring sound of a lion
<p><b>hū</b> 呼 呼 to exhale</p>	呼=口+乎 (hū, at)	<p><b>hūa</b> 嘩 嘩 嘩</p>	sound of a wave; 嘩=口+華 (húa, China)
<p><b>hùo</b> 噍 噍 噍</p>	the “oink” sound of pigs	<p><b>jī</b> 唧 唧 唧 pump</p>	the chirping sound of crickets as in “唧唧”
<p><b>jī</b> 叽 叽 叽 to talk indistinctly</p>	the chirping sound of birds as in “叽叽”	<p><b>jiū</b> 啾 啾 啾 chirping sound</p>	the chirping sounds of birds or insects
<p><b>kòu</b> 叩 叩 叩 to knock</p>	the sound of knocking on a door	<p><b>la</b> 啦 啦 啦</p>	
<p><b>miāo</b> 喵 喵 喵 “meow”</p>	the sound of cats as in “喵...喵”	<p><b>miē</b> 咩 咩 咩</p>	the bleating sound (口) of goats (山羊);
<p><b>móu</b> 哞 哞 哞</p>	the lowing sound (口) of cows (牛)	<p><b>lū</b> 噜 噜 噜 verbose</p>	used with 咕 (gū, to murmur) to describe a hungry stomach ...as in “咕噜 咕噜!”
<p><b>lūo</b> 囉 囉 囉 to chatter</p>	used at end of sentences as in “...oh!”	<p><b>ō</b> 喔 喔 喔</p>	an exclamation or crowing sound of roosters;
<p><b>pā</b> 啪 啪 啪</p>		<p><b>pēng</b> 砰 砰 砰</p>	sound of a bouncing ball
<p><b>pīng</b> 乒 乒 乒</p>	sound of a piano	<p><b>pū</b> 噗 噗 噗</p>	the “putt putt putt” sound of a slow vehicle
<p><b>sī</b> 嘶 嘶 嘶</p>	the neighing sound of a horse	<p><b>tà</b> 嗒 嗒 嗒 dejected</p>	

<b>wā</b> 哇 哇	sound of crying	<b>wēng</b> 嗡嗡 嗡嗡	the buzzing sound of insects as in “嗡嗡”.
<b>wū</b> 鳴 鳴	“toot” or “hoot” sound of vehicles	<b>xiū</b> 咻 咻 <b>din</b>	the sound of airplanes as in “咻咻”
<b>yō</b> 唷 唷	can be used together with 唷 as an exclamation as in 哎唷! (āi yó!)	<b>zī</b> 吱 吱 a squeak	a squeak; the sound that monkeys make as in “吱吱”

## Example 1.8 (Onomatopoeias).

1. **gū gū gū gōng jī jiào zhe tiān liàng le** <sup>8</sup>  
 咕咕咕！公雞叫着，天亮了。  
 咕咕咕！公雞叫着，天亮了。  
male chicken to call (adverbial) sky bright (change of state)  
 rooster

“Cock-a-doodle-doo!”, the rooster crowed, and the sky became bright again.

2. **huáng niú de dù zi è de gū lū gū lū jiào** <sup>9</sup>  
 黃牛的肚子餓得咕嚕咕嚕叫。  
 黃牛的肚子餓得咕嚕咕嚕叫。  
yellow cow 's stomach son hungry to the extent of (a sound) (a sound) (a sound) (a sound) to call  
stomach “gurgle” “gurgle”

Yellow Cow's stomach was so hungry that with a “gurgle gurgle” it called out.

3. **hā jiū ! hā jiū ! bīn bīn hǎo xiàng gǎn mào le** <sup>10</sup>  
 哈哈！哈哈！彬彬好好像感冒了。  
 哈哈！哈哈！彬彬好好像感冒了。  
to breathe chirps to breathe chirps intelligent intelligent good to resemble to feel to emit  
achoo achoo Bin-Bin to seem to catch a cold

“Achoo! Achoo!” It seems Bin-Bin has caught a cold.

4. **kòu ! kòu ! kòu ! zhè shí mén wài xiǎng qǐ qiāo mén de shēng yīn**  
 叩！叩！叩！這時門外響起敲門的聲音。  
 叩！叩！叩！這時門外響起敲門的聲音。  
to knock this time door outside sound to start to knock door (s) sound sound  
to knock at the door sound

<sup>7</sup> 黃慧敏 (2006): 阿尼要搬家 (*ā ní yào bān jiā—Annie wants to move*), page 7

<sup>8</sup> 張晉霖 (2005b): 一塊錢·買一個夢 (*yí kuài qián · mǎi yí ge mèng*), page 27

<sup>9</sup> 幼福編輯部 (2005a): 大黃牛學勤勞 (*dà huáng niú xué qín láo—Big Yellow Cow Learns Diligence*), page 22

<sup>10</sup> 張晉霖 (2005c): 哈啾不見了 (*hā jiū bú jiàn le—“Achoo” No More*), page 1

11

- “Knock knock knock!” There arose the sound of knocking at the door.  
○

5. tā bǎ tóu kào zài zhěn tóu shàng , yí xià zǐ , jiù hū lū hū lū  
他 把 頭 靠 在 枕 頭 上 , 一 下 子 , 就 呼 嚕 呼 嚕  
he head to lean at pillow head on top of one next son just  
pillow a short while a moment

- shuì zháo le 12  
睡 著 了  
睡 着 了  
to sleep a move  
to fall asleep

○ He leaned his head against the pillow,  
○ and in a brief moment,  
with a “ZZZZZ” just fell asleep.

## 1.4 Radicals

Many Chinese characters contain a sub-component called a *radical*. Identifying this radical can be helpful in recalling the meaning of the character or to locate the character within a Chinese dictionary. Probably the most well known set of radicals is referred to as the *Kangxi radicals*, and are presented in the following table.<sup>13</sup>

kāng	xī	bù	shǒu
康	熙	部	首
康	熙	部	首
health	sunny	part	head
Kangxi		radical	

1 stroke					
1.	一	yī	one		
2.	丨	shù	line		
3.	丶	zhǔ	dot	4.	丿
5.	乙	yǐ	second	6.	乚
					júe hook
2 strokes					
7.	二	èr	two	8.	亠
9.	人	rén	man	10.	儿
11.	入	rù	enter	12.	八
13.	冂	jiǒng	down box	14.	冃
15.	冫	bīng	ice	16.	几
17.	凵	kǎn	open box	18.	刀
19.	力	lì	power	20.	勹
21.	匕	bǐ	spoon	22.	匚
23.	匚	xì	hiding enclosure	24.	十
25.	卜	bǔ	divination	26.	卩
27.	厂	hǎn	cliff	28.	厶
29.	又	yòu	again		sī private
3 strokes					

<sup>11</sup> 張晉霖 (2005e): 白雲枕頭 (bái yún zhěn tóu—White Cloud Pillow), page 23

<sup>12</sup> 張晉霖 (2005e): 白雲枕頭 (bái yún zhěn tóu—White Cloud Pillow), page 27

<sup>13</sup> Allen (2008): The Unicode Standard 5.1.0 (<http://www.unicode.org/charts/PDF/U2F00.pdf>)

McNaughton and Ying (1999): Reading & Writing Chinese...

30.	口	kǒu	mouth	31.	匚	wéi	enclosure
32.	土	tǔ	earth	33.	士	shì	scholar
34.	夕	zhǐ	go	35.	文	sūi	go slowly
36.	夕	xī	evening	37.	大	dà	big
38.	女	nǚ	woman	39.	子	zǐ	child
40.	宀	mián	roof	41.	寸	cùn	inch
42.	小	xiǎo	small	43.	尢	wāng	lame
44.	尸	shī	corpse	45.	屮	chè	sprout
46.	山	shān	mountain	47.	川	chūan	river
48.	工	gōng	work	49.	己	jǐ	oneself
50.	巾	ji/-n	turban	51.	干	gān	dry
52.	幺	yāo	short thread	53.	广	yǎn	dotted cliff
54.	彳	yǐn	long stride	55.	卅	gǒng	two hands
56.	弋	yì	shoot	57.	弓	gōng	bow
58.	厶	jì	snout	59.	彡	shān	bristle
60.	彳	chì	step				
4 strokes							
61.	心	xīn	heart	62.	戈	gē	halberd
63.	戶	hù	door	64.	手	shǒu	hand
65.	支	zhī	branch	66.	攴	pǐ	wrap
67.	文	wén	script	68.	斗	dǒu	dipper
69.	斤	jīn	axe	70.	方	fāng	square
71.	无	wú	not	72.	日	rì	sun
73.	曰	yūe	say	74.	月	yùe	moon
75.	木	mù	tree	76.	欠	qiàn	lack
77.	止	zhǐ	stop	78.	歹	dǎi	death
79.	殳	shū	weapon	80.	毋	wú	do not
81.	比	bǐ	compare	82.	毛	máo	fur
83.	氏	shì	clan	84.	气	qì	steam
85.	水	shuǐ	water	86.	火	huǒ	fire
87.	爪	zhǎo	claw	88.	父	fù	father
89.	爻	yáo	double x	90.	爿	qiāng	half tree trunk
91.	片	piàn	slice	92.	牙	yá	fang
93.	牛	niú	cow	94.	犬	quǎn	dog
5 strokes							
95.	玄	xuán	profound	96.	玉	yù	jade
97.	瓜	guā	melon	98.	瓦	wǎ	tile
99.	甘	gān	sweet	100.	生	shēng	life
101.	用	yòng	use	102.	田	tián	field
103.	疋	pǐ	bolt of cloth	104.	疒	nì	sickness
105.	夆	bò	dotted tent	106.	白	bái	white
107.	爪	zhǎo	claw	108.	皿	mǐn	dish
109.	目	mù	eye	110.	矛	máo	spear
111.	矢	shǐ	arrow	112.	石	shí	stone
113.	示	shì	spirit	114.	肉	rǒu	track
115.	禾	hé	grain	116.	穴	xué	cave
117.	立	lì	stand				
6 strokes							
118.	竹	zhú	bamboo	119.	米	mǐ	rice
120.	糸	sī	silk	121.	缶	fǒu	jar
122.	网	wǎng	net	123.	羊	yáng	sheep

124.	羽	yǔ	feather	125.	老	lǎo	old
126.	而	ér	and	127.	耒	lěi	plow
128.	耳	ěr	ear	129.	聿	yù	brush
130.	肉	ròu	meat	131.	臣	chén	minister
132.	自	zì	self	133.	至	zhì	arrive
134.	臼	jiù	mortar	135.	舌	shé	tongue
136.	舛	chuǎn	oppose	137.	舟	zhōu	boat
138.	艮	gèn	stopping	139.	色	sè	color
140.	艸	cǎo	grass	141.	虎	hǔ	tiger
142.	虫	chóng	insect	143.	血	xuè	blood
144.	行	xíng	walk enclosure	145.	衣	yī	clothes
146.	西	xià	west				
7 strokes							
147.	見	jiàn	see	148.	角	jiǎo	horn
149.	言	yán	speech	150.	谷	gǔ	valley
151.	豆	dòu	bean	152.	豕	shǐ	pig
153.	豸	zhì	badger	154.	貝	bèi	shell
155.	赤	chì	red	156.	走	zǒu	run
157.	足	zú	foot	158.	身	shēn	body
159.	車	chē	cart	160.	辛	xīn	bitter
161.	辰	chén	morning	162.	辵	chùo	walk
163.	邑	yì	city	164.	酉	yǒu	wine
165.	采	biàn	distinguish	166.	里	lǐ	village
8 strokes							
167.	金	jīn	gold	168.	長	cháng	long
169.	門	mén	gate	170.	阜	fù	mound
171.	隸	dài	slave	172.	隹	zhūi	short tailed bird
173.	雨	yǔ	rain	174.	青	qīng	blue
175.	非	fēi	wrong				
9 strokes							
176.	面	miàn	face	177.	革	gé	leather
178.	韋	wéi	tanned leather	179.	韭	jiǔ	leek
180.	音	yīn	sound	181.	頁	yè	leaf
182.	風	fēng	wind	183.	飛	fēi	fly
184.	食	shí	eat	185.	首	shǒu	head
186.	香	xiāng	fragrant				
10 strokes							
187.	馬	mǎ	horse	188.	骨	gǔ	bone
189.	高	gāo	tall	190.	髟	biāo	hair
191.	鬥	dòu	fight	192.	鬯	chàng	sacrificial wine
193.	鬲	lì	cauldron	194.	鬼	guǐ	ghost
11 strokes							
195.	魚	yú	fish	196.	鳥	niǎo	bird
197.	鹵	lǔ	salt	198.	鹿	lù	deer
199.	麥	mài	wheat	200.	麻	má	hemp
12 strokes							
201.	黃	huáng	yellow	202.	黍	shǔ	millet
203.	黑	hēi	black	204.	黹	zhǐ	embroidery
13 strokes							
205.	鼃	mǐn	frog	206.	鼎	dǐng	tripod
207.	鼓	gǔ	drum	208.	鼠	shǔ	rat

14 strokes								
209.	鼻	bí	<i>nose</i>		210. 齊	qí	<i>even</i>	
15 strokes								
211.	齒	chǐ	<i>tooth</i>					
16 strokes								
212.	龍	lóng	<i>dragon</i>		213.	龜	gūi	<i>tortoise</i>
17 strokes								
214.	簫	yùe	<i>flute</i>					

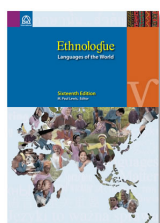




## CHAPTER 2

## PHONEMES OF MANDARIN CHINESE

### 2.1 Languages



As of 2009, there were a total of about 6909 “living languages” in the world. Given that the world currently has very sophisticated travel and communication systems, one might suppose that every spoken language in the world is known and has been documented by linguists. However, it is possible that there are still some living languages in the world unknown to the world community at large. In fact, in 2008, a new language called *Koro* was found in India.<sup>1</sup>



One use for studying languages is to help discover the origins of remote social groups. For example, people on the islands in the Pacific ocean speak about 1200 different languages. Scientists at Auckland University have used computer analysis on 400 of these languages and say many of these people originally came from Taiwan thousands of years ago (see Figure 2.1 (page 14)).<sup>2</sup>

### 2.2 Consonants and Vowels

A **phoneme** is a basic sound in a language. Phonemes are combined together to form **phones**, or syllable sounds (CHAPTER 3 page 21). English has about 39 **phonemes**; Of these, 24 are **consonants** and 15 are **vowels**.<sup>3</sup> Of the vowel sounds, there are about 11 monophthongs and about 4 diphthongs.

The phonemes of English are listed in Table 2.1 (page 16). There, the phonemes are transcribed

<sup>1</sup> Lewis (2009): *Ethnologue: Languages of the World*

Wilford (2010): *The New York Times*

<sup>2</sup> <http://language.psy.auckland.ac.nz/austronesian/research.php>

<sup>3</sup> Association (1999): *Handbook of the International Phonetic Association...* pages 41–43 (American English)

Prasad (2008): *A Course in Linguistics* page 35

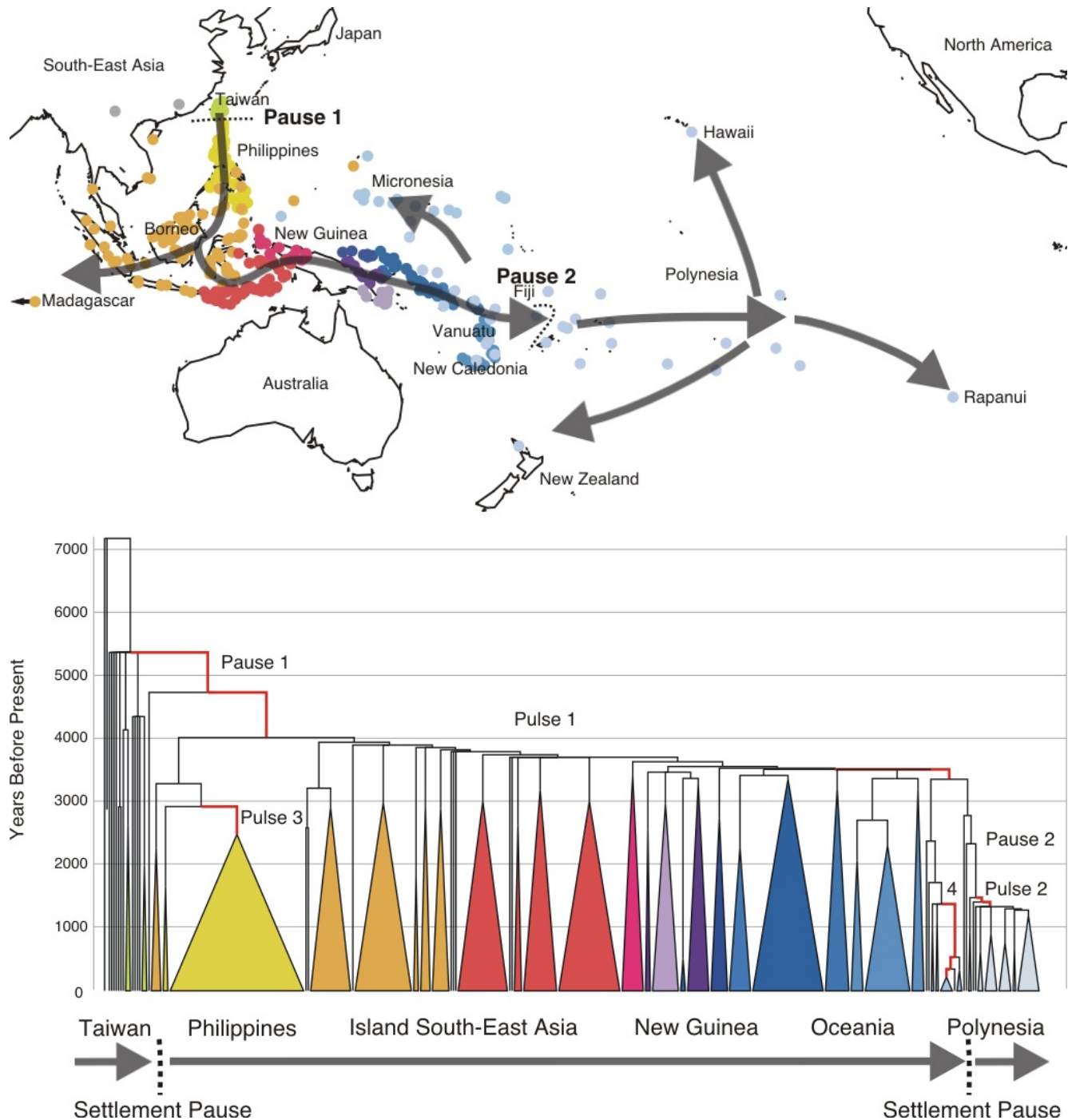


Figure 2.1: Pacific language migration

using IPA, KK,<sup>4</sup> PinYin, and ZhuYin. For help pronouncing the IPA transcription, see  
<http://www.internationalphoneticalphabet.org/ipa-sounds/ipa-chart-with-sounds/>  
<http://www.ipachart.com/>

Chinese has about 29 **phonemes** (Table 2.2 page 17). Of these, about 23 are **consonants** and about 11 are **vowels**. Of the vowel phonemes, there are about 9 monophthongs (單元音) and about 2 diphthongs (雙元音).

## 2.3 Phonetic Systems

The challenge with all language scripts, is with what sound a grapheme (a “letter” or “character”) represents. This is a particular problem with logograms, such as the set of Chinese characters. And this is not just a problem faced by non-Chinese persons trying to learn Chinese, but for native Chinese speaking children who are learning to read and write their own language. For this purpose there are several *transcriptions* that provide phonetic support for Chinese characters—that is, phonetic systems that let a reader know how he or she should pronounce a given character. Of these systems, the two most common standard systems are<sup>5</sup>

- ① (based on the Latin alphabet abc...) Section 2.3.1 page 18
- ② (based on other symbols ㄅ ㄆ ㄇ ㄏ ㄏ ㄏ ㄏ, etc) Section 2.3.2 page 18

Of these two systems, PinYin tends to be more convenient for Westerners who tend in turn to be more familiar with the Latin alphabet.

These two transcriptions support the sounds of Mandarin Chinese, but not all the sounds of all the known languages in the world. In fact, they do not even support all the phonemes of English. A much more general transcription is the *International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA)*.<sup>6</sup> Much of this transcription is similar to the Latin alphabet, but uses some non-Latin graphemes as well. IPA transcription can be used to represent the phonemes of Chinese, English, and every other known language that can be made audible by the human vocal system (tongue, teeth, lungs, nasal passages, etc.).

If concern is restricted to English only, then supporting transcriptions include<sup>7</sup>

- ③ CMU (based on the *Carnegie Mellon University Pronouncing Dictionary*)
- ④ BEEP (“British English pronunciations”)
- ⑤ KK (based on Kenyon and Knott's *A Pronouncing Dictionary of American English*).

The transcription KK, it seems, is currently mostly limited in use to Taiwan. The CMU and BEEP transcriptions use only the basic Latin alphabet (A,B,C,...) and therefore are convenient for processing using computers.

<sup>4</sup> Kenyon and Knott (1949): *A Pronouncing Dictionary of American English*

Kenyon and Knott (1953): *A Pronouncing Dictionary of American English*

<sup>5</sup> (1991)/ISO 7098:1991

<sup>6</sup> Association (1999): *Handbook of the International Phonetic Association...*

<sup>7</sup> Group: *Carnegie Mellon University Pronouncing Dictionary*

*BEEP dictionary*

Kenyon and Knott (1949): *A Pronouncing Dictionary of American English*

Kenyon and Knott (1953): *A Pronouncing Dictionary of American English*

Table 2.1: Phonemes of English

	Latin	IPA	KK	CMU	PinYin	ZhuYin	example	voiced?
1.	p	p	p	P	p	ㄆ	as in <b>pear</b>	
2.	b	b	b	B	b	ㄅ	as in <b>bear</b>	✓
3.	t	t	t	T	t	ㄊ	as in <b>top</b>	
4.	d	d	d	D	d	ㄊ	as in <b>door</b>	✓
5.	k	k	k	K	k	ㄎ	as in <b>kite</b>	
6.	g	g	g	G	g	ㄍ	as in <b>girl</b>	✓
7.	ch	tʃ	tʃ	CH	q	ㄑ	as in <b>cheese</b>	
8.	j	dʒ	dʒ	JH	j	ㄐ	as in <b>jump</b>	✓
9.	m	m	m	M	m	ㄇ	as in <b>mouse</b>	✓
10.	n	n	n	N	n	ㄋ	as in <b>net</b>	✓
11.	ng	ŋ	ŋ	NG	ng	ㄣ	as in <b>sing</b>	✓
12.	f	f	f	F	f	ㄈ	as in <b>fish</b>	
13.	v	v	v	V			as in <b>vet</b>	✓
14.	th	θ	θ	TH			as in <b>math</b>	
15.	th	ð	ð	DH			as in <b>th</b>	✓
16.	s	s	s	S	s	ㄙ	as in <b>socks</b>	
17.	z	z	z	Z			as in <b>zero</b>	✓
18.	sh	ʃ	ʃ	SH	sh	ㄕ	as in <b>shoe</b>	
19.	z	ʒ	ʒ	ZH			as in <b>azure</b>	✓
20.	h	h	h	HH	h	ㄏ	as in <b>hat</b>	
21.	r	r	r	R			as in <b>rug</b>	✓
22.	y	j	j	Y	y	ㄣ	as in <b>you</b>	✓
23.	w	w	w	W	w	ㄨ	as in <b>wait</b>	✓
24.	l	l	l	L	l	ㄌ	as in <b>late</b>	✓
25.	ee	iː	i	IY	i	ㄣ	as in <b>he</b>	✓
26.	e	ɛ	ɛ	EH			as in <b>red</b>	✓
27.	a	æ	æ	AE			as in <b>cat</b>	✓
28.	i	ɪ	ɪ	IH			as in <b>lid</b>	✓
29.	ir	ɪr	r	ER	er	ㄣ	as in <b>bird</b>	✓
30.	oo	ʊ	U	UH			as in <b>good</b>	✓
31.	ue	u	U	UW	u	ㄨ	as in <b>glue</b>	✓
32.	u	ʌ	ʌ	AH			as in <b>bud</b>	✓
33.	a	ɑ	ɑ	AA	ɑ	ㄚ	as in <b>father</b>	✓
34.	a	ə	ə	AO			as in <b>above</b>	✓
35.	e	e	e	EY	ei	ㄣ	as in <b>bay</b>	✓
36.	i	aɪ	aɪ	AI	ay	ㄣ	as in <b>kite</b>	✓
37.	oa	o	o	OW	ou	ㄣ	as in <b>goat</b>	✓
38.	ow	aʊ	aʊ	AW	ao	ㄣ	as in <b>now</b>	✓
39.	oy	ɔɪ	ɔɪ	OY			as in <b>boy</b>	✓

Table 2.2: Phonemes of Mandarin Chinese

PinYin	ZhuYin	IPA	IPA-TW	CMU	description
1. b	ㄅ	b	b	B	as the <b>b</b> in <b>boy</b>
2. c	ㄘ	ts	ts	TS	as the <b>ts</b> in <b>cats</b> and <b>hats</b>
3. d	ㄉ	d	d	D	as the <b>d</b> in <b>day</b>
4. f	ㄈ	f	f	F	as the <b>f</b> in <b>fade</b> , <b>fin</b> , and <b>fun</b>
5. g	ㄍ	g	g	G	the hard <b>g</b> sound in <b>gather</b> , <b>get</b> , <b>give</b> , and <b>gun</b>
6. h	ㄏ	x	x	HH	the <b>h</b> sound in <b>ha ha</b> or <b>happy</b>
7. j	ㄐ	dʒ	dʒ	JH	the <b>j</b> sound in <b>jay</b> or the <b>g</b> sound in <b>gym</b>
8. k	ㄎ	k	k	K	the <b>k</b> sound in <b>kangaroo</b> or the <b>c</b> sound in <b>cap</b>
9. l	ㄌ	l	l	L	the <b>l</b> sound in <b>label</b> , <b>lime</b> , and <b>low</b>
10. m	ㄇ	m	m	M	the <b>m</b> sound in <b>mayor</b> , <b>meet</b> , <b>mow</b> , and <b>mute</b>
11. n	ㄋ	n	n	N	the <b>n</b> sound in <b>name</b> , <b>new</b> , <b>nine</b> , and <b>no</b>
12. ng	ㄋˊ	ŋ	ŋ	NG	the <b>ng</b> sound in <b>ring</b>
13. p	ㄆ	p	p	P	the <b>p</b> sound in <b>past</b> , <b>pen</b> , <b>pine</b> , and <b>prune</b>
14. q	ㄑ	tʃ	tʃ	CH	the <b>ch</b> sound in <b>chew</b>
15. s	ㄙ	s	s	S	the <b>s</b> sound in <b>sand</b> , <b>send</b> , <b>since</b> , and <b>sun</b>
16. t	ㄊ	t	t	T	the <b>t</b> sound in <b>talk</b> , <b>tent</b> , <b>tick</b> , and <b>tent</b>
17. w	ㄨ	w	w	W	the <b>w</b> sound in <b>walk</b> , <b>went</b> , and <b>win</b>
18. x	ㄒ	ɕ	ɕ		a semi-shrill form of <b>sh</b>
19. y	ㄩ	j	j	Y	the <b>y</b> sound in <b>yellow</b>
20. z	ㄗ	dʒ	dʒ	Z	the <b>z</b> sound in <b>zebra</b>
21. ch	ㄔ	tʂ	tʂ	CH	retroflex sounds (no English equivalent)
22. sh	ㄕ	ʂ	ʂ	SH	retroflex sounds (no English equivalent)
23. zh	ㄗ	ʐ	dʒ	JH	retroflex sounds (no English equivalent)
24. r	ㄖ	ɻ	ɻ	R	retroflex sounds (no English equivalent)
25. a	ㄚ	a	a	AA	as the <b>a</b> in <b>father</b>
26. e	ㄜ	ə	ə	EH	the <b>uh</b> sound as the <b>ai</b> in <b>said</b>
27. er	ㄝ	ɐ	ɐ	ER	the <b>ir</b> sound as in <b>bird</b>
28. i	ㄧ	iː	i	IY	the <b>ee</b> sound as the <b>ee</b> in <b>see</b>
29. o	ㄛ	o	o	UH	the short <b>oh</b> sound as the <b>o</b> in <b>nope</b>
30. u	ㄨ	u	u	UW	as the <b>o</b> sound in <b>do</b>
31. ü	ㄩ	y	y		the <b>ew</b> sound, with lips rounded, similar to the <b>ew</b> sound in <b>ewe</b> (female sheep).
32. ai	ㄞ	aɪ	aɪ	AY	as the <b>i</b> in <b>kite</b>
33. ao	ㄠ	aʊ	aʊ	AW	the <b>ow</b> sound as in <b>cow</b> and <b>now</b> .
34. ei	ㄟ	eɪ	eɪ	EY	as the <b>ay</b> in <b>say</b>
35. o	ㄛ	oʊ	oʊ	OW	the long <b>oh</b> sound as the <b>o</b> in <b>mow</b>

### 2.3.1 PinYin

The phonemes of PinYin are listed under “PinYin” in Table 2.2 (page 17). Chinese/English dictionaries and phrase books for English speaking people most often use Hanyu PinYin to specify the phonetic pronunciation of Chinese characters.

Hanyu PinYin has been adopted by mainland China as the standard phonetic system for Mandarin Chinese. It has been standardized by the *International Organization for Standardization* as specified in the 1991 standard *ISO 7098:1991*.<sup>8</sup>

hàn	yǔ	pīn	yīn
漢	語	拼	音
漢	語	拼	音
Han dynasty language		piece together sound	
Chinese		pinyin	

### 2.3.2 ZhuYin

An alternative phonetic system to pinyin is 注音符號 (zhù yīn fú hào), or here referred to simply as *ZhuYin*. The phonemes of ZhuYin are described in Table 2.2 (page 17). Alternative names for ZhuYin include the following:

zhù	yīn	fú	hào
注	音	符	號
注	音	符	號
to annotate sound		symbol mark	
ZhuYin		symbol	

- ① *BoPoMoFo* based on the first four characters of ZhuYin (ㄅ ㄆ ㄇ ㄈ)
- ② *Mandarin Phonetic Symbols I* (國語注音符號第一式)
- ③ *MPS I* (注音符號第一式) — an abbreviation of ②
- ④ *Mandarin Phonetic Symbols* (國語注音符號) — another abbreviation of ②

If you are interested in learning traditional Chinese characters, then you may find learning ZhuYin very much worth your time. There is a huge number of children's books available written using traditional Chinese characters with ZhuYin beside each character. So even if you do not know many Chinese characters, you will still be able to pronounce accurately each character, will be able to look up the meaning of each character in a dictionary, and can have access to a wealth of language learning material. Many such children's books also come with an audio CD, allowing you to also improve your listening comprehension.

Here is a table showing the relationship between ZhuYin and PinYin. Once you know these relationships, you can easily convert the ZhuYin you see in a book to pinyin that is often used in Chinese/English dictionaries.

ㄅ	b	ㄆ	p	ㄇ	m	ㄈ	f	ㄊ	d	ㄋ	n	ㄌ	l	ㄍ	g	ㄓ	zh	ㄔ	ch	ㄕ	k	ㄕ	c	ㄙ	s	ㄖ	r	ㄙ	sh	ㄕ	o	ㄕ	e	ㄕ	ye	ㄕ	ai	ㄕ	ei	ㄕ	ao	ㄕ	er	ㄕ	yi	ㄕ	u
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	----	---	----	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	----	---	---	---	---	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	---

Similar to English speaking children's custom of singing the “ABC” song to learn the English alphabet, Chinese speaking children learning ZhuYin often chant the ZhuYin alphabet starting in the upper left corner, going down, and proceeding column by column like this:

<sup>8</sup> (1991)/ISO 7098:1991



(start) → be → pe → me → fe → de → te →  
 → ne → le → ge → ke → he → ji →  
 → qi → xi → zhi → chi → shi → re →  
 → zi → ci → si → a → o → e →  
 → yi → ai → ei → ao → ou → an →  
 → en → ang → eng → er → yi → u →  
 → ü

Here is an example of a very old and very famous Chinese poem (and more recently, a very famous song as well, Section C.4 page 123) using traditional Chinese characters with ZhuYin phonetic symbols:

明月幾時有，把酒問青天。  
 不知天上宮闕，今夕是何年。  
 我欲乘風歸去，又恐瓊樓玉宇，高處不勝寒。  
 起舞弄清影，何似在人間。  
 轉朱閣，低綺戶，照無眠。  
 不應有恨，何事長向別時圓。  
 人有悲歡離合，月有陰晴圓缺，此事古難全。  
 但願人長久，千里共嬋娟。

## 2.4 Caveats

Note that both PinYin and ZhuYin does have some curiosities and accompanying caveats:

1. One might suppose that the ZhuYin “ㄥ” and PinYin “eng” are always pronounced as the IPA “ʌŋ” (English “ung” as in “rung”) sound. Indeed, it does have this sound in almost every instance when it immediately follows a consonant as in the following examples:

ㄥ	as in	三層	sān céng	(3 floors)
ㄥ	as in	成人	chéng rén	(an adult)
ㄥ	as in	等一下	děng yí xià	(wait a moment)
ㄥ	as in	更多	gèng duō	(even more)
ㄥ	as in	橫的	héng de	(horizontal)
ㄥ	as in	坑道	kēng dào	(a tunnel)
ㄥ	as in	冷凍	lěng dòng	(freezing)
ㄥ	as in	碰見	pèng jiàn	(to meet unexpectedly)
ㄥ	as in	正方	zhèng fāng	(a square)

fēng	zhēng
風	箏
風	箏
wind	zither
kite	

However, curiously, when it immediately follows the ZhuYin ㄥ or PinYin “f”, ㄥ takes on the IPA “uŋ” (ZhuYin ㄨ ㄥ) sound as in 風箏 (see illustration to the left). The character pair 風箏 is especially curious because in the first character 風 the ㄥ is pronounced with the IPA uŋ (similar to the English “ong” as in “song”); but in the second character 箏, the ㄥ is pronounced with the IPA ʌŋ (English “eng”).

2. One might suppose that the ZhuYin “ㄛ” and PinYin “o” are always pronounced as the IPA “o” (English “o” as in “go”) sound. Indeed, it does have this sound in almost every instance when it immediately follows a consonant as in the following examples:

ㄛ	as in	小丑	xiǎo chǒu	(a clown)
ㄛ	as in	綠豆	lǜ dòu	(green bean)
ㄛ	as in	小狗	xiǎo gǒu	(a puppy)

wài	pó
外	婆
外	婆
outside	old woman
maternal grandmother	

However, curiously, when it immediately follows the ZhuYin ㄨ or PinYin “u”, ㄨ takes on the IPA “uo” (ZhuYin ㄨㄛ) sound as in 外<sup>ㄨㄛ</sup>婆 or 巫<sup>ㄨㄛ</sup>婆.

wū	pó
巫	婆
巫	婆
sorcery	old woman
witch	

## 2.5 Some vocabulary

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. language	(n)	'læŋgwɪdʒ	語言	9. tone	(n)	ton	聲
2. phone	(n)	fon	聲音	10. tonal	(adj)	'tonl	有聲的
3. sound	(n)	saʊnd	聲音	11. nontonal	(adj)	'nan,tonl	無聲的
4. consonant	(n)	'kənsənənt	子音	12. alphabet	(n)	'ælfə,bet	字母
5. vowel	(n)	'vaʊəl	母音	13. script	(n)	skɹɪpt	字母
6. voiced	(adj)	vɔɪst	濁音的	14. grapheme	(n)	'græfɪm	字位
7. voiceless	(adj)	'vɔɪslɪs	清音的	15. character	(n)	'kærɪktə	字位
8. syllable	(n)	'sɪləbl	音節	16. glyph	(n)	glɪf	字形
ENGLISH	(GRAMMAR)	KK	中文				
17. phonetics	(n)	fə'netɪks	語音系				
18. phoneme	(n)	'fɒnɪm	音素/音位				
19. ideograph	(n)	ɪ'diə,græf	形意文字				
20. pictograph	(n)	'pɪktə,græf	象形文字				



## CHAPTER 3

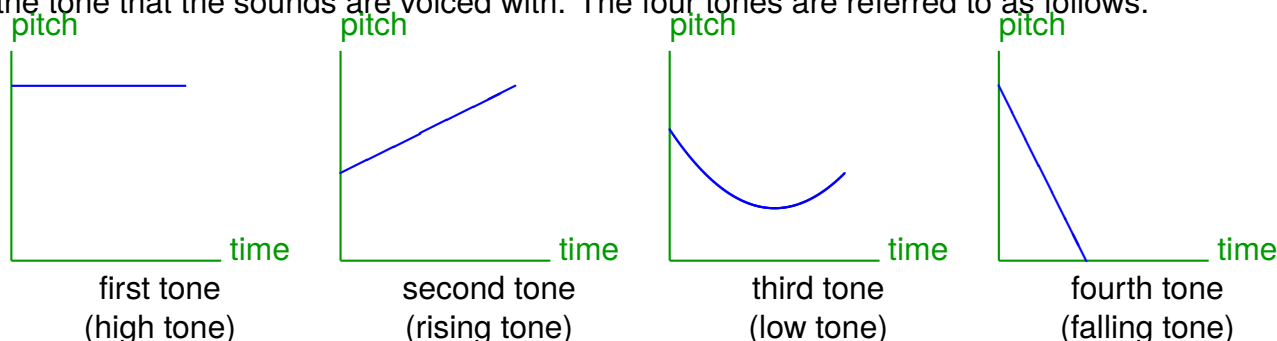
# PHONES OF MANDARIN CHINESE

### 3.1 How many phones do you have?

Chinese has about 401 phones (syllable sounds). English has about 15,831 phones. This result for English is from Chris Barker at New York University's Department of Linguistics. He used the *BEEP Pronouncing Dictionary* which apparently at the time contained “just over” 16,000 words, but now contains over 250,000 words. It can be freely downloaded from <http://svr-www.eng.cam.ac.uk/comp.speech/Section1/Lexical/beep.html> Chris Barker wrote a computer program to find all the syllables in the dictionary.

### 3.2 Spoken Chinese

Spoken Mandarin Chinese has about 401 syllable sounds (phones). In addition to these sounds, there are four tones plus a neutral tone; in general, meanings of sounds change (greatly) based on the tone that the sounds are voiced with. The four tones are referred to as follows:



As previously mentioned, using the correct tone is important, as the meaning of a character can change drastically with a change of tone, as illustrated by Example 3.1 (next) and Example 3.2 (page 22).

Example 3.1.

	tone	marking	examples		
①	first tone (high tone)	-	mā 媽 妈 mother	bā 八 八 eight	gē 歌 歌 song
②	second tone (rising tone)	ˊ	má 麻 麻 numbness	bá 拔 拔 to uproot	gé 格 格 checks
③	third tone (low tone)	ˇ	mǎ 馬 马 horse	bǎ 把 把 handle	gě 舸 舸 barge
④	fourth tone (falling tone)	ˋ	mà 罵 骂 to scold	bà 爸 爸 dad	gè 各 各 each
⑤	no tone (neutral tone)		ma 麼 么 (for questions)	ba 吧 吧 (for suggestions)	ge 個 个 (quantifier)

Example 3.2.

wǒ ài wǒ de mǔ qīn  
 我 愛 我的 母 親  
 我 爱 我的 母 亲  
 I love I 's mother parent  
 my mother  
 I love my mother (mǔ qīn).  
 jīn tiān tā yǒu bǐ sài  
 今 天 她 有 比 賽  
 今 天 她 有 比 赛  
 today sky she has compared race  
 today competition  
 Today she has a competition (bǐ sài).  
 wǒ kàn dào yí ge xiǎo tōu  
 我 看 到 一 個 小 偷  
 我 看 到 一 个 小 偷  
 I see arrive one one small steal  
 see a thief  
 I see a thief (xiǎo tōu).

wǒ ài wǒ de mù qín  
 我 愛 我的 木 琴  
 我 爱 我的 木 琴  
 I love I 's wood instrument  
 my xylophone  
 I love my xylophone (mù qín).  
 jīn tiān tā yǒu bí sāi  
 今 天 她 有 鼻 塞  
 今 天 她 有 鼻 塞  
 today sky she has nose plug  
 today stuffy nose  
 Today she has a stuffy nose (bí sāi).  
 wǒ kàn dào yí ge xiǎo tóu  
 我 看 到 一 個 小 頭  
 我 看 到 一 个 小 头  
 I see arrive one one small head  
 see a small head  
 I see a small head (xiǎo tóu).

wǒ tīng bù dǒng nǐ de yǔ yán  
 我 聽 不 懂 你 的 語 言  
 I hear not understand you 's speech statement  
 your language

I don't understand your language (yǔ yán).

wǒ tīng bù dǒng nǐ de yù yán  
 我 聽 不 懂 你 的 預 言  
 I hear not understand you 's advance statement  
 your prediction

I don't understand your prediction (yù yán).

Following is a fairly complete list of the phones (syllable sounds) of Mandarin Chinese.<sup>1</sup> The columns “1, 2, 3, 4, n” represent first tone, second tone, third tone, forth tone, and neutral, respectively. A check (✓) in a column signifies that a character with the given sound (“phone”) and tone exists in Mandarin Chinese. “IPA-n” represents *International Phonetic Alphabet narrow transcription*. “IPA-b” represents *International Phonetic Alphabet broad transcription*. For an audio pronunciation guides of IPA glyphs, see

<http://www.internationalphoneticalphabet.org/ipa-sounds/ipa-chart-with-sounds/>

<http://www.ipachart.com/>

	PinYin	ZhuYin	IPA	1	2	3	4	n		PinYin	ZhuYin	IPA	1	2	3	4	n
1.	a	ㄚ	a	✓				✓	2.	ai	ㄞ	ai	✓	✓	✓	✓	
3.	an	ㄢ	an	✓	✓		✓		4.	ang	ㄤ	aŋ	✓	✓		✓	
5.	ao	ㄠ	ao	✓	✓	✓	✓		6.	ba	ㄅ ㄚ	ba	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
7.	bai	ㄅ ㄞ	bai	✓	✓	✓	✓		8.	ban	ㄅ ㄢ	ban	✓		✓	✓	
9.	bang	ㄅ ㄤ	baŋ	✓		✓	✓		10.	bao	ㄅ ㄠ	bao	✓	✓	✓	✓	
11.	bei	ㄅ ㄟ	be	✓		✓	✓		12.	ben	ㄅ ㄣ	bən	✓		✓	✓	
13.	beng	ㄅ ㄥ	bəŋ	✓	✓	✓	✓		14.	bi	ㄅ ㄧ	bi	✓	✓	✓	✓	
15.	bian	ㄅ ㄧ ㄢ	biən	✓		✓	✓		16.	biao	ㄅ ㄧ ㄠ	biao	✓		✓		
17.	bie	ㄅ ㄧ ㄝ	biɛ	✓	✓	✓	✓		18.	bin	ㄅ ㄧ ㄣ	bin	✓	✓			
19.	bing	ㄅ ㄧ ㄥ	biŋ	✓		✓	✓		20.	bo	ㄅ ㄛ	bo	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
21.	bu	ㄅ ㄨ	bu			✓	✓		22.	ca	ㄘ ㄚ	tsa	✓				
23.	cai	ㄘ ㄞ	tsai	✓	✓	✓	✓		24.	can	ㄘ ㄢ	tsan	✓	✓	✓	✓	
25.	cang	ㄘ ㄤ	tsaŋ	✓	✓				26.	cao	ㄘ ㄠ	tsao	✓	✓	✓		
27.	ce	ㄘ ㄝ	tsɛ				✓		28.	cen	ㄘ ㄣ	tsən	✓	✓			
29.	ceng	ㄘ ㄥ	tsəŋ		✓				30.	cha	ㄘ ㄚ	tʃa	✓	✓	✓	✓	
31.	chai	ㄘ ㄞ	tʃai	✓	✓				32.	chan	ㄘ ㄢ	tʃan	✓	✓	✓	✓	
33.	chang	ㄘ ㄤ	tʃaŋ	✓	✓	✓	✓		34.	chao	ㄘ ㄠ	tʃao	✓	✓	✓	✓	
35.	che	ㄘ ㄝ	tʃɛ	✓		✓	✓		36.	chen	ㄘ ㄣ	tʃən	✓	✓		✓	
37.	cheng	ㄘ ㄥ	tʃəŋ	✓	✓	✓	✓		38.	chi	ㄘ ㄧ	tʃʃ	✓	✓	✓	✓	
39.	chong	ㄘ ㄨ ㄥ	tʃuŋ	✓	✓	✓	✓		40.	chou	ㄘ ㄡ	tʃou	✓	✓	✓	✓	
41.	chu	ㄘ ㄨ	tʃu	✓	✓	✓	✓		42.	chua	ㄘ ㄨ ㄚ	tʃua	✓				
43.	chuai	ㄘ ㄨ ㄞ	tʃuai			✓	✓		44.	chuan	ㄘ ㄨ ㄢ	tʃuan	✓	✓	✓	✓	

<sup>1</sup> 葉德明 (2000): *Far East Pinyin Chinese-English Dictionary: 遠東拼音漢英辭典*

Shibles (1994): *Sino-Platonic Papers*

45.	chuang	ㄔㄨㄤ	ʈʂuɑŋ	✓✓✓✓	46.	chui	ㄔㄨㄟ	ʈʂui	✓✓
47.	chun	ㄔㄨㄣ	ʈʂun	✓✓✓	48.	chuo	ㄔㄨㄛ	ʈʂuo	✓✓
49.	ci	ㄘ	ʈʂ	✓✓✓✓	50.	cong	ㄘㄨㄥ	ʈʂuŋ	✓✓
51.	cou	ㄘㄡ	tso	✓✓✓	52.	cu	ㄘㄨ	tsu	✓✓✓
53.	cuan	ㄘㄨㄢ	ʈʂuan	✓✓✓	54.	cui	ㄘㄨㄟ	tsue	✓✓✓
55.	cun	ㄘㄨㄣ	ʈʂun	✓✓✓✓	56.	cuo	ㄘㄨㄛ	tsuo	✓✓
57.	da	ㄉㄚ	da	✓✓✓✓	58.	dai	ㄉㄞ	dai	✓✓✓
59.	dan	ㄉㄢ	dan	✓✓✓	60.	dang	ㄉㄤ	daŋ	✓✓✓
61.	dao	ㄉㄠ	dao	✓✓✓	62.	de	ㄉㄜ	dɛ	✓✓✓
63.	dei	ㄉㄟ	de	✓✓✓	64.	deng	ㄉㄥ	dɑŋ	✓✓✓
65.	di	ㄉ	di	✓✓✓✓	66.	dian	ㄉㄢ	diɛn	✓✓✓
67.	diao	ㄉㄠ	diao	✓✓✓	68.	die	ㄉㄟ	diɛ	✓✓✓
69.	ding	ㄉㄩㄥ	din	✓✓✓	70.	diu	ㄉㄨ	diu	✓✓✓
71.	dong	ㄉㄨㄥ	duŋ	✓✓✓	72.	dou	ㄉㄡ	do	✓✓✓
73.	du	ㄉㄨ	du	✓✓✓✓	74.	duan	ㄉㄨㄢ	duan	✓✓✓
75.	dui	ㄉㄨㄟ	due	✓✓✓	76.	dun	ㄉㄨㄣ	dun	✓✓✓
77.	duo	ㄉㄨㄛ	duo	✓✓✓✓	78.	e	ㄜ	ɛ	✓✓✓✓
79.	en	ㄣ	ən	✓✓✓	80.	er	ㄦ	ɛr	✓✓✓
81.	fa	ㄈㄚ	fa	✓✓✓✓	82.	fan	ㄈㄢ	fan	✓✓✓✓
83.	fang	ㄈㄤ	faŋ	✓✓✓✓	84.	fei	ㄈㄟ	fe	✓✓✓✓
85.	fen	ㄈㄣ	fən	✓✓✓✓	86.	feng	ㄈㄥ	fuŋ	✓✓✓✓
87.	fo	ㄈㄛ	fɔ	✓✓✓	88.	fou	ㄈㄡ	fɔu	✓✓✓
89.	fu	ㄈㄨ	fu	✓✓✓✓	90.	ga	ㄍㄚ	ga	✓✓✓
91.	gai	ㄍㄞ	gai	✓✓✓	92.	gan	ㄍㄢ	gan	✓✓✓
93.	gang	ㄍㄤ	gaŋ	✓✓✓	94.	gao	ㄍㄠ	gao	✓✓✓
95.	ge	ㄍㄜ	gɛ	✓✓✓✓	96.	gei	ㄍㄟ	ge	✓✓✓
97.	gen	ㄍㄣ	gən	✓✓✓	98.	geng	ㄍㄥ	gɑŋ	✓✓✓
99.	gong	ㄍㄨㄥ	guŋ	✓✓✓	100.	gou	ㄍㄡ	gɔu	✓✓✓
101.	gu	ㄍㄨ	gu	✓✓✓✓	102.	gua	ㄍㄨㄚ	gua	✓✓✓
103.	guai	ㄍㄨㄞ	guai	✓✓✓	104.	guan	ㄍㄨㄢ	guan	✓✓✓
105.	guang	ㄍㄨㄤ	guaŋ	✓✓✓	106.	gui	ㄍㄨㄟ	gue	✓✓✓
107.	gun	ㄍㄨㄣ	gun	✓✓✓	108.	guo	ㄍㄨㄛ	guo	✓✓✓✓
109.	ha	ㄏㄚ	xa	✓✓✓	110.	hai	ㄏㄞ	xai	✓✓✓✓
111.	han	ㄏㄢ	xan	✓✓✓✓	112.	hang	ㄏㄤ	xaŋ	✓✓✓
113.	hao	ㄏㄠ	xao	✓✓✓	114.	he	ㄏㄜ	xɛ	✓✓✓
115.	hei	ㄏㄟ	xe	✓✓✓	116.	hen	ㄏㄣ	xən	✓✓✓
117.	heng	ㄏㄥ	xɑŋ	✓✓✓	118.	hong	ㄏㄨㄥ	xuŋ	✓✓✓✓
119.	hou	ㄏㄡ	xɔ	✓✓✓	120.	hu	ㄏㄨ	xu	✓✓✓✓
121.	hua	ㄏㄨㄚ	xua	✓✓✓	122.	huai	ㄏㄨㄞ	xuai	✓✓✓
123.	huan	ㄏㄨㄢ	xuan	✓✓✓✓	124.	huang	ㄏㄨㄤ	xuaŋ	✓✓✓✓
125.	hui	ㄏㄨㄟ	xue	✓✓✓✓	126.	hun	ㄏㄨㄣ	xun	✓✓✓✓
127.	huo	ㄏㄨㄛ	xuɔ	✓✓✓✓	128.	ji	ㄐ	dʒi	✓✓✓✓
129.	jia	ㄐㄚ	dʒia	✓✓✓✓	130.	jian	ㄐㄢ	dʒiɛn n	✓✓✓✓
131.	jiang	ㄐㄤ	dʒiaŋ ŋ	✓✓✓	132.	jiao	ㄐㄠ	dʒiao o	✓✓✓✓
133.	jie	ㄐㄜ	dʒiɛ	✓✓✓✓	134.	jin	ㄐㄣ	dʒiɪn	✓✓✓
135.	jing	ㄐㄥ	dʒiŋ	✓✓✓	136.	jiong	ㄐㄨㄥ	dʒiɪŋ ŋ	✓✓✓
137.	jiu	ㄐㄡ	dʒiu	✓✓✓	138.	ju	ㄐㄨ	dʒy	✓✓✓✓
139.	juan	ㄐㄨㄢ	dʒyan n	✓✓✓	140.	jue	ㄐㄨㄜ	dʒyɛ	✓✓✓
141.	jun	ㄐㄨㄣ	dʒyn	✓✓✓	142.	ka	ㄎㄚ	ka	✓✓✓
143.	kai	ㄎㄞ	kai	✓✓✓	144.	kan	ㄎㄢ	kan	✓✓✓
145.	kang	ㄎㄤ	kaŋ	✓✓✓✓	146.	kao	ㄎㄠ	kao	✓✓✓

147.	ke	ㄎㄜ	kɑ	✓✓✓✓	148.	ken	ㄎㄣ	kən	✓✓
149.	keng	ㄎㄥ	kɑŋ	✓✓	150.	kong	ㄎㄨㄥ	kun̩	✓✓✓
151.	kou	ㄎㄡ	ko	✓✓	152.	ku	ㄎㄨ	ku	✓✓✓
153.	kua	ㄎㄨㄚ	kua	✓✓✓	154.	kuai	ㄎㄨㄞ	kuai	✓
155.	kuan	ㄎㄨㄢ	kuan	✓✓	156.	kuang	ㄎㄨㄤ	kuang	✓✓✓
157.	kui	ㄎㄨㄟ	kue	✓✓✓✓	158.	kun	ㄎㄨㄣ	kun	✓✓✓
159.	kuo	ㄎㄨㄛ	kuo	✓	160.	la	ㄌㄚ	la	✓✓✓✓✓
161.	lai	ㄌㄞ	lai	✓✓	162.	lan	ㄌㄢ	lan	✓✓✓✓
163.	lang	ㄌㄤ	lan̩	✓✓✓	164.	lao	ㄌㄠ	lao	✓✓✓✓
165.	le	ㄌㄜ	lɤ	✓✓✓	166.	lei	ㄌㄟ	le	✓✓✓✓
167.	leng	ㄌㄥ	lɑŋ	✓✓✓	168.	li	ㄌㄧ	li	✓✓✓✓✓
169.	lia	ㄌㄧㄚ	lia	✓	170.	lian	ㄌㄧㄢ	lien	✓✓✓✓
171.	liang	ㄌㄧㄤ	lian̩	✓✓✓	172.	liao	ㄌㄧㄠ	liao	✓✓✓✓
173.	lie	ㄌㄧㄝ	lie	✓✓✓✓	174.	lin	ㄌㄧㄣ	lin	✓✓✓✓
175.	ling	ㄌㄧㄥ	lin̩	✓✓✓✓	176.	liu	ㄌㄧㄡ	liu	✓✓✓✓
177.	long	ㄌㄨㄥ	luŋ	✓✓✓	178.	lou	ㄌㄡ	lo	✓✓✓✓✓
179.	lu	ㄌㄨ	lu	✓✓✓	180.	lū	ㄌㄨ	ly	✓✓✓
181.	lūe	ㄌㄨㄝ	lyɤ	✓	182.	luan	ㄌㄨㄢ	luan	✓✓✓
183.	lun	ㄌㄨㄣ	lun	✓✓✓	184.	luo	ㄌㄨㄛ	luo	✓✓✓✓
185.	ma	ㄇㄚ	ma	✓✓✓✓✓	186.	mai	ㄇㄞ	mai	✓✓✓
187.	man	ㄇㄢ	man	✓✓✓	188.	mang	ㄇㄤ	man̩	✓✓
189.	mao	ㄇㄠ	mao	✓✓✓✓	190.	me	ㄇㄜ	mə	✓
191.	mei	ㄇㄟ	me	✓✓✓	192.	men	ㄇㄣ	men	✓✓✓
193.	meng	ㄇㄥ	mɑŋ	✓✓✓✓	194.	mi	ㄇㄧ	mi	✓✓✓✓
195.	mian	ㄇㄧㄢ	mien	✓✓✓	196.	miao	ㄇㄧㄠ	miao	✓✓✓
197.	mie	ㄇㄧㄝ	mie	✓✓	198.	min	ㄇㄧㄣ	min	✓✓
199.	ming	ㄇㄧㄥ	min̩	✓✓✓	200.	miu	ㄇㄧㄡ	miu	✓
201.	mo	ㄇㄛ	mo	✓✓✓✓	202.	mou	ㄇㄡ	mou	✓✓✓
203.	mu	ㄇㄨ	mu	✓✓✓	204.	na	ㄋㄚ	na	✓✓✓✓
205.	nai	ㄋㄞ	nai	✓✓	206.	nan	ㄋㄢ	nan	✓✓✓
207.	nang	ㄋㄤ	nan̩	✓✓	208.	nao	ㄋㄠ	nao	✓✓✓
209.	ne	ㄋㄜ	nə	✓✓	210.	nei	ㄋㄟ	ne	✓✓
211.	nen	ㄋㄣ	nən	✓	212.	neng	ㄋㄥ	nɑŋ	✓✓
213.	ni	ㄋㄧ	ni	✓✓✓	214.	nian	ㄋㄧㄢ	nien	✓✓✓✓
215.	niang	ㄋㄧㄤ	nian̩	✓✓	216.	niao	ㄋㄧㄠ	niao	✓✓
217.	nie	ㄋㄧㄝ	nie	✓✓	218.	nin	ㄋㄧㄣ	nin	✓✓
219.	ning	ㄋㄧㄥ	nin̩	✓✓✓	220.	niu	ㄋㄧㄡ	niu	✓✓✓✓
221.	nong	ㄋㄨㄥ	nuŋ	✓✓✓	222.	nou	ㄋㄡ	nou	✓✓✓✓
223.	nu	ㄋㄨ	nu	✓✓✓	224.	nū	ㄋㄨ	ny	✓✓
225.	nuan	ㄋㄨㄢ	nuan	✓	226.	nūe	ㄋㄨㄝ	nye	✓
227.	nuo	ㄋㄨㄛ	nuo	✓✓✓	228.	o	ㄛ	o	✓✓
229.	ou	ㄛ	o	✓✓✓	230.	pa	ㄆㄚ	pa	✓✓✓
231.	pai	ㄆㄞ	pai	✓✓✓	232.	pan	ㄆㄢ	pan	✓✓✓
233.	pang	ㄆㄤ	pan̩	✓✓✓	234.	pao	ㄆㄠ	pao	✓✓✓
235.	pei	ㄆㄟ	pe	✓✓✓	236.	pen	ㄆㄣ	pən	✓✓✓
237.	peng	ㄆㄥ	pɑŋ	✓✓✓✓	238.	pi	ㄆㄧ	pi	✓✓✓✓
239.	pian	ㄆㄧㄢ	pien	✓✓✓	240.	piao	ㄆㄧㄠ	piao	✓✓✓✓
241.	pin	ㄆㄧㄣ	pin	✓✓✓✓	242.	ping	ㄆㄧㄥ	pin̩	✓✓✓
243.	po	ㄆㄛ	pɔ	✓✓✓✓	244.	pou	ㄆㄡ	po	✓✓✓
245.	pu	ㄆㄨ	pu	✓✓✓✓	246.	qi	ㄑㄧ	tʃi	✓✓✓✓
247.	qia	ㄑㄧㄚ	tʃia	✓✓✓✓	248.	qian	ㄑㄧㄢ	tʃien	✓✓✓✓

249.	qiang	ㄑ ㄣ ㄑ ㄨ ㄤ	tʃian	✓✓✓✓	250.	qiao	ㄑ ㄣ ㄠ	tʃiao	✓✓✓✓
251.	qie	ㄑ ㄣ ㄞ	tʃie	✓✓✓✓	252.	qin	ㄑ ㄣ ㄣ	tʃin	✓✓✓✓
253.	qing	ㄑ ㄣ ㄣ	tʃin	✓✓✓✓	254.	qiong	ㄑ ㄣ ㄣ	tʃiun	✓✓
255.	qiu	ㄑ ㄣ ㄩ	tʃio	✓✓✓	256.	qū	ㄑ ㄣ	tʃy	✓✓✓✓
257.	quan	ㄑ ㄣ ㄩ ㄢ	tʃyan	✓✓✓✓	258.	que	ㄑ ㄣ ㄞ	tʃyɛ	✓✓✓
259.	qun	ㄑ ㄣ ㄣ	tʃyn	✓	260.	ran	ㄣ ㄢ	ʃan	✓✓
261.	rang	ㄣ ㄢ	ʃan	✓✓✓✓	262.	rao	ㄣ ㄠ	ʃao	✓✓✓
263.	re	ㄣ ㄞ	ʃɛ	✓✓✓	264.	ren	ㄣ ㄣ	ʃən	✓✓✓
265.	reng	ㄣ ㄣ	ʃan	✓✓	266.	ri	ㄣ	ʃ	✓
267.	rong	ㄣ ㄣ ㄣ	ʃun	✓✓	268.	rou	ㄣ ㄩ	ʃo	✓✓✓
269.	ru	ㄣ ㄩ	ʃu	✓✓✓	270.	ruan	ㄣ ㄩ ㄢ	ʃuan	✓
271.	rui	ㄣ ㄩ ㄣ	ʃue	✓✓	272.	run	ㄣ ㄩ ㄣ	ʃʌn	✓
273.	ruo	ㄣ ㄩ ㄞ	ʃuo	✓	274.	sa	ㄣ ㄩ	sa	✓✓✓
275.	sai	ㄣ ㄩ	sai	✓✓	276.	san	ㄣ ㄩ	san	✓✓✓
277.	sang	ㄣ ㄩ	san	✓✓✓	278.	sao	ㄣ ㄠ	sao	✓✓✓
279.	se	ㄣ ㄞ	sɛ	✓	280.	sen	ㄣ ㄣ	sən	✓
281.	seng	ㄣ ㄣ	sʌn	✓	282.	sha	ㄣ ㄩ	ʃa	✓✓✓✓
283.	shai	ㄣ ㄩ	ʃai	✓✓✓	284.	shan	ㄣ ㄩ	ʃan	✓✓✓
285.	shang	ㄣ ㄩ	ʃan	✓✓✓	286.	shao	ㄣ ㄠ	ʃao	✓✓✓✓
287.	she	ㄣ ㄞ	ʃɛ	✓✓✓✓	288.	shei	ㄣ ㄣ	ʃe	✓
289.	shen	ㄣ ㄣ	ʃən	✓✓✓✓	290.	sheng	ㄣ ㄣ	ʃʌn	✓✓✓✓
291.	shi	ㄣ	ʃʃ	✓✓✓✓✓	292.	shou	ㄣ ㄩ	ʃo	✓✓✓✓
293.	shu	ㄣ ㄩ	ʃu	✓✓✓✓	294.	shua	ㄣ ㄩ ㄩ	ʃua	✓✓✓
295.	shuai	ㄣ ㄩ ㄩ	ʃuai	✓✓✓	296.	shuan	ㄣ ㄩ ㄢ	ʃuan	✓✓
297.	shuang	ㄣ ㄩ ㄢ	ʃuan	✓✓	298.	shui	ㄣ ㄩ ㄣ	ʃue	✓✓✓
299.	shun	ㄣ ㄩ ㄣ	ʃun	✓✓	300.	shuo	ㄣ ㄩ ㄞ	ʃuo	✓✓
301.	si	ㄣ	sw	✓✓✓	302.	song	ㄣ ㄩ ㄣ	sun	✓✓✓
303.	sou	ㄣ ㄩ	so	✓✓✓	304.	su	ㄣ ㄩ	su	✓✓✓
305.	suan	ㄣ ㄩ ㄢ	suan	✓✓	306.	sui	ㄣ ㄩ ㄣ	sue	✓✓✓✓
307.	sun	ㄣ ㄩ ㄣ	sun	✓✓✓	308.	suo	ㄣ ㄩ ㄞ	suo	✓✓✓
309.	ta	ㄣ ㄩ	ta	✓✓✓	310.	tai	ㄣ ㄩ	tai	✓✓✓
311.	tan	ㄣ ㄩ	tan	✓✓✓✓	312.	tang	ㄣ ㄩ	tan	✓✓✓✓
313.	tao	ㄣ ㄠ	tao	✓✓✓✓	314.	te	ㄣ ㄞ	tɛ	✓✓✓
315.	teng	ㄣ ㄣ	tʌn	✓	316.	ti	ㄣ ㄣ	ti	✓✓✓✓
317.	tian	ㄣ ㄣ ㄢ	tiɛn	✓✓✓	318.	tiao	ㄣ ㄣ ㄠ	tiao	✓✓✓✓
319.	tie	ㄣ ㄣ ㄞ	tiɛ	✓✓	320.	ting	ㄣ ㄣ ㄣ	tiŋ	✓✓✓✓
321.	tong	ㄣ ㄣ ㄣ	tun	✓✓✓✓	322.	tou	ㄣ ㄩ	to	✓✓✓
323.	tu	ㄣ ㄩ	tu	✓✓✓✓	324.	tuan	ㄣ ㄩ ㄢ	tuan	✓✓✓
325.	tui	ㄣ ㄩ ㄣ	tuei	✓✓✓✓	326.	tun	ㄣ ㄩ ㄣ	tʌn	✓✓✓
327.	tuo	ㄣ ㄩ ㄞ	tuo	✓✓✓✓	328.	wa	ㄣ ㄩ	wa	✓✓✓✓✓
329.	wai	ㄣ ㄩ	wai	✓✓✓	330.	wan	ㄣ ㄩ	wan	✓✓✓✓
331.	wang	ㄣ ㄩ	wan	✓✓✓✓	332.	wei	ㄣ ㄣ	we	✓✓✓✓
333.	wen	ㄣ ㄣ	wən	✓✓✓✓	334.	weng	ㄣ ㄣ	wʌn	✓✓✓
335.	wo	ㄣ ㄞ	wo	✓✓✓	336.	wu	ㄣ	wu	✓✓✓✓
337.	xi	ㄣ ㄣ	xi	✓✓✓✓	338.	xia	ㄣ ㄣ ㄩ	ɕia	✓✓✓
339.	xian	ㄣ ㄣ ㄢ	ɕiɛn	✓✓✓✓	340.	xiang	ㄣ ㄣ ㄩ	ɕiɛŋ	✓✓✓✓
341.	xiao	ㄣ ㄣ ㄠ	ɕiao	✓✓✓✓	342.	xie	ㄣ ㄣ ㄞ	ɕiɛ	✓✓✓✓
343.	xin	ㄣ ㄣ ㄣ	ɕin	✓✓✓	344.	xing	ㄣ ㄣ ㄣ	ɕiŋ	✓✓✓✓
345.	xiong	ㄣ ㄣ ㄣ	ɕioŋ	✓✓✓	346.	xiu	ㄣ ㄣ ㄩ	ɕio	✓✓✓
347.	xu	ㄣ ㄣ	ɕy	✓✓✓✓	348.	xuan	ㄣ ㄣ ㄢ	ɕuan	✓✓✓✓
349.	xue	ㄣ ㄣ ㄞ	ɕyɛ	✓✓✓✓	350.	xun	ㄣ ㄣ ㄣ	ɕyn	✓✓✓✓

351.	ya	— 丫	ja	✓✓✓✓✓	352.	yai	— 𠂇	jaɪ	✓
353.	yan	— 𠂇	jen	✓✓✓✓	354.	yang	— 尤	jaŋ	✓✓✓✓
355.	yao	— 幺	jao	✓✓✓✓	356.	ye	— ㄝ	jɛ	✓✓✓✓
357.	yi	—	ji	✓✓✓✓	358.	yin	— ㄣ	jin	✓✓✓✓
359.	ying	— ㄥ	jɪŋ	✓✓✓✓	360.	yong	ㄩ ㄥ	jɔŋ	✓✓✓✓
361.	you	— 又	ju	✓✓✓✓	362.	yu	ㄩ	jy	✓✓✓✓
363.	yuan	ㄩ ㄢ	jyan	✓✓✓✓	364.	yue	ㄩ ㄝ	jyɛ	✓✓✓
365.	yun	ㄩ ㄣ	jyn	✓✓✓✓	366.	za	ㄗ ㄚ	dza	✓
367.	zai	ㄗ 𠂇	dzaɪ	✓✓✓✓	368.	zan	ㄗ ㄢ	dzan	✓✓✓✓
369.	zang	ㄗ 尤	dzaŋ	✓✓✓✓	370.	zao	ㄗ ㄠ	dzao	✓✓✓✓
371.	ze	ㄗ ㄜ	dzɤ	✓✓✓✓	372.	zei	ㄗ ㄟ	dze	✓✓✓✓
373.	zen	ㄗ ㄣ	dzen	✓✓✓✓	374.	zeng	ㄗ ㄥ	dzɛŋ	✓✓✓✓
375.	zha	ㄗ ㄚ	za	✓✓✓✓	376.	zhai	ㄗ 𠂇	zaɪ	✓✓✓✓
377.	zhan	ㄗ ㄢ	zan	✓✓✓✓	378.	zhang	ㄗ 尤	zaŋ	✓✓✓✓
379.	zhao	ㄗ ㄠ	zao	✓✓✓✓	380.	zhe	ㄗ ㄜ	zɤ	✓✓✓✓
381.	zhen	ㄗ ㄣ	zen	✓✓✓✓	382.	zheng	ㄗ ㄥ	zɛŋ	✓✓✓✓
383.	zhi	ㄗ	zɿ	✓✓✓✓	384.	zhong	ㄗ ㄨ ㄥ	zun	✓✓✓✓
385.	zhou	ㄗ 又	zɔu	✓✓✓✓	386.	zhu	ㄗ ㄨ	zu	✓✓✓✓
387.	zhua	ㄗ ㄨ ㄚ	zua	✓✓✓✓	388.	zhuai	ㄗ ㄨ 𠂇	zuaɪ	✓✓✓✓
389.	zhuan	ㄗ ㄨ ㄢ	zuan	✓✓✓✓	390.	zhuang	ㄗ ㄨ 尤	zuaŋ	✓✓✓✓
391.	zhui	ㄗ ㄨ ㄟ	zui	✓✓✓✓	392.	zhun	ㄗ ㄨ ㄣ	zun	✓✓✓✓
393.	zhuo	ㄗ ㄨ ㄜ	zuo	✓✓✓✓	394.	zi	ㄗ	dzu	✓✓✓✓
395.	zong	ㄗ ㄨ ㄥ	dzun	✓✓✓✓	396.	zou	ㄗ 又	dzo	✓✓✓✓
397.	zu	ㄗ ㄨ	dzu	✓✓✓✓	398.	zuan	ㄗ ㄨ ㄢ	dzuɛn	✓✓✓✓
399.	zui	ㄗ ㄨ ㄟ	dzui	✓✓✓✓	400.	zun	ㄗ ㄨ ㄣ	dzun	✓✓✓✓
401.	zuo	ㄗ ㄨ ㄜ	dzuo	✓✓✓✓					





4.1 Personal pronouns

dài

代

代

substitute

míng

名

名

name

cí

詞

詞

word

noun

pronoun

In English, *personal pronouns* often change substantially depending on

- gender (e.g. he, she, it)
- grammatical number (e.g. he, them)
- grammatical case (e.g. he, his)

In Mandarin Chinese, such modifications are simpler. The spoken form of Mandarin does not distinguish between different genders of pronouns. “He”, “she”, and “it” are all pronounced “tā”. However the written form of Mandarin does distinguish gender. “He” is written 他, “she” is written 她, “it” is written 牠. A singular pronoun becomes plural by adding the 們 (mén) character to the end. A pronoun becomes possessive by adding the 的 (de) character to the end.

Specific examples of pronouns are listed in Vocabulary Table 4.1 (page 29).

Table 4.1: Personal pronouns

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
I	wǒ 我 我 I	we	wǒ mén 我 們 我 們 I (plural)
you (singular)	nǐ 你 你 you	you (plural)	nǐ mén 你 們 你 們 you (plural)

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
he	tā 他 他 he	them (masculine)	tā mén 他 們 他 們 he (plural)
she	tā 她 她 she	them (femenine)	tā mén 她 們 她 們 she (plural)
it	tā 它 它 it	them (neuter)	tā mén 它 們 它 們 it (plural)
my	wǒ de 我 的 我 的 I ('s)	our	wǒ de de 我 的 的 我 的 的 I ('s) ('s)
your (singular)	nǐ de 你 的 你 的 you ('s)	your (plural)	nǐ mén de 你 們 的 你 們 的 you ('s)
his	tā de 他 的 他 的 he	their (masculine)	tā mén de 他 們 的 他 們 的 he ('s)
her	tā de 她 的 她 的 she ('s)	their (femenine)	tā mén de 她 們 的 她 們 的 she ('s)
it's	tā de 它 的 它 的 it ('s)	their (neuter)	tā mén de 它 們 的 它 們 的 it ('s)

In English, when we want to emphasize a noun or pronoun, we might do so by adding some word after the noun/pronoun such as in “I myself”, “he himself”, “they themselves”, “Mary herself”, “The President himself”, etc. In Chinese, a similar effect can be achieved by the Chinese character 才 (cái) or 則 (zé). Examples appear in Example 4.1 (next).

Example 4.1 (I myself).

1. **wǒ** **cái** **tǎo** **yàn** **nǐ** **ne** <sup>1</sup>  
 我 才 討 厭 你 呢 ! I myself  
 我 才 讨 厌 你 呢 ! loathe you!
- I only to demand to detest you (a sound)  
 I myself to loathe
2. **bà** **ba** **zé** **fù** **zé** **tūi** **shǒu** **tūi** **chē** <sup>2</sup>  
 爸 爸 則 負 責 推 手 推 車  
 爸 爸 则 负 责 推 手 推 车
- dad dad as for him to bear duty to push hand to push wheeled devices  
 dad to be in charge of shopping cart
- Dad, as for him, was in charge of pushing the shopping cart.

## 4.2 Quantifiers

For every noun in Chinese, there is a *quantifier* character, or *measure words* (*MW*). So when you talk about a number of something, the quantifier goes between the number and the noun. The most common quantifier is 個 (*ge*). And when in doubt, just use the 個 quantifier and you will be understood, howbeit possibly using substandard Chinese. Vocabulary Table 4.2 (next) provides some quantifiers used in Chinese.

Table 4.2: quantifiers for countable nouns

quantifier	usage	examples
<b>bǎ</b> 把 把 handle	things with long handles	<b>chǎn</b> <b>zi</b> <b>shū</b> <b>zi</b> 鏟 子 , 梳 子 铲 子 , 梳 子 shovel son comb son shovel comb
<b>běn</b> 本 本 stem	books	<b>shū</b> 書 书 book
<b>bù</b> 部 部 part	vehicles	<b>chē</b> <b>zi</b> 車 子 车 子 vehicle son vehicle
<b>dòng</b> 棟 棟 main beam	buildings	<b>mù</b> <b>wū</b> 木 屋 木 屋 wood house cottage

continued on the next page ...

<sup>1</sup> 張晉霖 (2005e): 白雲枕頭 (*bái yún zhěn tóu—White Cloud Pillow*), page 1

<sup>2</sup> Young and Kim (2003c): 毛蟲家族去購物 *The caterpillar family goes shopping*, page 8

...continued from the previous page

quantifier	usage	examples
dùan 段 段 paragraph	a length of things	<div> <div> shí jiān 時 間 时 间 time between time </div> <div> liǔ tiáo 柳 條 柳 条 willow stip willow twig </div> </div>
dùn 頓 頓 pause	meals	
dǒu 朵 朵	flowers	<div> hūa 花 花 flower </div>
fēng 封 封 to seal	letters (of correspondence)	<div> xìn 信 信 letter </div>
fèn 份 份 portion	copies of documents, gifts	<div> <div> bào zhǐ 報 紙 报 纸 to report paper newspaper </div> <div> lǐ wù 禮 物 礼 物 ceremony matter gift </div> </div>
fu 幅 幅 width of cloth	pictures, paintings	<div> hùa 畫 画 picture </div>
ge 個 个 (quantifier)	general purpose quantifier	
gēn 根 根 roots	root like things	<div> <div> shù zhī 樹 支 树 支 tree branch branch </div> <div> <div> hú lúo 胡 蘿 胡 萝 reckless creeping plant carrot </div> <div> bo 蔔 蔔 edible roots </div> </div> <div> biān zi 鞭 子 鞭 子 whip son whip </div> </div>
hù 戶 户 door	things with doors	<div> rén jiā 人 家 人 家 people household household </div>

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

quantifier	usage	examples
<b>jiān</b> 間 间 room	houses and rooms	<b>fáng</b> <b>zi</b> 房 子 房 子 house son house
<b>jiā</b> 家 家 household	companies	<b>gōng</b> <b>sī</b> 公 司 公 司 public in charge of company
<b>jiàn</b> 件 件 document	matters	<b>shì</b> <b>qíng</b> 事 情 事 情 affairs situation a matter
<b>kē</b> 棵 棵 (quantifier)	trees, and small objects	<b>qiú</b> , <b>bèi</b> <b>ké</b> , <b>cǎo</b> <b>méi</b> , <b>fān</b> <b>qié</b> , <b>shù</b> 球 , 貝 殼 , 草 莓 , 番 茄 , 樹 球 , 貝 壳 , 草 莓 , 番 茄 , 树 ball shellfish shell straw berries a sort of eggplant tree shell strawberry tomato
<b>kǒu</b> 口 口 mouth	objects with openings	<b>jǐng</b> 井 井 well
<b>kuài</b> 塊 块 chunk	chunks of things	<b>jī</b> <b>mù</b> 積 木 积 木 to accumulate wood building blocks
<b>lì</b> 粒 粒 granule	small items	<b>niǔ</b> <b>kòu</b> 鈕 扣 钮 扣 button to button clothing button
<b>liàng</b> 輛 辆	vehicles	<b>qì</b> <b>chē</b> 汽 車 汽 车 steam vehicle car
<b>miàn</b> 面 面 face to face	things with a face	<b>jìng</b> <b>zi</b> 鏡 子 镜 子 mirror son mirror

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

quantifier	usage	examples
<p>pī 匹 匹 equal to</p>	pack animals	<p>mǎ , bān mǎ 馬 , 斑 馬 horse , spots horse zebra</p>
<p>piàn 片 片 slice</p>	wide and flat objects	<p>hūa yuán 花 園 flower garden flower garden</p>
<p>tái 台 台 platform</p>	heavy machines and appliances	<p>diàn shì , diàn nǎo 電 視 , 電 腦 electric to look at electric brain television computer</p>
<p>táng 堂 堂 hall</p>	class session	<p>kè 課 課 lesson</p>
<p>tiáo 條 條 long strip</p>	long ribbon-like objects	<p>lù yú (see also 尾 wěi) máo jīn 路 , 魚 , 毛 巾 路 , 魚 , 毛 巾 road fish hair cloth towel</p>
<p>tóu 頭 頭 head</p>	large animals	<p>niú dà xiàng shī zi 牛 , 大 象 , 獅 子 牛 , 大 象 , 獅 子 cow big elephant lion son elephant lion</p>
<p>wěi 尾 尾 tail</p>	fish	<p>yú (more commonly 條 tiáo) 魚 魚 fish</p>
<p>wèi 位 位 location</p>	polite quantifier for people; can also use 個 (ge)	<p>nǚ hái (see also Example 4.2 page 35) 女 孩 女 孩 female child girl</p>
<p>zhǎn 盞 盞 small cup</p>	lamps	<p>yóu dēng 油 燈 油 灯 oil lamp oil lamp</p>

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

quantifier	usage	examples
<b>zhāng</b> 張 張 to spread	flat objects	<b>zhǐ</b> <b>tiáo</b> , <b>shū</b> <b>zhuō</b> , <b>chuáng</b> 紙 條 , 書 桌 , 床 紙 条 , 书 桌 , 床 paper strip book table bed slip of paper desk
<b>zhī</b> 隻 只 single	animals (both big and small), hand-held stick-like utensils	<b>dà</b> <b>xiàng</b> , <b>hú</b> <b>dié</b> , <b>kùai</b> <b>zi</b> , <b>yá</b> <b>shuā</b> 大 象 , 蝴 蝶 , 筷 子 , 牙 刷 大 象 , 蝴 蝶 , 筷 子 , 牙 刷 big elephant butterfly butterfly chopsticks son tooth brush elephant butterfly chopsticks toothbrush

An interesting way to make a noun plural is to double the quantifier in front of it, as illustrated in Example 4.2 (next).

Example 4.2 (plural form using double 位).

E X	zhè	xiē	tiān	é	tú	rán	biàn	chéng	yí	wèi	wèi	nǚ	hái	3
	這	些	天	鵝	突	然	變	成	一	位	位	女	孩	◦
	这	些	天	鵝	突	然	变	成	一	位	位	女	孩	◦
	this	some	sky	goose	suddenly	just so	become	accomplish	one	(mw)	(mw)	female	child	
	these	swan	suddenly	become	girl									
	These swans suddenly became girls.													

## 4.3 Adjectives

<b>xíng</b>	<b>róng</b>	<b>cí</b>
形	容	詞
形	容	词
appearance	contain	word
to describe		
adjective		

As in English, an adjective in Chinese often comes before the noun it describes.

Example 4.3 (Common adjectives describing size).

<b>dà</b>	<b>xǎo</b>	<b>cháng</b>	<b>duǎn</b>	<b>gāo</b>	<b>ǎi</b>	<b>kūan</b>	<b>zhǎi</b>	<b>pàng</b>	<b>shòu</b>	<b>zhòng</b>	<b>qīng</b>
大	小	長	短	高	矮	寬	窄	胖	瘦	重	輕
大	小	长	短	高	矮	宽	窄	胖	瘦	重	轻
big	small	long	short	tall	short	wide	narrow	fat	thin	heavy	light

<sup>3</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999c): 天鵝湖 (*tiān é hú—Swan Lake*), page 6

## 4.4 Questions

wèn	tí
問	題
问	题
to ask	a subject
question	

Questions in English are often expressed with the assistance of changing the tone of the sentence—often using a rising tone. Sometimes boolean questions (where the response is expected to be either true or false) are expressed using the “*or not*” clause as in “Are you coming or not?” In Chinese, tone is used to express the meaning of individual words and so tone alone is not such a good option for expressing questions in Chinese.

There are three basic forms of asking questions in Chinese:

1. Placing the 嗎 character at the end of an interrogative sentence as illustrated in the left half of Sentence Table 4.4 (page 36).
2. Using a question word such as 什麼, 誰, 怎麼, 哪裡, or 哪個 as described in Vocabulary Table 4.3 (page 36).
3. Using a boolean construction such as *verb not verb* as illustrated in the right half of Sentence Table 4.4 (page 36).

ma
嗎
吗
(?)

Table 4.3: Question words

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
how	zěn me 怎 麼 怎 么 who	what	shé me 什 麼 什 么 what
where	nǎ lǐ 哪 裡 哪 里 where inside	which	něi ge 哪 個 哪 个 which
who	shéi 誰 谁	why	wèi shé me 為 什 麼 为 什 么 for what

Table 4.4: Boolean question sentences

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
Do you want to eat?	nǐ yào chī fàn ma ? 你 要 吃 飯 嗎 ? 你 要 吃 饭 吗 ? you want eat rice (?)	Do you want to eat?	nǐ yào bú yào chī fàn 你 要 不 要 吃 飯 你 要 不 要 吃 饭 you want not want eat rice ma 嗎 ? 吗 ? (?)

continued on the next page ...



...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
Do you have old newspapers?	<p>nǐ yǒu jiù de 你 有 舊 的 你 有 旧 的 you have old (adj) old</p> <p>bào zhǐ ma 報 紙 嗎 ? 报 纸 吗 ? inform paper (?) newspaper</p>	Do you have old newspapers?	<p>nǐ yǒu méi yǒu jiù de 你 有 沒 有 舊 的 你 有 沒 有 旧 的 you have not have old (adj) not have old</p> <p>bào zhǐ ma 報 紙 嗎 ? 报 纸 吗 ? inform paper (?) newspaper</p>
Is it the green one?	<p>shì lǜ sè de ma 是 綠 色 的 嗎 ? 是 绿 色 的 吗 ? is green color (adj) (?) green</p>	Is it the green one?	<p>shì bú shì lǜ sè de ? 是 不 是 綠 色 的 ? 是 不 是 绿 色 的 ? is not is green color (adj) green</p>

Table 4.5: Miscellaneous Question words

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
Excuse me, can I ask ...	<p>qǐng wèn ... 請 問 请 问 to request to ask</p>	to consult	<p>qǐng jiào<sup>4</sup> 請 教 请 教 to request to teach</p>
is it possible that ...	<p>nán dào 難 道 难 道 difficult road</p>		

Table 4.6: Question sentences

English	Chinese (中文)
Is it possible that someone is playing a practical joke?	<p>nán dào yǒu rén è zuò jù<sup>5</sup> 難 道 有 人 惡 作 劇 ? 难 道 有 人 恶 作 剧 ? difficult road have person evil to do a play is it possible that practical joke</p>

continued on the next page ...

<sup>4</sup> 風車編輯部/編 (2002): 10隻討厭的烏鴉 (*shí zhī tǎo yàn de wū yā—Ten Disagreeable Crows*), page 59

<sup>5</sup> 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008c): 流浪貓 (*liú làng māo The vagrant cat*), page 18

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)
Is it possible that all of us wolves have always been this bad?	wǒ men yě láng nán dào yǒng yuǎn dōu zhè me huài ma <sup>6</sup> 我 們 野 狼 難 道 永 遠 都 這 麼 壞 嗎 ? 我 們 野 狼 難 道 永 遠 都 這 麼 壞 嗎 ? I (s) wild wolves difficult road always far all this bad (?) we wolves is it possible that always like this

## 4.5 Conditionals

<p>tiáo jiàn zǐ jù 條 件 子 句 条 件 子 句 orderliness document seed sentence conditions clause conditional</p>	<p>rú guǒ 如 果 如 果 according to fruit if</p>	<p>zhǐ yào 只 要 只 要 only want provided that</p>
---	---	--

## 4.6 Conjunctions

<p>sūi rán 雖 然 虽 然 although just like that although</p>	<p>hàn 和 和 and</p>	<p>qí shí 其 實 其 實 that true in fact</p>	<p>hái shì 還 是 还 是 still is or</p>
<p>hái 還 还 still</p>	<p>réng rán 仍 然 仍 然 still just like that still</p>	<p>yú shì 於 是 于 是 at that thus</p>	<p>biàn 便 便 thereupon</p>
<p>jū rán 居 然 居 然 to live at just like that unexpectedly</p>	<p>cái néng 才 能 才 能 only can so as to</p>	<p>hái bú shì 還 不 是 还 不 是 still not is</p>	

Example 4.4 (Conjunctions).

<sup>6</sup> 腸子 (2006): 小狼的禮物 (xiǎo láng de lǐ wù—Little Wolf's gift), page 4



## Example 4.6 (Conjunction and).

E X	dǎ	kāi	dà	mén	xiǎo	qiàn	fā	xiàn	mā	ma	qù
	打	開	大	門	小	茜	發	現	媽	媽	去
	打	開	大	門	小	茜	發	現	媽	媽	去
	to beat	to open	big	door	little	madder	to send out	current	mother	mother	to go
	to open	front door			to discover		mother				

shàng	bān	hái	méi	húí	jiā	12
上	班	還	沒	回	家	○
上	班	還	沒	回	家	○
up	shift	still	no	to back to	home	
to be at work				to return home		

Opening the front door, Little Qian discovered that Mother had gone to work and had not yet returned home.

yòu	yòu
又	又
又	又
again	again

The English sentence pattern “both \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_” can be expressed in Chinese using the pattern illustrated to the left. Examples follow in Example 4.7 (page 40).

## Example 4.7 (Both \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_).

- |        |       |      |       |        |       |         |    |
|--------|-------|------|-------|--------|-------|---------|----|
| xiǎo   | wū    | yā   | yòu   | è      | yòu   | kě      | 13 |
| 小      | 烏     | 鴉    | 又     | 餓      | 又     | 渴       | ○  |
| 小      | 烏     | 鴉    | 又     | 餓      | 又     | 渴       | ○  |
| little | black | crow | again | hungry | again | thirsty |    |
|        |       | crow |       |        |       |         |    |

The little crow was both hungry and thirsty.
- |        |        |       |     |       |      |    |
|--------|--------|-------|-----|-------|------|----|
| xiǎo   | māo    | yòu   | shī | yòu   | lěng | 14 |
| 小      | 貓      | 又     | 濕   | 又     | 冷    | ○  |
| 小      | 貓      | 又     | 濕   | 又     | 冷    | ○  |
| little | cat    | again | wet | again | cold |    |
|        | kitten |       |     |       |      |    |

The kitten was both wet and cold.

bú	shì	—	jiù	shì	—
不	是	—	就	是	—
不	是	—	就	是	—
not	is			is	
(either)			(or)		
either ____ or ____					

The English sentence pattern “either \_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_” can be expressed in Chinese using the pattern illustrated to the left. Examples follow in Example 4.8 (page 41).

## Example 4.8 (either \_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_).

12 李美華 (2008b): 避雨 (bì yǔ) *Taking shelter from the rain*, page 15

13 風車編輯部/編 (2002): 10隻討厭的烏鴉 (shí zhī tǎo yàn de wū yā—*Ten Disagreeable Crows*), page 57

14 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008c): 流浪貓 (liú làng māo) *The vagrant cat*, page 10

bà	ba	piíng	cháng	dùì	tāng	mǔ	bú	shì	mà	, jiù	shì	dǎ	15
爸	爸	平	常	對	湯	姆	不	是	罵	, 就	是	打	。
爸	爸	平	常	對	湯	姆	不	是	罵	, 就	是	打	。
dad	dad	level	usually	as regards	soup	governess	not	is	to scold		is	beat	
dad		usual			Tom		(either)			no other than			

Dad's usual approach to Tom was when not scolding him, he was beating him.

bù	jǐn		, ér	qǐe	
不	僅	_____	, 而	且	_____
不	仅	_____	, 而	且	_____
not	only		and	just	
not	only		but	also	
bù	dàn		, hái	yào	
不	但	_____	, 還	要	_____
不	但	_____	, 還	要	_____
not	but		still	want	
not	only				

The English sentence pattern “*not only* \_\_\_\_\_, *but also* \_\_\_\_\_” can be expressed in Chinese using either of the patterns shown to the left. Examples follow in Example 4.9 (next).

Example 4.9 (not only \_\_\_\_\_ but also \_\_\_\_\_).

1. wǒ bú dàn xiǎng jiàn nǐ hái yào hǎo hǎo gǎn xiè nǐ ne 16  
 我 不 但 想 見 你 , 還 要 好 好 感 謝 你 呢 !  
 我 不 但 想 見 你 , 還 要 好 好 感 謝 你 呢 !  
 I not but would like to to see you still want good good to feel to thank you  
 all out to thank

I not only want to see you, I also want to all out thank you!

2. guó wáng bù jǐn dāng miàn kua jiǎng tā men ér qǐe hái shǎng cì  
 國 王 不 僅 當 面 誇 獎 他 們 , 而 且 還 賞 賜  
 国 王 不 仅 当 面 夸 奖 他 们 , 而 且 还 赏 赐  
 country king not only equal face praise reward he s and just still reward gift  
 king not only in someone's presence to commend them but also award  
 le xǔ duō jīn bì gěi tā men 17  
 了 許 多 今 幣 給 他 們  
 了 許 多 今 幣 給 他 們  
 allow much gold currency to give he s  
 much gold them

The king not only face to face commended them, but also awarded them with much gold.

15 蘇錦梅 (1999): 乞丐王子 (qǐ gài wáng zǐ—The Prince and the Pauper), page 2

16 李美華 (2008a): 讓人思念的小章魚—The Little Octopus ..., page 22

17 劉嘉裕 (1999b): 三劍客 (sān jiàn kè—The Three Musketeers), page 18

## 4.7 Interjections

gǎn 感 感 to feel	tàn 歎 歎 sigh	yǔ 語 語 language	hēi 嘿 嘿 hey	wā 哇 哇 wow	èn 嗯 嗯 Hmmm
interjection					

Example 4.10 (Interjections).

For example using “Hmmm”, see Example 4.4 (page 38).

## 4.8 Prepositional phrases

lái 來 來 to come
--------------------------

Expressing the purpose of some action can be accomplished using the 來 character, which means “to come”. In this context, it can be translated as “to”, “so that”, or “for the purpose of”. This is illustrated in Example 4.11 (next).

Example 4.11 (for the purpose of).

1. xiǎo láng jué dìng duō zuò hǎo shì lái jiàn lì yě láng de hǎo  
 小狼 決定 多 做好 事 來 建 立 野 狼 的 好  
 little wolf to decide to fix many to do good affairs to come to establish to stand wild wolves (s) good  
 to resolve good deeds to build up
- xíng xiàng  
 形 象  
 形 象  
 appearance appearance  
 image
- 18  
 Little Wolf resolved to do many good deeds  
 to build up the good image of wild wolves.

2. wǒ zhēn bù yīng gāi chū huài zhǔ yì lái zhuō nòng tā  
 我 真 不 應 該 出 壞 主 意 來 捉 弄 她  
 I really not should should to exit bad owner meaning to come to catch her  
 should idea to play a joke on
- I really shouldn't come up with bad ideas to play tricks on her.

<sup>18</sup> 腸子 (2006): 小狼的禮物 (xiǎo láng de lǐ wù—Little Wolf's gift), page 5

<sup>19</sup> 狐狸與鸛鳥 (hú lí yǔ gàn niǎo) The Fox and the Stork, page 15

3. tā men dōu cóng jiā lǐ shēn chū tóu lái tàn wàng 20  
 他 們 都 從 家 裡 伸 出 頭 來 探 望  
 他 们 都 从 家 里 伸 出 头 来 探 望  
 he (s) all from home inside to stretch to exit head to come to investigate to look over  
 they to stick out to look about

They all stuck their heads out of their houses to look around.

## 4.9 More

In English, there is a sentence pattern “the more I \_\_\_\_\_, the more I \_\_\_\_\_”. This same pattern in Chinese can be accomplished using either the 越 (yùe, to get over) character or the 愈 (yù, more and more) character, as illustrated to the right. The 越 (yùe) pattern is the one most often used in conversation, whereas the 愈 (yù) pattern is more often confined to appearances in literature.

yùe	越	_____	yùe	越	_____
	越	(verb)		越	(verb)
more			more		
yù	愈	_____	yù	愈	_____
	愈	(verb)		愈	(verb)
more			more		

Example 4.12 (More more).

1. tā men /yi qǐ dàng qiū qiān yùe dàng yùe gāo 21  
 他 們 一 起 盪 鞦 韆 , 越 盪 越 高  
 他 们 一 起 荡 鞦 韆 , 越 荡 越 高  
 he (s) one to rise to swing swing swing more to swing more high  
 they together swing
- They swang together; the more they swang, the higher they reached.
2. tù zi yù kàn yù bù xǐ huan /zi jǐ shēn shàng de yán sè 22  
 兔 子 愈 看 愈 不 喜 歡 自 己 身 上 的 顏 色  
 兔 子 愈 看 愈 不 喜 欢 自 己 身 上 的 颜 色  
 rabbit son more to look at more not happy joyous self oneself body on top of (s) face color  
 rabbit to like one's own color
- The more the rabbit looked, the more she disliked her own coloration.
3. gōng jī yī tiān bǐ yī tiān lǎo yù jiào yù chī lì 23  
 公 雞 一 天 比 一 天 老 , 愈 叫 愈 吃 力  
 公 鸡 一 天 比 一 天 老 , 愈 叫 愈 吃 力  
 male chicken one day to compare one day old more to call more to eat strength  
 rooster exhausting
- Growing ever older day by day, the more Rooster crowed the more exhausting it became.

20 幼福編輯部 (2005h): 獅子王的原則 (shī zi wáng de yuán zé) *The King of Lion's Principle*, page 4

21 張晉霖 (2005b): 一塊錢 · 買一個夢 (yí kuài qián · mǎi yí ge mèng), page 25

22 余治瑩 (2006): 彩色小兔 (cǎi sè xiǎo tù—*The colored rabbit*), page 7

23 胡詔真 (2007): 公雞國王 (gōng jī guó wáng—*The rooster named King*), page 8

## 4.10 Similes



*Similes* in English are formed using “as” or “like”. Examples include “as thin as a rail”, “as flat as tin”, or “as light as air”. Similes also appear in Chinese using the character 如.

Example 4.13 (Simile).

yì tóu gǔ shòu rú chái de mǔ niú zhàn zài lù zhōng yāng 24  
 一 頭 骨 瘦 如 柴 的 母 牛 站 在 路 中 央 °  
 一 頭 骨 瘦 如 柴 的 母 牛 站 在 路 中 央 °  
 one head bone thin as firewood ('s) mother cow to stand at road middle center  
 one (mw) bag of bones/thin as a rail cow middle

A skin and bones cow, thin as a rail, stood in the center of the road.



## CHAPTER 5

## VERBS

### 5.1 Sentence structure

zhǔ	cí
主	詞
主	詞
master	word
subject	

As in English, verbs generally come *after* the subject. However, just as in English (e.g. when waxing poetic), the verb may come *before*. Example 5.1 (next) illustrates such structure.

dòng	cí
動	詞
動	詞
to move	word
verb	

Example 5.1 (verb-subject structure).

E X	yǒu	yī	tiān	fēi	lái	le	yī	zhī	dà	hú	dié	1
	有	一	天	，	飛	來	了	一	隻	大	蝴	
	有	一	天	，	飛	來	了	一	只	大	蝴	
	have	one	day		fly	come		a	(MW)	big	butterfly butterfly	
			one day			came		a			butterfly	

One day,  
flying along  
came a butterfly.

In English, a subject is normally followed by a verb, and consecutive adjectives are often delineated with an “and” or a “but” ...as in, “He **was** very happy **and** very pleased with himself.” In Chinese however, neither of these is always necessary, as illustrated in Example 5.2 (next). Further examples of no explicit conjunction are provided in Example 4.6 (page 40).

Example 5.2 (no explicit verb or conjunction).


E X	xiǎo	bái	tù	hǎo	gāo	xìng	hǎo	dé	yì	2
	小	白	兔	好	高	興	，	好	得	
	小	白	兔	好	高	興	，	好	得	
	little	white	rabbit	very	high	happy		very	get	
					happy				meaning	
									pleased with oneself	

Little White Rabbit  
was very happy,  
and very pleased  
with himself.

<sup>1</sup> 張晉霖 (2005f): 蝴蝶風箏 (hú dié fēng zhēng—The Butterfly Kite), page 1

## 5.2 Number and tense

In English, *verb* forms change substantially depending on

 *number* (e.g. he walks, they walk)

 *tense* (e.g. they walked, they walk)

In particular, English verbs can be either *singular* or *plural*, and moreover can be either *past tense* or *present tense*. Note that in English, while of course it is possible to express grammatical *future tense*, **English verbs have no future tense**.<sup>3</sup> Rather, grammatical future tense is expressed by appending a modifier word such as “will” before a present tense verb as in, “I *will* brush my teeth before going to bed.”

In Chinese grammar, life is even simpler. Verb forms do not change with either number or tense. That is, **Chinese verbs have no tense**<sup>4</sup> and **Chinese verbs have no number**. Just as in English, Chinese has 3 tenses, but Chinese verbs themselves do not.<sup>5</sup>

English verbs together with modifier words such as “will” have 3 tenses and 4 aspects, giving  $3 \times 4 = 12$  states altogether. However, some of these states are *not* available in Chinese without the addition of some word or words describing *situation*. For example in English one can say, “I walked.” But in Chinese, there is no way to express this accurately without specifying situation as in “Yesterday I walked” or “Last week I walked.”

qíng	kuàng
情	況
情	況
sentiment	condition
situation	


Example 5.3 (verb tenses).


past tense (過去式)	present tense (現在式)	future tense (未來式)
I <b>walked</b> . (no Chinese equivalent)	I <b>walk</b> . 我 <sup>2</sup> 走 <sup>1</sup> 路 <sup>2</sup> 。	I <b>will walk</b> . 我 <sup>2</sup> 將 <sup>1</sup> 走 <sup>1</sup> 路 <sup>2</sup> 。
I <b>had</b> a dog. (no Chinese equivalent)	I <b>have</b> a dog. 我 <sup>2</sup> 有 <sup>1</sup> 一 <sup>1</sup> 隻 <sup>2</sup> 狗 <sup>2</sup> 。	I <b>will have</b> a dog. 你 <sup>2</sup> 將 <sup>1</sup> 有 <sup>1</sup> 一 <sup>1</sup> 隻 <sup>2</sup> 狗 <sup>2</sup> 。
You <b>gave</b> me a ball. (no Chinese equivalent)	You <b>give</b> me a ball. 你 <sup>2</sup> 給 <sup>1</sup> 我 <sup>1</sup> 一 <sup>1</sup> 個 <sup>2</sup> 球 <sup>2</sup> 。	You <b>will give</b> me a ball. 你 <sup>2</sup> 將 <sup>1</sup> 給 <sup>1</sup> 我 <sup>1</sup> 一 <sup>1</sup> 個 <sup>2</sup> 球 <sup>2</sup> 。

Table 5.1: Common verbs




English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
to do	zuò 作 作	to operate	cāo zuò 操 作 操 作 to handle to do

continued on the next page ...

<sup>3</sup>  Greenbaum (1996): *The Oxford English Grammar*, page 81

<sup>3</sup> English verbs have no future tense. Verbs in *Italian* (義大利語) have future tense.  Fasold and Connor-Linton (2006): *An introduction to language and linguistics* page 87. Example:

	past	present	future
English:	left	leave	will leave
Italian:	lasciato	partire	partirà
Chinese:	×	離 <sup>1</sup> 開 <sup>2</sup>	將 <sup>1</sup> 離 <sup>1</sup> 開 <sup>2</sup>

<sup>4</sup> Other languages in which verbs have no tense include the Australian language *Dyirbal* ( Comrie (1985): *Tense* page 40) and and *Burmese* (緬甸語) ( Comrie (1985): *Tense* page 50). At the other extreme, the African language *Bamileke-Dschang* has 11 tenses. ( Trask (1999): *Key concepts in language and linguistics* page 207)

<sup>5</sup>  Li and Thompson (1989): *Mandarin Chinese: a functional reference grammar*, page 13

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
to see	kàn 看看	to look at	kàn zhe 看看 著着 see (adverbial particle)
to look about	tàn wàng 探 望 探 望 to investigate to look afar	to look around	zhāng wàng 張 望 張 望 to spread to look afar
to stare at	dīng zhe kàn 盯 著 看 盯 着 看 fix eyes on (adv. part.) see	to glare at	dèng zhe 瞪 著 瞪 着 glare (adv. part.)
to listen	tīng 聽 听 listen	to smell	wén 聞 闻
to say	shuō 說 说 say	to talk	jiǎng huà 講 話 讲 话 to speak talks
to want	yào 要 要	to need	xū yào 需 要 需 要 need want
to like	xǐ huan 喜 歡 喜 欢 happy cheerful	to love	ài 愛 爱 love
to eat	chī 吃 吃	to drink	hē 喝 喝
to wish	yuàn yì <sup>6</sup> 願 意 愿 意 hope idea		

<sup>6</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999e): 醜小鴨 (chǒu xiǎo yā—The Ugly Duckling), page 30

Table 5.2: Examples of common verbs

English	Chinese (中文)
I see you.	<p>wǒ kàn dào nǐ 我 看 到 你 ◦ 我 看 到 你 ◦</p> <p>I see reach you see</p>
I look at you.	<p>wǒ kàn zhe nǐ 我 看 著 你 ◦ 我 看 着 你 ◦</p> <p>I see (particle) you look at</p>
From inside their homes they stuck out their heads and looked about.	<p>tā men cóng jiā lǐ shēn chū tóu lái 他 們 從 家 裡 伸 出 頭 來 他 們 从 家 里 伸 出 头 来</p> <p>he (plural) from home inside to stretch to exit head to come they to stick out</p> <p>tàn wàng 探 望 探 望</p> <p>to investigate to look afar to look about</p>
The crow hurriedly exited the hole and peeped around.	<p>wū yā jí máng chū dòng zhāng wàng 烏 鴉 急 忙 出 洞 張 望 乌 鸦 急 忙 出 洞 张 望</p> <p>black crow urgent busy to exit hole to spread to look afar crow hurriedly to look around</p>

## 5.3 Aspect

Verbs in English have two aspects—progressive and perfect.<sup>9</sup> A verb can be used with no aspect, one aspect, or both aspects (a total of 4 possibilities):

1. simple (no aspect)
2. progressive
3. perfect
4. perfect progressive

Aspect is used together with tense to give verbs 12 different possible verb forms.

<sup>7</sup> 幼福編輯部 (2005h): 獅子王的原則 (*shī zi wáng de yuán zé*) *The King of Lion's Principle*, page 4

<sup>8</sup> 風車編輯部/編 (2002): 10隻討厭的烏鴉 (*shí zhī tǎo yàn de wū yā—Ten Disagreeable Crows*), page 57

<sup>9</sup> Greenbaum (1996): *The Oxford English Grammar*, page 81

aspect	tense		
	past	present	future
simple	past simple	present simple	future simple
progressive	past progressive	present progressive	future progressive
perfect	past perfect	present perfect	future perfect
perfect progressive	past perfect progressive	present perfect progressive	future perfect progressive

In English, to change from simple aspect to perfect aspect, add a form of “**have**” in front of the verb: **had** (past tense), **have** (present tense). Also, the verb changes form, often ending with an “-n” (but not always). In Chinese, add 了 somewhere after the verb.<sup>10</sup>

了  
了  
了  
(a change of state)

Example 5.4 (Perfect aspect).

	present				past	perfect
	English	Traditional	Simplified	PinYin		
1.	bite	咬	咬	yǎo	bit	have bitten
2.	blow	吹	吹	chūi	blew	have blown
3.	buy	買	买	mǎi	bought	have bought
4.	come	來	来	lái	came	have come
5.	do	做	做	zuò	did	have done
6.	draw	畫	画	huà	drew	have drawn
7.	drive	開	开	kāi	drove	have driven
8.	eat	吃	吃	chī	ate	have eaten
9.	feel	感覺	感觉	gǎn jué	felt	have felt
10.	fight	打架	打架	dǎ jià	fought	have fought
11.	fly	飛	飞	fēi	flew	have flown
12.	forget	忘記	忘记	wàng jì	forgot	have forgotten
13.	give	給	给	gěi	gave	have given
14.	go	去	去	qù	went	have gone
15.	hear	聽	听	tīng	heard	have heard
16.	ride	騎	骑	qí	rode	have ridden
17.	run	跑	跑	pǎo	ran	have run
18.	see	看	看	kàn	saw	have seen
19.	seek	尋找	寻找	xún zhǎo	sought	have sought
20.	sell	賣	卖	mài	sold	have sold
21.	sing	唱	唱	chàng	sang	have sung
22.	sleep	睡	睡	shuì	slept	have slept
23.	swim	游泳	游泳	yóu yǒng	swam	have swum
24.	take	拿	拿	ná	took	have taken
25.	tear	撕	撕	sī	tore	have torn
26.	teach	教書	教书	jiāo shū	taught	have taught
27.	think	想	想	xiǎng	thought	have thought
28.	write	寫	写	xiě	wrote	have written

<sup>10</sup> Li and Thompson (1989): *Mandarin Chinese: a functional reference grammar*, page 185

In English, to change from simple aspect to progressive aspect, do two things:



Add a **form of be** before the verb and



Add **-ing** after the verb

In Chinese, add 正在 in front of the verb.

zhèng	zài
正	在
正	在
exactly	present
in the process of	

### Example 5.5.

Example (例子)			
	past	present	future
<i>simple</i>	I <b>ran</b> home. (no equivalent Chinese)	I <b>run</b> home. 我跑回家。	I <b>will run</b> home. 我將跑回家。
<i>progressive</i>	I <b>was running</b> home. (no equivalent Chinese)	I <b>am running</b> home. 我 <u>正在</u> 跑回家。	I <b>will be running</b> home. 我將 <u>正在</u> 跑回家。
<i>perfect</i>	I <b>had run</b> home. no equivalent Chinese	I <b>have run</b> home. 我跑回家了。	I <b>will have run</b> home. 我將跑回家了。
<i>perfect progressive</i>	I <b>had been running</b> home. (no equivalent Chinese)	I <b>have been running</b> home. (no equivalent Chinese)	I <b>will have been running</b> home. (no equivalent Chinese)

### Example 5.6.

Example (例子)			
	past	present	future
<i>simple</i>	She ate an apple. (no Chinese equiv.)	She <b>eats</b> an apple. 她吃一個蘋果。	She will eat an apple. 她將吃一個蘋果。
<i>pro-gressive</i>	She was eating an apple. (no Chinese equiv.)	She is eating an apple. 她 <u>正在</u> 吃一個蘋果。	She will be eating an apple. 她將 <u>正在</u> 吃一個蘋果。
<i>perfect</i>	She had eaten an apple. (no Chinese equiv.)	She has eaten an apple. 她吃了。一個蘋果。	She will have eaten an apple. 她將吃了。一個蘋果。
<i>perfect progressive</i>	She had been eating an apple. (no Chinese equiv.)	She has been eating an apple. (no Chinese equiv.)	She will have been eating an apple. (no Chinese equiv.)

### Example 5.7.

Example (例子)			
	past	present	future
simple	She saw an apple. (no Chinese equiv.)	She <b>sees</b> an apple. 她看見一個蘋果。	She will see an apple. 她將看見一個蘋果。
pro-gressive	She was seeing an apple. (no Chinese equiv.)	She is seeing an apple. 她正看見一個蘋果。	She will be seeing an apple. 她將正看見一個蘋果。
perfect	She had seen an apple. (no Chinese equiv.)	She has seen an apple. 她看見了一個蘋果。	She will have seen an apple. 她將看見了一個蘋果。
perfect progressive	She had been seeing an apple. (no Chinese equiv.)	She has been seeing an apple. (no Chinese equiv.)	She will have been seeing an apple. (no Chinese equiv.)

## 5.4 (Verb) around

lái  
來  
來  
come

In English, one may say “walk around” or “run around”, etc. A common Chinese equivalent is “\_\_\_\_來\_\_\_\_去”, as illustrated in Example 5.8 (next).

qù  
去  
去  
go

Example 5.8 ((verb) around).

hú dié zài huā duǒ shàng fēi lái fēi qù<sup>11</sup>  
 蝴蝶 在 花 朵 上 飛 來 飛 去  
 butterfly butterfly at flower flower MW above fly come fly go  
 butterfly a flower flying around

The butterfly was flying around above a flower

## 5.5 (Verb) it down

In English, one may “write something down”. Similarly in Chinese, a common sentence pattern is “(verb) 下來”, as illustrated in Example 5.9 (next).

xià lái  
下 來  
下 來  
down come  
to come down

Example 5.9 ((verb) it down).

wǒ yào bǎ tā huà xià lái<sup>12</sup>  
 我 要 把 她 畫 下 來  
 I to want of her to draw down come  
 I want to draw a picture of her.

<sup>11</sup> 張晉霖 (2005f): 蝴蝶風箏 (hú dié fēng zhēng—The Butterfly Kite), page 3

<sup>12</sup> 張晉霖 (2005f): 蝴蝶風箏 (hú dié fēng zhēng—The Butterfly Kite), page 3





## CHAPTER 6

## NEGATION

### 6.1 Simple negation

fǒu	dìng
否	定
否	定
to negate	to set
to negate	

Negation in English is performed using the word *not* and sometimes using prefixes such as *non-* and *un-*. In Chinese, negation is performed using the characters 不 (bù) or 沒 (méi). The character 沒 is always either used with 有 (yǒu) giving 沒有 (not have) or used alone as a shortened form of 沒有.

bù	méi
不	沒
不	沒
not	not (have)

When you want to negate a verb, the trick is to determine when to use the “have” form (and thus use 沒) and when not to use the “have” form (and thus use 不)—good luck.

Example 6.1 (simple negation).

- |    |     |       |          |     |          |        |   |
|----|-----|-------|----------|-----|----------|--------|---|
| wǒ | bù  | xǐ    | huan     | chi | xiang    | jiao   |   |
| 我  | 不   | 喜     | 歡        | 吃   | 香        | 蕉      | 。 |
| 我  | 不   | 喜     | 歡        | 吃   | 香        | 蕉      | 。 |
| I  | not | happy | cheerful | eat | fragrant | banana |   |
|    |     | like  |          |     | banana   |        |   |

I do not like to eat bananas.
- |    |            |       |         |          |        |   |
|----|------------|-------|---------|----------|--------|---|
| wǒ | méi        | chi   | guo     | xiang    | jiao   |   |
| 我  | 沒          | 吃     | 過       | 香        | 蕉      | 。 |
| 我  | 沒          | 吃     | 過       | 香        | 蕉      | 。 |
| I  | not (have) | eat   | to pass | fragrant | banana |   |
|    |            | eaten |         | banana   |        |   |

I have never eaten bananas.
- |     |      |     |      |          |       |   |
|-----|------|-----|------|----------|-------|---|
| nǐ  | yào  | bú  | yào  | shui     | jiao  |   |
| 你   | 要    | 不   | 要    | 睡        | 覺     | ？ |
| 你   | 要    | 不   | 要    | 睡        | 覺     | ？ |
| you | want | not | want | to sleep | sleep |   |
|     |      |     |      | sleep    |       |   |

Do you want to sleep or not?

4. nǐ shuì bǎo le méi ? Have you had enough sleep?  
 你 睡 飽 了 沒 ?  
 你 睡 飽 了 沒 ?  
 you to sleep full not (have)

5. nǐ yào bù yào chī ? Do you want to eat?  
 你 要 不 要 吃 ?  
 你 要 不 要 吃 ?  
 you want not want eat

6. nǐ chī bǎo le méi ? Have you eaten?  
 你 吃 飽 了 沒 ?  
 你 吃 飽 了 沒 ?  
 you eat full not (have)

7. nǐ tīng dào le méi ! ? Do you hear me or not! ?  
 你 聽 到 了 沒 ! ?  
 你 聽 到 了 沒 ! ?  
 you hear to reach not (have)  
 hear

8. nǐ yào bú yào kàn ? Do you want to take a look?  
 你 要 不 要 看 ?  
 你 要 不 要 看 ?  
 you want not want see

9. nǐ kàn dào le méi ? Do you see it or not?  
 你 看 到 了 沒 ?  
 你 看 到 了 沒 ?  
 you see to reach not (have)  
 hear

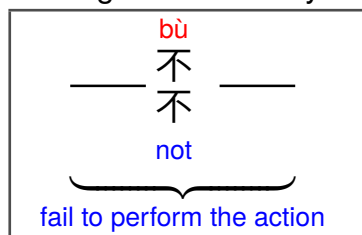
10. tā bú yào qù ōu zhōu . He does not want to go to Europe.  
 他 不 要 去 歐 洲 .  
 他 不 要 去 歐 洲 .  
 he not want go Europe continent  
 Europe

11. tā méi qù guò ōu zhōu . He has not been to Europe.  
 他 沒 去 過 歐 洲 .  
 他 沒 去 過 歐 洲 .  
 he not (have) go to pass Europe continent  
 went Europe

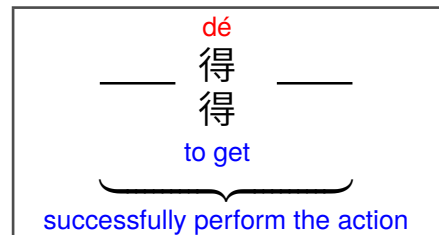
## 6.2 Success and failure in verbs.

Nouns and verbs in Chinese are very often composed of pairs of characters such as “打到” in “打到求” (dǎ dào qiú)—“hit the ball”. A verb is by nature an “action” word—and of course one intent on per-

forming an action may either succeed or fail at his or her attempt.



Success or failure in performing the action of a two character verb can be conveniently expressed by inserting a 不 indicating failure or a 得 indicating success. Example 6.2 (next) illustrates these structures.



Example 6.2 (verb pairs with 不 or 得).

1. tā dǎ dé dào qiú    She (successfully) hit the ball.  
 她 打 得 到 求  
 she hit to get to reach ball  
 successfully hit

2. tā dǎ bú dào qiú    She failed tried but failed to hit the ball.  
 她 打 不 到 求  
 she hit not to reach ball  
 failed to hit

3. māo zhūa dé dào lǎo shǔ    The cat successfully caught the mouse.  
 猫 抓 得 到 老 鼠  
 cat grabbed to get to reach old mouse  
 successfully grabbed

4. māo zhūa bú dào lǎo shǔ    The cat tried but failed to catch the mouse.  
 猫 抓 不 到 老 鼠  
 cat grabbed not to reach old mouse  
 failed to grab

5. wáng zǐ gēn běn bǎ chéng bǎo jìn bú qù    The Prince ultimately could not enter the castle.  
 王 子 根 本 把 城 堡 进 不 去  
 king son roots stem a city wall fortress to enter not to go  
 prince ultimately castle failed to enter

<sup>1</sup> 蘇錦梅 (1999): 乞丐王子 (qǐ gài wáng zǐ—The Prince and the Pauper), page 18

6. mā mā zhēn shì ná tā méi bàn fǎ <sup>2</sup>  
 媽 媽 真 是 拿 他 沒 辦 法  
 妈 妈 真 是 拿 他 没 办 法  
 mom mom really is take him no to deal with method  
 Mama way  
 ○ Mama really couldn't control him.
7. qí qí zǒng xǐ huān hàn dà jiā chàng fǎn diào , shuō shéi me  
 奇 奇 總 喜 歡 和 大 家 唱 反 調 , 說 什 麼  
 奇 奇 总 喜 欢 和 大 家 唱 反 调 , 说 什 么  
 unusual unusual always happy cheerful with big family sing opposite tune to say what (particle)  
 Kiki to like everyone what  
 tā dōu piān bú yào <sup>3</sup>  
 他 都 偏 不 要  
 他 都 偏 不 要  
 he all slightly not want  
 ○ Kiki always liked to sing a different tune;  
 ○ no matter what anyone said, he would not in the slightest degree agree.

## 6.3 Double negation

fēi	...	bù	kě
非		不	可
非		不	可
not		not	to permit
		not permitted	

Sentences in Chinese are sometimes stated as a double negative, with the first negation toward the beginning of the sentence and the second toward the end. This same construct exists in English as well, such as in “If I don't make it to the top of the mountain,...well that is simply unthinkable!” That is, you state that something absolutely must occur and for it not to occur is unfathomable. Examples follow in Example 6.3 (page 56).

Example 6.3. Double negation

1. zhè yí cì wǒ fēi yào kàn dào tā de zhēn miàn mù , bù kě <sup>4</sup>  
 這 一 次 我 非 要 看 到 他 的 真 面 目 不 可 !  
 这 一 次 我 非 要 看 到 他 的 真 面 目 不 可 !  
 this one order I not will see arrive he 's real face eye not to permit  
 once see his face not permissible  
 This time I don't see him truly face-to-face eye-to-eye,...it just can't be!
2. wǒ fēi yào zhǎo dào tā bù kě <sup>5</sup>  
 我 非 要 找 到 他 不 可  
 我 非 要 找 到 他 不 可  
 I not want to look for to reach him not to permit  
 to find  
 There is no way that I don't want to find him.

<sup>2</sup> 陳書韻 (2008): 奇奇愛耍酷: (qí qí ài shǎ kù), page 3

<sup>3</sup> 陳書韻 (2008): 奇奇愛耍酷: (qí qí ài shǎ kù), page 3

<sup>4</sup> 幼福編輯部 (2005j): 黑猩猩來了 (hēi xīng xīng lái le—The Black Gorilla is coming), page 7

<sup>5</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999b): 三劍客 (sān jiàn kè—The Three Musketeers), page 6

cái	bù
才	不
才	不
just	not
just don't	

An additional negation is constructed with 才不

Example 6.4. gùai wù cái bù chī yú dàn gāo ne <sup>6</sup>  
 怪物才不吃魚蛋糕呢！  
 怪物才不吃魚蛋糕呢！  
 strange matter just not eat fish egg pastry  
 monster just don't cake  
 Monsters just don't eat fish cake!

## 6.4 Emphasizing negation

bìng
並
并

The character 卻 is used to support the contrast of ideas. Adding the character 並 in front of a negating verb adds emphasis to the verb. The use of 並 is completely optional. Example 6.5 page 57 (next) gives an example.

Example 6.5 (Emphasizing negation using 並).

1. tāng mǔ bìng méi yǒu xiàng wáng zǐ nà me xìng yùn <sup>7</sup>  
 湯姆並沒有像王子那麼幸運。  
 汤姆并没有像王子那么幸运。  
 soup governess entirely not have to resemble king son that good fortune luck  
 Tom not have prince so fortunate

Tom's life was entirely without resemblance to the Prince's so fortunate life.

<sup>6</sup> Stephens (1999): 我真的很忙 (*I'm Too Busy*), page 11

<sup>7</sup> 蘇錦梅 (1999): 乞丐王子 (*qǐ gài wáng zǐ—The Prince and the Pauper*), page 2



CHAPTER 7

ADVERBS

7.1 Degree of Precision

Table 7.1: Adverbs

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
almost	jī hū 幾 乎 几 乎 some at almost	almost	kuài 快 快 almost

Example 7.1 (Sentences using *almost*).

1.   wū   zi   lǐ   miàn   hǎo   àn   xiǎo   zhāng   yú   jī   hū   kàn   bú   jiàn   dōng   xī<sup>1</sup>  
屋 子 裡 面 好 暗 , 小 章 魚 幾 乎 看 不 見 東 西 。  
屋 子 里 面 好 暗 , 小 章 魚 几 乎 看 不 见 东 西 。  
house son inside face good dark little stamp fish almost to look at not to see east west  
house inside octopus things

The house was very dark inside, and Little Octopus almost couldn't see anything.

2.   chà   yì   diǎn   jiù   méi   mìng   le<sup>2</sup>  
差 一 點 就 沒 命 了 !  
差 一 点 就 沒 命 了 !  
difference one drop just no life (a change of state)  
a little lose life
- [!] almost lost my life!

<sup>1</sup> 李美華 (2008a): 讓人思念的小章魚—*The Little Octopus ...*, page 10  
<sup>2</sup> 張晉霖 (2006a): 給貓咪挂鈴鐺 (*Hang a Bell on the Cat*), page 4

3. wa hǎo pàng a pàng dào dōu kuài jǐ bù jìn lái !  
 哇！好胖呀！胖到都快挤不进来了！  
 wow very fat fat to reach all almost almost not to enter to come  
 to come in

Wow! So Fat! So fat that you almost can't squeeze through the door!

## 7.2 Adverbial phrases

de

的  
的

's (possesses)

The character (de) often indicates possession, as in “我的書” (wǒ de shū) — “my book”. In this case it is used as a mechanism to introduce an adjective (which book? ...the book that is mine).

The character 的 can also be used to introduce an adverbial phrase—that is a phrase that helps modify or describe some other verb or adjective in the sentence. In this case the verb is the one “possessed” by the adverb—and thus the adverb describes the verb. An adverbial phrase introduced by 的 comes *before* the verb it is modifying. Examples follow in Example 7.2 (page 60).

Example 7.2 (Adverbial phrases using 的).

1. ... jī mā mā jiāo jí de wèn 4  
 雞 媽 媽 焦 急 的 問  
 chicken mother mother scorched urgent -ly to ask  
 mother anxious

...Mother Hen anxiously asked.

2. wū yā bǎ shuǐ tān lán de hē le qǐ lái 5  
 烏 鴉 把 水 貪 婪 的 喝 了 起 來  
 black crow water greedy greedy -ly drink drank to rise to come to  
 crow greedy drank to rise

The crow greedily drank up the water.

3. huáng niú zài chí táng lǐ yōu xián de yóu lái yóu qù 6  
 黃 牛 在 池 塘 裡 悠 閒 的 游 來 游 去  
 yellow cow at pond pond inside leisurely leisure to swim to come to swim to go  
 cow pond leisurely

The cow leisurely swam back and forth across the pond.

3 張晉霖 (2005d): 奇怪的客人 (qí guài de kè rén—The Strange Visitor), page 9

4 幼福編輯部 (2005j): 黑猩猩來了 (hēi xīng xīng lái le—The Black Gorilla is coming), page 5

5 風車編輯部/編 (2002): 10隻討厭的烏鴉 (shí zhī tǎo yàn de wū yā—Ten Disagreeable Crows), page 60

6 幼福編輯部 (2005a): 大黃牛學勤勞 (dà huáng niú xué qín láo—Big Yellow Cow Learns Diligence), page 17



de  
得  
得

(to the extent that)

One meaning of the character 得 (dé) is “to the extent that”, and is often used to begin an adverbial phrase. An adverbial phrase introduced by 得 comes *after* the verb it is modifying.

Note however that “to the extent that” is not the only meaning of 得; it also means *to get*. When 得 means “to the extent that”, it is pronounced with neutral tone (de); when 得 means “to get”, it is pronounced with rising tone (dé). The 得 character can be neatly used to express the following English sentence structures:

- He was \_\_\_\_\_ to the extent that \_\_\_\_\_.
- He was so \_\_\_\_\_ that he \_\_\_\_\_.
- He was \_\_\_\_\_, in fact, he was very \_\_\_\_\_.

Example 7.3 (Adverbial phrases).

1. 

gúo	wáng	gāo	xìng	de	bù	dé	liǎo
國	王	高	興	得	不	得	了
国	王	高	兴	得	不	得	了
country	king	high	cheerful		not	to get	to understand
king		glad			beyond understanding		

7

  - The king was so happy that
  - he was beside himself with joy.
2. 

dōng	tiān	hái	zǎo	de	hěn
冬	天	還	早	得	很
冬	天	还	早	得	很
winter	sky	still	early		early
winter					

8

  - It is still early for
  - winter—very early.
3. 

xiǎo	yā	dòng	de	hún	shēn	fā	dǒu
小	鴨	凍	得	渾	身	發	抖
小	鴨	冻	得	浑	身	发	抖
little	duck	to freeze		entire	body	to send out	to tremble
duckling				entire body		to shiver	

9

  - The duckling was so freezing
  - cold that his whole body shook.
4. 

láng	xià	de	quán	shēn	fā	dǒu
狼	嚇	得	全	身	發	抖
狼	吓	得	全	身	发	抖
wolf	to scare		entire	body	to send out	to tremble
					to shake	

10

  - The wolf was so scared
  - that his whole body shook.
5. 

xiàng	xià	de	lì	kè	bá	tǔi	jiù	pǎo
象	嚇	得	立	刻	拔	腿	就	跑
象	吓	得	立	刻	拔	腿	就	跑
elephant	to scare		to stand	to carve	to pull out	leg	just	run
			immediately					

11

  - The elephant was so scared
  - that he immediately picked up his feet and ran.

7 郭桂玲: 神氣的披風 (shén qì de pī fēng)—The Majestic Cape, page 17

8 幼福編輯部 (2005a): 大黃牛學勤勞 (dà huáng niú xué qín láo—Big Yellow Cow Learns Diligence), page 14

9 劉嘉裕 (1999e): 醜小鴨 (chǒu xiǎo yā—The Ugly Duckling), page 20

10 幼福編輯部 (2005j): 黑猩猩來了 (hēi xīng xīng lái le—The Black Gorilla is coming), page 11

11 幼福編輯部 (2005g): 小象妹找自信 (xiǎo xiàng mèi zhǎo zì xìn—Little Elephant ...confidence), page 23

6. wǒ shí zài kě de shòu bù liǎo 12  
 我 實 在 渴 得 受 不 了  
 我 實 在 渴 得 受 不 了  
 I real to exist thirsty to receive not understand  
really can't stand it  
 I am really so thirsty that I can't stand it.

7. niú de dù zi è de gū lū gū lū jiào 13  
 牛 的 肚 子 餓 得 咕 嚕 咕 嚕 叫  
 牛 的 肚 子 餓 得 咕 嚕 咕 嚕 叫  
 cow 's stomach son hungry (a sound) (a sound) (a sound) (a sound) to call  
stomach "gurgle" "gurgle"

The cow's stomach was so hungry that with a "gurgle gurgle" it called out.

8. Lái tè xiōng dì céng jīng shuāi de bí qīng liǎn zhǒng 14  
 萊 特 兄 弟 曾 經 摔 得 鼻 青 臉 腫  
 萊 特 兄 弟 曾 經 摔 得 鼻 青 臉 腫  
 wild weeds special elder brother younger brother once after to fall nose blue face swollen  
Wright brothers once

Once the Wright brothers took such a tumble that their faces were bruised and swollen.

ge  
 個  
 个  
 one that

Another way to introduce an adverbial phrase is with the use of the character 個 (ge). 個 is more commonly used as a general purpose measure word (e.g. 兩個蘋果—two (ge) apples). In the case of introducing an adverbial phrase, it roughly means "one that". An adverbial phrase introduced by 個 comes *after* the verb it is modifying. Often 個 introduces the adverb 不停.

bù tíng  
 不 停  
 不 停  
 not stop  
 nonstop

Example 7.4 (Adverb introduced using 個).

1. zhè jǐ tiān dà yǔ xià ge bù tíng 15  
 這 幾 天 大 雨 下 個 不 停  
 这 几 天 大 雨 下 个 不 停  
 these several sky big rain down one that not stop  
several days heavy rain nonstop  
 For several days now, heavy rain has been falling nonstop.

2. láng shú shu hái shì dǒu ge bù tíng 16  
 狼 叔 叔 還 是 抖 個 不 停  
 狼 叔 叔 还 是 抖 个 不 停  
 wolf uncle uncle still is to tremble one that not stop  
uncle still nonstop  
 Uncle Wolf was still trembling nonstop.

<sup>12</sup> 風車編輯部/編 (2002): 10隻討厭的烏鴉 (*shí zhī tǎo yàn de wū yā—Ten Disagreeable Crows*), page 59

<sup>13</sup> 幼福編輯部 (2005a): 大黃牛學勤勞 (*dà huáng niú xué qín láo—Big Yellow Cow Learns Diligence*), page 22

<sup>14</sup> (2004)萊特兄弟 *Wright Brothers*, page 5

<sup>15</sup> 余亮 (2010): 不準親吻噴火龍, page 8

<sup>16</sup> 幼福編輯部 (2005j): 黑猩猩來了 (*hēi xīng xīng lái le—The Black Gorilla is coming*), page 11

3. xiǎo shān yáng bù jīn hē hē hē de xiào ge bù tíng 17  
 小 山 羊 不 禁 呵 呵 呵 的 笑 個 不 停 °  
 小 山 羊 不 禁 呵 呵 呵 的 笑 個 不 停 °  
 little mountain sheep not to endure Ha Ha Ha 's to laugh one that not stop  
 goat cannot refrain nonstop

The little goat just couldn't keep himself from laughing "Ha-Ha-Ha" nonstop.

lián ...dōu méi yǒu  
 連 都 沒 有  
 连 都 没 有  
 even all not have  
 not have

The pattern 連...都沒有 (lián ...dōu méi yǒu) "even ...all not have" is often used in Chinese. Example 7.5 (next) illustrates this pattern.

Example 7.5 (Adverbial phrase using 連...都沒有).

E X lánɡ shú shu lián hēi xīng xīng de yǐng zǐ dōu méi kàn dào 18  
 狼 叔 叔 連 黑 猩 猩 的 影 子 都 沒 看 到 °  
 狼 叔 叔 连 黑 猩 猩 的 影 子 都 没 看 到 °  
 wolf uncle uncle even black orangutan orangutan 's shadow son all not see to reach  
 uncle gorilla shadow see

Uncle Wolf didn't even see so much as the Black Gorilla's shadow.

pīn mìng  
 拼 命  
 拼 命  
 go all out life  
 desperately

In English, when wanting to emphasize the desperation of a situation, one may add "...for your life!" after the verb. In Chinese, the "for your life" is 拼命 and may be used with most any verb to express the use of extreme exertion. Example 7.6 (next) illustrates this structure.

Example 7.6 (\_\_\_\_ for your life!).

1. pīn mìng pǎo  
 拼 命 跑 !  
 拼 命 跑 !  
 go all out life run  
 desperately

Run for your life!

2. wū yā pīn mìng de hē 19  
 烏 鴉 拼 命 的 喝 °  
 乌 鸦 拼 命 的 喝 °  
 black crow go all out life 's drank  
 crow desperately

The crow drank for his life.

17 幼福編輯部 (2005g): 小象妹找自信 (xiǎo xiàng mèi zhǎo zì xìn—Little Elephant ...confidence), page 19

18 幼福編輯部 (2005j): 黑猩猩來了 (hēi xīng xīng lái le—The Black Gorilla is coming), page 9

19 風車編輯部/編 (2002): 10隻討厭的烏鴉 (shí zhī tǎo yàn de wū yā—Ten Disagreeable Crows), page 61

3. xiǎo bái tù pīn mìng xǐ 20  
 小 白 兔 拼 命 洗  
 小 白 兔 拼 命 洗  
 little white rabbit go all out life wash  
 desperately

Little White Rabbit  
 washed for his life.

In English there is a sentence pattern “No matter how he (verb), he still cannot (verb) enough.” A similar mechanism in Chinese is illustrated to the right and in Example 7.7 (next).

kě	shì	zě	me		yě		○
可	是	怎	麼	_____	也	_____	○
可	是	怎	么	(verb)	也	(failed action)	○
to approve	that	who	(?)		also		
but		how					

Example 7.7 (No matter how).

1. kě shì zě me xǐ yě xǐ bù gān jìng 21  
 可 是 怎 麼 洗 也 洗 不 乾 淨  
 可 是 怎 么 洗 也 洗 不 干 淨  
 to approve that who wash also wash not dry clean  
 but how clean

But no matter how much  
 he washed, he couldn't  
 wash himself clean.

2. kě shì gōng jī zài zě me mài lì yě méi yǒu nào zhōng jiào de  
 可 是 公 雞 再 怎 麼 賣 力 , 也 沒 有 鬧 鐘 叫 得  
 可 是 公 鸡 再 怎 么 卖 力 , 也 没 有 闹 钟 叫 得  
 to approve that male chicken further who (?) to sell force also no have noisy clock to crow  
 but rooster how to exert not have alarm clock
- jiǔ jiào de hóng liàng 22  
 久 , 叫 得 宏 亮  
 久 , 叫 得 宏 亮  
 duration to crow magnificent loud and clear  
 magnificent and clear

But no matter how much the rooster  
 further exerted himself, he didn't  
 have the alarm clock's crowing duration  
 or brilliant and magnificent sound.

<sup>20</sup> 張晉霖 (2005e): 白雲枕頭 (bái yún zhěn tóu—White Cloud Pillow), page 5

<sup>21</sup> 張晉霖 (2005e): 白雲枕頭 (bái yún zhěn tóu—White Cloud Pillow), page 5

<sup>22</sup> 胡韶真 (2007): 公雞國王 (gōng jī guó wáng—The rooster named King), page 10

CHAPTER 8

TIME

shíjiān

時間

timebetween

time

8.1 Absolute time

Table 8.1: Time

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
right now	<div><div>xiànzài</div><div>現在</div><div>presentto exist</div></div>	today	<div><div>jīntiān</div><div>今天</div><div>the presentthe sky</div></div>
this week	<div><div>zhègexīngqí</div><div>這個星期</div><div>thisastar period</div><div>week</div></div>	this month	<div><div>zhègeyuè</div><div>這個月</div><div>thisathe moon</div></div>
this year	<div><div>jīnnián</div><div>今年</div><div>the presenta year</div></div>		

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
a moment ago	gāng cái 剛才 剛才 hard just	in a moment	dài 待待 to wait for yī hǔi 一會兒 一會兒 one to meet together in a little while
yesterday	zuó tiān 昨天 昨天 yesterday the sky	tomorrow	míng tiān 明天 明天 bright the sky
day before yesterday	qián tiān 前天 前天 front sky	day after tomorrow	hòu tiān 後天 後天 behind sky
		two days after tomorrow	dà hòu tiān 大後天 大後天 big behind sky
last week	shàng ge xīng qī 上個星期 上個星期 up a star period week	next week	xià ge xīng qī 下個星期 下個星期 down a star period week
last month	shàng ge yuè 上個月 上個月 up a the moon	next month	xià ge yuè 下個月 下個月 down a the moon
last year	qù nián 去年 去年 to go a year	next year	míng nián 明年 明年 bright a year

Table 8.2: Days of the week

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
Sunday	lǐ bài tiān 裡拜天 裡拜天 inside to worship sky	Sunday	xīng qī tiān 星期天 星期天 star period sky

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
Monday	lǐ      bài      yī 裡      拜      一 里      拜      一 inside to worship one	Monday	xīng      qí      yī 星      期      一 星      期      一 star period one
Tuesday	lǐ      bài      èr 裡      拜      二 里      拜      二 inside to worship two	Tuesday	xīng      qí      èr 星      期      二 星      期      二 star period two
Wednesday	lǐ      bài      sān 裡      拜      三 里      拜      三 inside to worship three	Wednesday	xīng      qí      sān 星      期      三 星      期      三 star period three
Thursday	lǐ      bài      sì 裡      拜      四 里      拜      四 inside to worship four	Thursday	xīng      qí      sì 星      期      四 星      期      四 star period four
Friday	lǐ      bài      wǔ 裡      拜      五 里      拜      五 inside to worship five	Friday	xīng      qí      wǔ 星      期      五 星      期      五 star period five
Saturday	lǐ      bài      liù 裡      拜      六 里      拜      六 inside to worship six	Saturday	xīng      qí      liù 星      期      六 星      期      六 star period six

Table 8.3: Months of the year

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
January	yī      yuè 一      月 一      月 one moon	July	qī      yuè 七      月 七      月 seven moon
February	èr      yuè 二      月 二      月 two moon	August	bā      yuè 八      月 八      月 eight moon
March	sān      yuè 三      月 三      月 three moon	September	jiǔ      yuè 九      月 九      月 nine moon
April	sì      yuè 四      月 四      月 four moon	October	shí      yuè 十      月 十      月 ten moon

continued on the next page ...



...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
May	wǔ yuè 五 月 五 月 five moon	November	shí yī yuè 十一 月 十一 月 eleven moon
June	liù yuè 六 月 六 月 six moon	December	shí èr yuè 十二 月 十二 月 twelve moon

Table 8.4: Parts of a day

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
early morning; dawn	qīng chén 清 晨 清 晨 clear morning		

Example 8.1 (What time is it?).

1. xiàn zài jǐ diǎn ? What time is it?  
 現 在 幾 點 ?  
 現 在 几 点 ?  
 present to exist how many a dot  
 now

2. xiàn zài shì liù diǎn zhōng ? It's six o'clock.  
 現 在 是 六 點 鐘 ?  
 現 在 是 六 点 钟 ?  
 present to exist is six a dot a bell  
 now

3. jīn tiān shì xīng qī jǐ ? What day is it today?  
 今 天 是 星 期 幾 ?  
 今 天 是 星 期 几 ?  
 the present sky is star period how many  
 today week

4. jīn tiān shì jǐ hào ? What is the date today?  
 今 天 是 幾 號 ?  
 今 天 是 几 号 ?  
 the present sky is how many number  
 today



5. jīn tiān shì èr shí sān hào 。 Today is the 23rd.  
 今天 是 二 十 三 號 。  
 今天 是 二 十 三 号 。  
 the present sky is 2 10 3 number  
 today

Example 8.2.

English	Traditional	Simplified	Pin-Yin
6 o'clock	六點鐘	六点钟	liù diǎn zhōng
7 o'clock	七點鐘	七点钟	qī diǎn zhōng
6 a.m.	早上六點鐘	早上六点钟	zǎo shàng liù diǎn
6 p.m.	晚上六點鐘	晚上六点钟	wǎn shàng liù diǎn
12 p.m.	下午十二點鐘	下午十二点钟	xià wǔ shí èr diǎn zhōng
12 am	早上十二點鐘	早上十二点钟	zǎo shàng shí èr diǎn zhōng
Noon	中午	中午	zhōng wǔ
Midnight	半夜	半夜	bàn yē
6:17	六點十七分	六点十七分	liù diǎn shí qī fēn

## 8.2 Relative time

zì cóng  
 自 從  
 自 从  
 self from  
 ever since

Example 8.3.

zì cóng gé bì lóng zǐ lǐ de lǎo hūi xióng qù shì hòu tā bú dàn  
 自 從 隔 壁 籠 子 裡 的 老 灰 熊 去 世 後 ， 他 不 但  
 自 从 隔 壁 笼 子 里 的 老 灰 熊 去 世 后 ， 他 不 但  
 self from partition wall cage seed inside 's old grey bear go life span after he not but  
 ever since next door cage grizzly bear pass away not only

shī qù yī wèi hǎo péng yǒu , yě shī qù le wéi yī de liáo tiān  
 失 去 一 位 好 朋 友 ， 也 失 去 了 唯 一 的 聊 天  
 失 去 一 位 好 朋 友 ， 也 失 去 了 唯 一 的 聊 天  
 lose go one person good friend friend also lose go (change of state) only one 's merely sky  
 lose a friend lose only to chat

dùì xiàng  
 對 象  
 对 象  
 facing shape  
 subject

○ Ever since the old grizzly bear in the cage  
 ○ next door passed away,  
 he had not only lost a good friend,  
 but had also lost the only one he could chat with.

<sup>1</sup> 林真卿 (2010): 想家的巧克力：不灰心的奮鬥 (*Homesick Chocolate:...*), page 2

## 8.3 Rates of time

Table 8.5: Miscellaneous

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
as soon as possible	jǐn zǎo <sup>2</sup> 儘早 尽早 to the utmost early	from now on / from then on	cóng cǐ yí hòu 從此 一 後 从 此 一 后 from this one behind from now on
on time	zhǔn shí 準時 准时 standard time	to arrive late	chí dào 遲到 迟 到 late arrive
hurriedly	jí máng 急忙 急 忙 urgent busy	hurriedly	gǎn jǐn 趕緊 赶 紧 to pursue tight
urgently	jí hū hū <sup>3</sup> 急急呼 急 呼 呼 urgent to exhale	in a flurry	huāng luàn <sup>4</sup> 慌亂 慌 乱 in a flurry in disorder
in the twinkling of an eye	zhuǎn yǎn 轉眼 转 眼 turn eye in the twinkling of an eye jiān <sup>5</sup> 間 间 period of time	still very early (for some event to occur)	hái zǎo de hěn <sup>6</sup> 還早得很 还 早 得 很 still early early
not too long	méi duō 沒多 没 多 not yet much jiǔ <sup>7</sup> 久久 久 久 duration of time	forever	yǒng yuǎn 永遠 永 远 always far

<sup>2</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999e): 醜小鴨 (*chǒu xiǎo yā—The Ugly Duckling*), page 6

<sup>3</sup> 幼福編輯部 (2005d): 小白兔的友誼 *The Rabbit's Friendship*, page 19

<sup>4</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999e): 醜小鴨 (*chǒu xiǎo yā—The Ugly Duckling*), page 26

<sup>5</sup> 幼福編輯部 (2005a): 大黃牛學勤勞 (*dà huáng niú xué qín láo—Big Yellow Cow Learns Diligence*), page 19

<sup>6</sup> 幼福編輯部 (2005a): 大黃牛學勤勞 (*dà huáng niú xué qín láo—Big Yellow Cow Learns Diligence*), page 14

<sup>7</sup> 郭桂玲: 一起想辦法 (*yī qǐ xiǎng bàn fǎ—Together Think of a Way*), page 33

tú rán  
突 然  
突 然

suddenly just like that  
suddenly

“Suddenly” can be expressed in Chinese with 突然 or 忽然, as illustrated in Example 8.4 (next).

hū rán  
忽 然  
忽 然

suddenly just like that  
suddenly

Example 8.4 (suddenly). Suddenly, there arose a screeching gust of strong wind.

hū rán , gūa qǐ le yí zhèn kuáng fēng 8  
忽 然 , 刮 起 了 一 陣 狂 風  
忽 然 , 刮 起 了 一 陣 狂 風  
suddenly just like that to scrape to rise one a period of time crazy wind  
suddenly a burst a very strong wind

kāi shǐ  
… 開 始 …  
… 开 始 …

to open the start  
to start

One way to indicate that something has been happening since some specific point in time is with the character pair 開始. Example 8.5 (page 71) gives an example.

Example 8.5 (since).

tāng mǔ bā suì kāi shǐ , jiù guò zhe qǐ gài de shēng huó  
湯 姆 八 歲 開 始 就 過 著 乞 丐 的 生 活  
汤 姆 八 岁 开 始 就 过 着 乞 丐 的 生 活  
soup governess eight years of age to open the start just to pass to beg a beggar 's to give birth to to live  
Tom since to pass beggar life

le  
了 了  
了 了  
Tom, starting from the age eight,  
just spent his days living a vagrant's life.

de shí hòu ,  
… 的 時 候 …  
… 的 时 候 …

's time time  
time

One way to indicate that something happened while something else was in process of happening is with the sentence structure shown to the left. Example 8.6 (next) gives an example.

Example 8.6 (in the process of). As I was climbing the tree, a squirrel stole my hat.

wǒ zhèng pá shù de shí hòu , yì zhī sōng shǔ tōu zǒu wǒ de mào zi  
我 正 爬 樹 的 時 候 一 隻 松 鼠 偷 走 我的 帽子  
我 正 爬 树 的 时 候 一 只 松 鼠 偷 走 我的 帽子  
I in the process of to climb tree 's time time one a pine mouse to steal to walk I 's hat  
time a squirrel to steal my hat

○  
○

8 幼福編輯部 (2005f): 小諸送的花兒 *The Pig Was Given Me Flowers*, page 7

9 蘇錦梅 (1999): 乞丐王子 (*qǐ gài wáng zǐ—The Prince and the Pauper*), page 2

bù	shí
不	時
不	时
not	time
from time to time	

Intermittent events, as in “\_\_\_\_\_ from time to time \_\_\_\_\_” can be expressed in Chinese with “\_\_\_\_\_ 不時 \_\_\_\_\_”, as illustrated in Example 8.7 (next).

Example 8.7 (from time to time). From time to time the butterfly stopped to suck nectar.

hú	dié	bù	shí	tíng	xià	lái	xī	shí	hūa	mì	10
蝴	蝶	不	時	停	下	來	吸	食	花	蜜	。
蝴	蝶	不	时	停	下	来	吸	食	花	蜜	。
butterfly	butterfly	not	time	stop	down	come	to inhale	food	flower	honey	
butterfly		from time to time		come down			to suck		nectar		

## 8.4 Occurance

Methods of expressing that an event will never occur are illustrated in Example 8.8 (next).

Example 8.8.

1.	tā	jué	dìng	lí	jiā	chū	zǒu	,	ér	qiě	zhí	dào	tiān	hēi	dōu	méi
	他	決	定	離	家	出	走	,	而	且	直	到	天	黑	都	沒
	他	決	定	離	家	出	走	,	而	且	直	到	天	黑	都	沒
	he	to decide	to set	to leave	home	to exit	to walk		and	just	straight	reach	sky	black	all	no
		to decide				to leave			and		until					

chū	xiàn	11
出	現	。
出	現	。
to exit	to appear	
to appear		

He decided to leave home, and until the end of time to never show up there again.

2.	tā	cóng	lái	méi	yǒu	zhè	me	kùai	lè	guò	12
	她	從	來	沒	有	這	麼	快	樂	過	。
	她	從	來	沒	有	這	麼	快	樂	過	。
	she	from	come	no	have	this		quick	joyous	to pass	
		always		not have		like this		happy			

She had never been this happy.

## 8.5 Progressive events

There are multiple ways of expressing progressively changing events in Chinese. One of these is illustrated next:

<sup>10</sup> 張晉霖 (2005f): 蝴蝶風箏 (hú dié fēng zhēng—The Butterfly Kite), page 3

<sup>11</sup> 胡韶真 (2007): 公雞國王 (gōng jī guó wáng—The rooster named King), page 12

<sup>12</sup> 陽子 (2006): 小狼的禮物 (xiǎo láng de lǐ wù—Little Wolf's gift), page 18

Example 8.9 (day by day).

gōng jī yī tiān bǐ yī tiān lǎo , yù jiào yù cǐ lì 13  
 公 雞 一 天 比 一 天 老 , 愈 叫 愈 吃 力 。  
 公 鸡 一 天 比 一 天 老 , 愈 叫 愈 吃 力 。  
 male chicken one day to compare one day old more to call more to eat strength  
 rooster exhausting

Growing older day by day, the more the rooster crowed, the more exhausted he became.

## 8.6 Multiple events

dāng ... shí  
 當 ... 時  
 当 ... 时  
 while ... time

One way to indicate what has been happening *while* something else has been happening is with the sentence structure shown to the left. Example 8.10 (page 73) gives an example.

Example 8.10.

dāng wǒ zhèng pá shù shí , shù bèi yì zhī hǎi lí zhèng kǎn diào  
 當 我 正 爬 樹 時 樹 被 一 隻 海 狸 正 砍 掉  
 当 我 正 爬 树 时 树 被 一 只 海 狸 正 砍 掉  
 while I in the process of to climb tree time tree by one a sea fox in the process of to hack to fall  
 a beaver to cut down

le  
 了 。 While I was climbing the tree,  
 了 。 the tree was being cut down by a beaver.

biān — biān  
 邊 — 邊  
 边 — 边  
 side side

For things happening simultaneously, you can use the structure illustrated to the left with an example appearing in Example 8.11 (page 73).

Example 8.11 (Simultaneous action).

1. tā jiù ná chū lái táo zǐ biān zǒu biān cǐ 14  
 他 就 拿 出 來 桃 子 邊 走 邊 吃 。  
 他 就 拿 出 來 桃 子 边 走 边 吃 。  
 he just to take to exit to come to peach son side walk side to eat  
 to come out peach

He just took out a peach,  
 and went along eating  
 as he walked.

13 胡詔真 (2007): 公雞國王 (gōng jī guó wáng—The rooster named King), page 8

14 幼福編輯部 (2005c): 小猴子長大了 A Little Monkey Grows Up, page 10

2. tù zi xià de biān táo biān dǎo 15  
兔 子 嚇 得 邊 逃 邊 躲  
兔 子 吓 得 边 逃 边 躲  
rabbit son scared (to the extent that) side to flee side to hide  
rabbit

The rabbit was so scared that on the one hand he fled and on the other he hid.

cái

才  
才

only then

When something happens only after some period of time, you can use the 才 (cái) character. It can be roughly translated as “only then”.

Example 8.12 (Only then).

1. tūo dào zuì hòu yí kè cái zuò zhè yàng shì bú duì de 16  
拖 到 最 後 一 刻 才 做 , 這 樣 是 不 對 的 。  
拖 到 最 后 一 刻 才 做 , 这 样 是 不 对 的 。  
to drag to reach most behind one quarter hour only then to do this shape is not correct (s)  
last like this

Waiting until the last minute and only then getting started, this just isn't right.

2. zhè shí tā cái fā xiàn gē ge shòu shāng le  
這 時 , 他 才 發 現 哥 哥 受 傷 了  
这 时 , 他 才 发 现 哥 哥 受 伤 了  
this time he only then to send out to appear elder brother elder brother to receive an injury  
to discover elder brother injured

17

Only at this time did he realize that his big brother was injured.

3. zhǐ yǒu nǚ lì gōng zuò bú pà shòu shāng hàn téng tòng cái néng  
只 有 努 力 工 作 , 不 怕 受 傷 和 疼 痛 , 才 能  
只 有 努 力 工 作 , 不 怕 受 伤 和 疼 痛 , 才 能  
only have exert force worker do not to fear receive injury and to ache pain only then can  
exert work to get injured a pain
- chéng gōng 18  
成 功  
成 功  
to accomplish merit  
success

With hard work and no fear of injury and pain, only then can you succeed.

15 余治瑩 (2006): 彩色小兔 (*cǎi sè xiǎo tù—The colored rabbit*), page 12

16 幼福編輯部 (2005d): 小白兔的友誼 *The Rabbit's Friendship*, page 20

17 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008d): 真的! (*zhēn de—Really!*), page 18

18 姜子安 (2007): 阿良造紙 (*Ah-Liang Makes Paper*), page 9

děng

等  
等

to wait/not until

The “not until X did Y occur” sentence structure can be expressed using the 等 character, as illustrated to the left. An example is given in Example 8.13 (next).

Example 8.13 (Only then).

děng

tā

dào

jiā

, húi

tóu

yī

kàn

19

等

她

到

家

, 回

頭

一

看

。

Not until she arrived home did she turn her head and take a look.

等

她

到

家

, 回

頭

一

看

。

to wait she to arrive home

to return

head

one

to look at

to turn one's head

## 8.7 Quantifiers for time

Vocabulary Table 4.2 (page 31) already introduced a number of quantifiers for countable nouns. Time, on the other hand, is uncountable. It is either measured in standard units such as seconds, hours, days, etc.; or it is described in more relaxed terms such as “a moment”. Such quantifiers for time are listed in Vocabulary Table 8.6 (next) with examples provided in Example 8.14 (page 75).

Table 8.6: quantifiers for time

quantifier	usage	examples
fān 番 番 a time	exertion	fèn zhàn , nǚ lì 奮 戰 , 努 力 奮 战 , 努 力 to exert battle to exert force to put up a good fight to strive

Example 8.14 (quantifiers for time).

jīng

guò

yī

fān

fèn

zhàn

, xióng

zhōng

yú

pá

shàng

àn

經

過

一

番

奮

戰

, 熊

終

於

爬

上

岸

经

过

一

番

奋

战

, 熊

终

于

爬

上

岸

to pass through to go across

one

a time

to exert

battle

bear

conclusion

in

to climb

up

shore

to pass through

to put up a good fight

finally

20

biān

邊

。

After a time of intense struggle, the bear finally climbed up onto shore.

邊

。

side

19 李美華 (2008b): 避雨 (bì yǔ) *Taking shelter from the rain*, page 13

20 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008d): 真的! (zhēn de)—*Really!*, page 16





CHAPTER 9

SIMPLE CONVERSATION

9.1 Greetings

dǎ

打

打

beat

zhāo

招

招

beckon

hū

呼

呼

exhale

call

greeting

Table 9.1: Hello and goodbye

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
hello	<div><div>nǐ</div><div>你</div><div>你</div><div>you</div></div> <div><div>hǎo</div><div>好</div><div>好</div><div>good</div></div>	good bye	<div><div>zài</div><div>再</div><div>再</div><div>again</div></div> <div><div>jiàn</div><div>見</div><div>見</div><div>see</div></div>
good night	<div><div>wǎn</div><div>晚</div><div>晚</div><div>late</div></div> <div><div>ān</div><div>安</div><div>安</div><div>peaceful</div></div>	see you tomorrow	<div><div>míng</div><div>明</div><div>明</div><div>bright</div></div> <div><div>tiān</div><div>天</div><div>天</div><div>the sky</div></div> <div><div>jiàn</div><div>見</div><div>見</div><div>to see</div></div> <div>tomorrow</div>
see you later	<div><div>yī</div><div>一</div><div>一</div><div>one</div></div> <div><div>hǔi</div><div>會兒</div><div>会儿</div><div>to meet together</div></div> <div><div>jiàn</div><div>見</div><div>见</div><div>to see</div></div> <div>in a little while</div>	see you in a little while	<div><div>dài</div><div>待</div><div>待</div><div>to wait for</div></div> <div><div>hǔi</div><div>會兒</div><div>会儿</div><div>to meet together</div></div> <div><div>jiàn</div><div>見</div><div>见</div><div>to see</div></div>

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
I'm out of here	wǒ zǒu le 我 走 了 I to walk		

Table 9.2: How are you?

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
How are you?	nǐ hǎo ma 你 好 嗎 you good (?)	not bad	bú cuò 不 錯 not faults
I am fine.	wǒ hěn hǎo 我 很 好 I very good	so-so	mǎ mǎ hū hū 馬 馬 虎 虎 horse horse tiger tiger
thank you	xiè xiè 謝 謝 to thank to thank	not too well	bú tài hǎo 不 太 好 not extremely good
And you?	nǐ ne 你 呢 you		

## 9.2 Introductions

jiè  
介  
介

situated between  
introduce

shào  
紹  
紹

bring together

Table 9.3: Introductions

English	Chinese (中文)
What is your name?	nǐ jiào shé me míng zì ? 你 叫 什 麼 名 字 ? 你 叫 什 么 名 字 ? you called what name a word what a name

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)
My name is ____.	wǒ jiào ____ 。 我叫 ____ 。 I called
What is his name?	tā jiào shé me míng zì ? 他叫什麼名字？ he called what name a word what a name
His name is ____.	tā jiào ____ 。 他叫 ____ 。 he called
How old are you?	nǐ jǐ suì ? 你幾歲？ 你几岁？ you how many a year of age
I am ____ years old.	wǒ ____ suì 。 我 ____ 歲。 我 ____ 岁。 I a year of age
Can you speak English?	nǐ huì shuō yīng yǔ ma ? 你會說英語嗎？ 你会说英语吗？ you able speak outstanding language English
It's nice to meet you.	hěn gāo xìng rèn shì nǐ 。 很高興認識你。 很高兴认识你。 very high cheerful recognize know you glad know

## 9.3 Civilities

lǐ mào  
禮貌  
礼貌

courtesy manner  
politeness

Table 9.4: Civilities

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
thanks	xìe xìe 謝 謝 謝謝 thank thank	cordial	qīn qiè 親 切 親 切 intimate close
manners	lǐ mào 禮 貌 禮 貌 ceremony features		

Table 9.5: Apologies

English	Chinese (中文)
sorry	dùì bù qǐ 對 不 起 對 不 起 facing not to rise
sorry	bào qiàn 抱 歉 抱 歉 hug apology
no problem	méi yǒu wèn tí 沒 有 問 題 沒 有 問 題 none have to ask a subject not have problem
It doesn't matter.	méi guān xi 沒 關 係 沒 關 係 not to close to tie relation
Please don't be angry!	qǐng bú yào shēng qì 請 不 要 生 氣 請 不 要 生 氣 please not want to give birth to air don't angry
Don't take offense!	bié jiè yì 別 介 意 別 介 意 don't introduce meaning to take offense

continued on the next page ...

<sup>1</sup> 張晉霖 (2005d): 奇怪的客人 (qí guài de kè rén—The Strange Visitor), page 27

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)
I don't know what I should say to make things right.	<p>wǒ bù zhī gāi shuō shén me cái hǎo<sup>2</sup></p> <p>我 不 知 該 說 什 麼 才 好 ◦</p> <p>我 不 知 該 說 什 么 才 好 ◦</p> <p>I not know should say what just good</p> <p>what</p>
Together they were able to undo the misunderstanding.	<p>tā men bǐ cǐ jiě kāi le wù huì<sup>3</sup></p> <p>他 們 彼 此 解 開 了 誤 會 ◦</p> <p>他 们 彼 此 解 开 了 误 会 ◦</p> <p>he s that this to untie to open error to assemble</p> <p>they each other to undo misunderstanding</p>
You must show good manners.	<p>nǐ yào biǎo xiàn yǒu lǐ mào<sup>4</sup></p> <p>你 要 表 現 有 禮 貌 ◦</p> <p>你 要 表 现 有 礼 貌 ◦</p> <p>you want surface to appear to have ceremony features</p> <p>to show</p>

Table 9.6: Civilities

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
thank you	<p>xìe xìe nǐ</p> <p>謝 謝 你</p> <p>谢 谢 你</p> <p>thank thank you</p>	you're welcome	<p>bú kè qì</p> <p>不 客 氣</p> <p>不 客 气</p> <p>not a guest air</p> <p>polite</p>
excuse me, can I ask ...	<p>qǐng wèn ...</p> <p>請 問</p> <p>请 问</p> <p>to request to request</p>	excuse me (to pass)	<p>jiè guò</p> <p>借 過</p> <p>借 过</p> <p>to borrow to pass</p>
Welcome!	<p>hūan yíng !</p> <p>歡 迎 !</p> <p>欢 迎 !</p> <p>cheerful to receive</p>	Please come in.	<p>qǐng jìn</p> <p>請 進</p> <p>请 进</p> <p>to request to enter</p>
Do you mind?	<p>nǐ jiè yì ma ?</p> <p>你 介 意 嗎 ?</p> <p>你 介 意 吗 ?</p> <p>you introduce meaning (?)</p> <p>to take offense</p>		

<sup>2</sup> 張晉霖 (2005f): 蝴蝶風箏 (hú dié fēng zhēng—The Butterfly Kite), page 15<sup>3</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999b): 三劍客 (sān jiàn kè—The Three Musketeers), page 16<sup>4</sup> 張晉霖 (2005d): 奇怪的客人 (qí guài de kè rén—The Strange Visitor), page 1

Table 9.7: Anti-civilities

English	Chinese (中文)
Get out of here!	<p>gǔn chū qù<sup>5</sup>            滾 出 去 !            滾 出 去 !            to roll to exit to go            to get out</p>
You had better kick him out as soon as possible.	<p>nǐ hái shì jǐn zǎo bǎ tā gǎn zǒu ba<sup>6</sup>            你 還 是 儘 早 把 他 趕 走 吧 。            你 還 是 儘 早 把 他 趕 走 吧 。            you still that to the utmost early he to expel to walk            had better as soon as possible kick out</p>

## 9.4 Communications

Table 9.8: Common verbs

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
to say	<p>shuō            說            说            to say</p>	to talk	<p>jiǎng huà            講 話            讲 话            to speak talks</p>
to talk about	<p>tán lùn            談 論            谈 论            to talk to discuss</p>	to discuss	<p>tǎo lùn            討 論            讨 论            to demand to discuss</p>
to chat	<p>liáo tiān            聊 天            聊 天            merely sky</p>	to chat	<p>tán tiān            談 天            谈 天            to talk sky</p>
to quarrel	<p>chǎo jià            吵 架            吵 架            to quarrel a rack</p>	to shout	<p>hǎn jiào            喊 叫            喊 叫            to shout to call</p>
indiscriminate talk	<p>lùan huà            亂 話            乱 话            disorder talk</p>	garbage talk	<p>fèi huà            廢 話            废 话            abolish talk</p>

continued on the next page ...

<sup>5</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999e): 醜小鴨 (*chǒu xiǎo yā—The Ugly Duckling*), page 22

<sup>6</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999e): 醜小鴨 (*chǒu xiǎo yā—The Ugly Duckling*), page 6

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
listen	<b>tiīng</b> 聽 听 listen	listen to	<b>tiīng</b> <b>zhe</b> 聽          著 听          着 listen (adverbial particle)
listening comprehension	<b>tiīng</b> <b>lì</b> 聽      力 听      力 listen strength	sing	<b>chàng</b> <b>gē</b> 唱      歌 唱      歌 to sing song
response	<b>fǎn</b> <b>yīng</b> 反      應 反      应 contrary to answer response		

Table 9.9: Expressions

English	Chinese (中文)
to chat	<b>tán</b> <b>tiān</b> <b>shuō</b> <b>xiào</b> <sup>7</sup> 談    天    說    笑 谈    天    说    笑 to talk sky to say to laugh
to chat about everything	<b>tán</b> <b>tiān</b> <b>shuō</b> <b>dì</b> 談    天    說    地 谈    天    说    地 to talk sky to say earth
everyone talking at once	<b>qī</b> <b>zǔi</b> <b>bā</b> <b>shé</b> <sup>8</sup> 七      嘴      八      舌 七      嘴      八      舌 seven mouth eight tongue
to repeatedly urge	<b>dīng</b> <b>níng</b> <sup>9</sup> 叮      嚀 叮      叮 to sting to instruct
to say to oneself	<b>zì</b> <b>yán</b> <b>zì</b> <b>yǔ</b> <sup>10</sup> 自      言      自      語 自      言      自      語 self speech self language

continued on the next page ...

<sup>7</sup> 李美華 (2008b): 避雨 (bì yǔ) *Taking shelter from the rain*, page 25<sup>8</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999e): 醜小鴨 (chǒu xiǎo yā—*The Ugly Duckling*), page 4<sup>9</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999e): 醜小鴨 (chǒu xiǎo yā—*The Ugly Duckling*), page 4<sup>10</sup> 幼福編輯部 (2005i): 酷酷熊有決心 *The Bear Got The Determination*, page 21

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)
to self-ask self-answer	<p> <span>zì</span> <span>wèn</span> <span>zì</span> <span>dá</span>            自 問 自 答            自 問 自 答            self ask self to answer            to ask oneself         </p>
to cover the mouth with the hand	<p> <span>wǔ</span> <span>zhù</span> <span>zǔi</span> <span>bā</span> <sup>11</sup>            搗 住 嘴 巴            搗 住 嘴 巴            to cover to cease mouth to expect            mouth         </p>

Table 9.10: Can you speak?

English	Chinese (中文)
Can you speak English?	<p> <span>nǐ</span> <span>huì</span> <span>jiǎng</span> <span>yīng</span> <span>yǔ</span> <span>ma</span>            你 會 講 英 語 嗎 ?            你 會 講 英 語 嗎 ?            you able speak outstanding language (?)            English         </p>
Can you speak Chinese?	<p> <span>nǐ</span> <span>huì</span> <span>jiǎng</span> <span>guó</span> <span>yǔ</span> <span>ma</span>            你 會 講 國 語 嗎 ?            你 會 講 國 語 嗎 ?            you able speak national language (?)            Chinese         </p>
I can.	<p> <span>huì</span>            會 。            會 。            able         </p>
I cannot.	<p> <span>bù</span> <span>huì</span>            不 會 。            不 會 。            not able         </p>
A little.	<p> <span>yī</span> <span>diǎn</span> <span>diǎn</span>            一 點 點 。            一 點 點 。            one drop drop         </p>
Just a little.	<p> <span>yī</span> <span>diǎn</span> <span>diǎn</span> <span>ér</span> <span>yǐ</span>            一 點 點 而 已 。            一 點 點 而 已 。            one drop drop and already            that is all         </p>

continued on the next page ...

<sup>11</sup> 李美華 (2008a): 讓人思念的小章魚—*The Little Octopus ...*, page 19



...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)
I can speak Chinese.	<p>wǒ huì jiǎng guó yǔ      ◦  我 會 講 國 語      ◦  我 会 讲 国 语      ◦</p> <p>I able speak <u>national language</u>  Chinese</p>
I can speak Chinese a little.	<p>wǒ huì jiǎng guó yǔ yī diǎn diǎn      ◦  我 會 講 國 語 一 點 點      ◦  我 会 讲 国 语 一 点 点      ◦</p> <p>I able speak <u>national language</u> one drop drop  Chinese</p>
I cannot speak Chinese.	<p>wǒ bù huì jiǎng guó yǔ      ◦  我 不 會 講 國 語      ◦  我 不 会 讲 国 语      ◦</p> <p>I not able speak <u>national language</u>  Chinese</p>





CHAPTER 10

ON THE MOVE

Table 10.1: On the move words

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
walk	<div>zǒu</div> 走 走 walk	run	<div>pǎo</div> 跑 跑 run
jump	<div>tiào</div> 跳 跳 jump	kick	<div>tī</div> 踢 踢 kick
fly	<div>fēi</div> 飛 飞 fly	ride	<div>qí</div> 騎 骑 ride
stop	<div>ting</div> 停 停 stop		

Table 10.2: On the move sentences

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
stand up	<div>zhàn      qǐ      lái</div> 站      起      來 站      起      來 to stand    to start   to come to stand	turn around	<div>zhuǎn   shēn</div> 轉      身 转      身 to turn   body to turn about

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
sit down	<p>zùo xià 坐 下 坐 下</p> <p>to sit down to sit down</p>	raise your hand	<p>jǔ shǒu 舉 手 举 手</p> <p>to raise hand to raise hand</p>
raise your foot	<p>jǔ jiǎo 舉 腳 举 脚</p> <p>to raise foot</p>	move left	<p>wǎng zǒu biān yí dòng 往 左 邊 移 動 往 左 边 移 动</p> <p>toward left side to move to move left side to move</p>
move right	<p>wǎng yòu biān 往 右 邊 往 右 边</p> <p>toward right side right side</p> <p>yí dòng 移 動 移 动</p> <p>to move to move to move</p>	move forward	<p>wǎng qián biān 往 前 邊 往 前 边</p> <p>toward front side front side</p> <p>yí dòng 移 動 移 动</p> <p>to move to move to move</p>
move backwards	<p>wǎng hòu biān 往 後 邊 往 后 边</p> <p>toward behind side back side</p> <p>yí dòng 移 動 移 动</p> <p>to move to move to move</p>		

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

## English

## Chinese (中文)

Table 10.3: On the move examples

English	Chinese (中文)
Gross! Gross! Don't come near me. Turn your face away.	<p>tǎo yàn , tǎo yàn bú yào guò lái , nǐ bǎ  討厭 , 討厭 不要 過來 , 你把  討厭 , 討厭 不要 過來 , 你把  to incur to detest to incur to detest not want to go across come you  to loathe to loathe don't to come over</p> <p>liǎn zhuǎn guò qù ma  臉轉 過去 嘛  脸转 过去 嘛  face to turn to go across to go  to go over</p>
Where does it lead to?	<p>tā tōng dào nǎ lǐ qù ne  它通 到 哪 裡 去 呢  它通 到 哪 裡 去 呢  it to lead to to arrive at where inside to go  to lead to where</p>

Table 10.4: Taking things away

English	Chinese (中文)
The crow carried one away in his mouth.	<p>wū yā diào zǒu le yí ge  烏鴉 叼 走 了 一 個  乌鴉 叼 走 了 一 个  black crow to hold by the teeth to walk one (mw)  crow to take away in the mouth one</p>
The little mice moved one away.	<p>xiǎo lǎo shǔ bān zǒu le yí ge  小老鼠 搬 走 了 一 個  小老鼠 搬 走 了 一 个  little old mouse to move to walk one (mw)  mouse to move away one</p>
The ants carried away the last apple.	<p>xiǎo mǎ yǐ tái zǒu le zuì hòu yí ge hóng píng guǒ  小蚂蚁 抬 走 了 最 後 一 個 紅 蘋 果  小蚂蚁 抬 走 了 最 後 一 个 红 苹 果  little ant ant to lift to walk most behind one (mw) red apple fruit  ant to carry away last one apple</p>

<sup>1</sup> 征矢清 (1999): 葉子小屋 (*Small House of Leaves*), page 10

<sup>2</sup> 方素珍 (1999): 那是一個洞嗎? (*Nà shì yí ge dòng ma?—Is that a hole?*), page 9

<sup>3</sup> 垂石真子 (2009): *Everyone Comes to Big Red Apples* 好大的紅蘋果, page 7

<sup>4</sup> 垂石真子 (2009): *Everyone Comes to Big Red Apples* 好大的紅蘋果, page 9

<sup>5</sup> 垂石真子 (2009): *Everyone Comes to Big Red Apples* 好大的紅蘋果, page 17





CHAPTER 11

THE HEART OF MAN

11.1 Emotions

Table 11.1: Emotions

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
personality	<div><div>gè xìng</div><div>個性</div><div>个 性</div><div>piece nature</div></div>	moral character, nature	<div><div>xīn dì<sup>1</sup></div><div>心地</div><div>心地</div><div>heart soil</div></div>
happy	<div><div>kuài lè</div><div>快樂</div><div>快 乐</div><div>quick joyous</div></div>	glad	<div><div>gāo xìng</div><div>高興</div><div>高 兴</div><div>high cheerful</div></div>
tired	<div><div>lèi le</div><div>累了</div><div>累 了</div><div>tired</div></div>	vexed	<div><div>kǔ nǎo</div><div>苦惱</div><div>苦 恼</div><div>bitter annoyed</div></div>
sad	<div><div>nán guò</div><div>難過</div><div>难 过</div><div>difficult to pass</div></div>	depressed	<div><div>jǔ sàng</div><div>沮喪</div><div>沮 丧</div><div>stop lose</div></div>
afraid	<div><div>hài pà</div><div>害怕</div><div>害 怕</div><div>damage fear</div></div>	discouraged	<div><div>hūi xīn</div><div>灰心</div><div>灰 心</div><div>ash heart</div></div>

continued on the next page ...

<sup>1</sup> 李美華 (2008a): 讓人思念的小章魚—*The Little Octopus ...*, page 22

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
angry	shēng qì 生氣 生 气 to give birth to air	angry	qì hū hū 氣 呼 呼 气 呼 呼 air to exhale
extremely angry	qì jí 氣 極 气 极 air utmost	excited	xīng fèn 興 奮 兴 奋 to launch to exert
worried	dān xīn 擔 心 担 心 to carry the heart	interested	yǒu xìng qù 有 興 趣 有 兴 趣 have cheerful interest interest
bored	wú liáo 無 聊 无 聊 without a little	jealous	jí dù 嫉 妒 嫉 妒 to be jealous envy
calm	zhèn dìng 鎮 定 镇 定 to press down stable	surprised	jīng yà 驚 訝 惊 讶 to startle to be surprised
nervous	jǐn zhāng 緊 張 紧 张 tight spread	embarrassed	gān gà 尷 尬 尴 尬 embarrassed embarrassed
heartbroken	shāng xīn 傷 心 伤 心 injury heart	to detest	xián 嫌 嫌
to loathe	tǎo yàn 討 厭 讨 厌 to incur to detest	sorrow	bēi shāng 悲 傷 悲 伤 sorrow injury
glum, gloomy, morose	mèn mèn bú lè 悶 悶 不 樂 闷 闷 不 乐 melancholy not joyous		



Table 11.2: Emotions

English	Chinese (中文)
Are you happy?	<p>nǐ kuài lè ma ? 你 快 樂 嗎 ? 你 快 乐 吗 ?</p> <p>you quick joyous happy</p>
I am happy.	<p>wǒ kuài lè 。 我 快 樂 。 我 快 乐 。</p> <p>I quick joyous happy</p>
You look sad.	<p>nǐ kàn qǐ lái nán guò 。 你 看 起 來 難 過 。 你 看 起 来 难 过 。</p> <p>you see rise come difficult to pass rise up sad appear</p>
Are you in a good mood?	<p>nǐ de xīn qíng hǎo ma ? 你 的 心 情 好 嗎 ? 你 的 心 情 好 吗 ?</p> <p>you 's heart sentiment good your mood</p>
What mood are you in?	<p>nǐ de xīn qíng zě me yàng ? 你 的 心 情 怎 麼 樣 ? 你 的 心 情 怎 么 样 ?</p> <p>you 's heart sentiment why shape your mood how</p>
How do you feel?	<p>nǐ jué dé zě me yàng ? 你 覺 得 怎 麼 樣 ? 你 觉 得 怎 么 样 ?</p> <p>you sense get why shape feel how</p>
She breathed a sigh of relief.	<p>tā sōng le yì kǒu qì 。<sup>3</sup> 她 鬆 了 一 口 氣 她 松 了 一 口 气</p> <p>she loose one mouth air one breath</p>

continued on the next page ...

<sup>3</sup> 郭桂玲: 一起想辦法 (yī qǐ xiǎng bàn fǎ)—Together Think of a Way, page 38

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)
to heave a deep sigh	<p>āi shēng tàn qì <sup>4</sup>            唉 聲 嘆 氣            唉 聲 嘆 氣            alas sound to sigh air            to sigh</p>

<p>wáng zǐ hàn            王 子 和            王 子 和            king son and            prince</p>	<p>sǒu yǒu de rén dōu            所 有 的 人 都            所 有 的 人 都            place have 's person all            all everyone</p>	<p>dà chī yì jīng <sup>5</sup>            大 吃 一 驚            大 吃 一 驚            big eat one to be startled            thunderstruck</p>	<p>The Prince and everyone there was thunderstruck with surprise.</p>
--	---	---	---

Table 11.3: Like/dislike

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
to like	<p>xǐ huan            喜 歡            喜 歡            happy cheerful</p>	facial expression	<p>biǎo qíng <sup>6</sup>            表 情            表 情            surface sentiment</p>
to dislike	<p>tǎo yàn            討 厭            討 厭            to demand to detest</p>	to abhor	<p>yàn wù <sup>7</sup>            厭 惡            厭 惡            to detest to loathe</p>

Table 11.4: Expressions of emotion

English	Chinese (中文)
facial expression	<p>biǎo qíng <sup>8</sup>            表 情            表 情            surface sentiment</p>
so glad that it was beyond understanding	<p>gāo xìng de bù dé liǎo <sup>9</sup>            高 興 得 不 得 了            高 興 得 不 得 了            high cheerful            glad            not to get to understand            beyond understanding</p>

<sup>4</sup> 風車編輯部/編 (2002): 10隻討厭的烏鴉 (shí zhī tǎo yàn de wū yā—Ten Disagreeable Crows), page 57

<sup>5</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999c): 天鵝湖 (tiān é hú—Swan Lake), page 18

<sup>6</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999e): 醜小鴨 (chǒu xiǎo yā—The Ugly Duckling), page 10

<sup>7</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999e): 醜小鴨 (chǒu xiǎo yā—The Ugly Duckling), page 10

<sup>8</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999e): 醜小鴨 (chǒu xiǎo yā—The Ugly Duckling), page 10

<sup>9</sup> 郭桂玲: 神氣的披風 (shén qì de pī fēng)—The Majestic Cape, page 17

Table 11.5: Fear

English	Chinese (中文)									
The wolf was so scared that his whole body shook.	láng	xià	de	quán	shēn	fā	dǒu	10		
	狼	嚇	得	全	身	發	抖	○		
	狼	吓	得	全	身	发	抖	○		
	wolf to scare (to the extent that) entire body to send out to tremble to shake									
The rabbit was so scared that his entire body had no strength.	tù	zi	xià	de	quán	shēn	méi	lì	11	
	兔	子	嚇	得	全	身	沒	力	○	
	兔	子	吓	得	全	身	没	力	○	
	rabbit son scared (to the extent that) entire body no strength									
	rabbit									
He was so scared that he immediately pulled out his legs and just ran.	tā	xià	de	lì	kè	bá	tǔi	jiù	pǎo	12
	他	嚇	得	立	刻	拔	腿	就	跑	○
	他	吓	得	立	刻	拔	腿	就	跑	○
	he to scare to stand to carve to pull out legs just ran immediately									
Even the traffic cop saw it and was also completely scared, his whole body breaking out in a cold sweat.	lián	jiāo	tōng	jǐng	chá	kàn	le	yě	dōu	
	連	交	通	警	察	看	了	也	都	
	连	交	通	警	察	看	了	也	都	
	even to deliver through to caution to closely examine to look at also completely									
	traffic police saw									
	xià	chū	yì	shēn	lěng	hàn	13			
	嚇	出	一	身	冷	汗	○			
	吓	出	一	身	冷	汗	○			
	scared to exit one body cold sweat									
	whole body cold sweat									

## 11.2 Character

Table 11.6: Character

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
bravery	<b>yǒng</b> <b>gǎn</b> 勇 敢 勇 敢 brave dare to	curious	<b>hào</b> <b>qí</b> 好 奇 好 奇 fond of unusual

continued on the next page ...

10 幼福編輯部 (2005j): 黑猩猩來了 (*hēi xīng xīng lái le—The Black Gorilla is coming*), page 11

11 余治瑩 (2006): 彩色小兔 (*cǎi sè xiǎo tù—The colored rabbit*), page 16

12 幼福編輯部 (2005g): 小象妹找自信 (*xiǎo xiàng mèi zhǎo zì xìn—Little Elephant ...confidence*), page 23

13 張晉霖 (2005c): 哈啾不見了 (*hā jiū bú jiàn le—"Achoo" No More*), page 17

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
determination	júe xīn 決心 決心 decided heart	diligence	qín láo 勤勞 勤勞 diligent work
endurance	nài lì 耐力 耐力 enduring strength	faithfulness	zhōng chéng 忠誠 忠誠 loyal sincere
honest	lǎo shí <sup>14</sup> 老實 老實 old true	honest and kind	zhōng hòu <sup>15</sup> 忠厚 忠厚 loyal kind
humble	qiān xū 謙虛 謙虛 modest empty	kindness	rén cí 仁慈 仁慈 benevolence kind
joy	hūan lè 歡樂 歡樂 cheerful joyous	love	rè ài 熱愛 熱愛 hot love
patience	nài xīn 耐心 耐心 enduring heart	patience	nài xìng 耐性 耐性 enduring nature
peace	hé píng 和平 和平 peace level	sincere / true-hearted	chéng kěn <sup>16</sup> 誠懇 誠懇 sincere earnest
warmhearted	rè xīn 熱心 熱心 hot heart	deeply and lovingly devoted to each other	xiāng qīn xiāng 相親相 相親相 mutually close mutually ài <sup>17</sup> 愛 愛 love

<sup>14</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999d): 賣香屁 (mài xiāng pì—Selling Fragrant Gas), page 2<sup>15</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999d): 賣香屁 (mài xiāng pì—Selling Fragrant Gas), page 2<sup>16</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999d): 賣香屁 (mài xiāng pì—Selling Fragrant Gas), page 2<sup>17</sup> 幼福編輯部 (2005d): 小白兔的友誼 The Rabbit's Friendship, page 3

Table 11.7: Negative character traits

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
false/fake display of affection	<p>xū qíng 虛情 虛情</p> <p>empty sentiment<sup>18</sup></p> <p>jiǎ yì 假意 假意</p> <p>fake meaning insincerity</p>	full of oneself	<p>dé yì 得意 得意</p> <p>get meaning</p>
narrow minded	<p>xiǎo xīn yǎn<sup>19</sup> 小 心 眼 小 心 眼</p> <p>small heart eye</p>	proud	<p>jiāo ào 驕傲 驕傲</p> <p>arrogant proud</p>
take advantage of	<p>zhàn pián yí<sup>20</sup> 佔 便 宜 佔 便 宜</p> <p>to seize <u>suitable</u> petty gain</p>		

Table 11.8: Character

English	Chinese (中文)
In every situation he was always planning, always thinking how to totally take advantage of other people.	<p>tā fán shì dōu yào jì jiào , zǒng shì xiǎng zhàn 他 凡 事 都 要 計 較 總 是 想 佔 他 凡 事 都 要 計 較 總 是 想 佔</p> <p>he all matters all want to count to compare always that to think to seize</p> <p>to plan always</p> <p>jìn bié rén de pián yí<sup>21</sup> 盡 別 人 的 便 宜 盡 別 人 的 便 宜</p> <p>exhausted other person 's suitable other people petty gain</p>
The crowd little by little lost patience.	<p>rén qún jiàn jiàn shī qù nài xìng<sup>22</sup> 人 群 漸 漸 失 去 耐 性 人 群 漸 漸 失 去 耐 性</p> <p>people crowd gradually gradually to lose to go enduring nature crowd gradually to lose patience</p>

<sup>18</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999d): 賣香屁 (*mài xiāng pì—Selling Fragrant Gas*), page 4

<sup>19</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999d): 賣香屁 (*mài xiāng pì—Selling Fragrant Gas*), page 2

<sup>20</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999d): 賣香屁 (*mài xiāng pì—Selling Fragrant Gas*), page 6

<sup>21</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999d): 賣香屁 (*mài xiāng pì—Selling Fragrant Gas*), page ?

<sup>22</sup> 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008e): 貝絲的心願 (*bèi sī de xīn yuàn*) *Beth's cherished desire*, page 18

## 11.3 Thought processes

Table 11.9: Thought processes

English	Chinese (中文)
to have a sudden inspiration	<div> <div>líng jī yí dòng<sup>23</sup></div> <div>靈機一動</div> <div>灵机一动</div> <div>clever alert one to move</div> </div>
to show understanding for	<div> <div>tǐ liàng<sup>24</sup></div> <div>體諒</div> <div>体谅</div> <div>body forgive</div> </div>
to me (in my opinion)	<div> <div>dùì wǒ lái shuō</div> <div>對我來說</div> <div>对我来说</div> <div>facing me come speak</div> </div>
to think so	<div> <div>cāi xiǎng</div> <div>猜想</div> <div>猜想</div> <div>to guess to think</div> </div>
to think reckless thoughts full of confusion	<div> <div>hú sī lùn xiǎng<sup>25</sup></div> <div>胡思亂想</div> <div>胡思乱想</div> <div>reckless think disorder think</div> </div>
can't figure out	<div> <div>xiǎng bù tōng</div> <div>想不通</div> <div>想不通</div> <div>to think not through</div> </div>

Table 11.10: What do you think?

English	Chinese (中文)
Would you say that I am pretty?	<div> <div>nǐ shuō wǒ piào liàng ma<sup>26</sup></div> <div>你說我漂亮嗎？</div> <div>你说我漂亮吗？</div> <div>you to say I pretty bright</div> <div>pretty</div> </div>

continued on the next page ...

<sup>23</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999d): 賣香屁 (*mài xiāng pì—Selling Fragrant Gas*), page 6

<sup>24</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999d): 賣香屁 (*mài xiāng pì—Selling Fragrant Gas*), page 8

<sup>25</sup> 張晉霖 (2006b): 給貓咪掛鈴鐺 (*gěi māo mī guà líng dāng*) *hang a bell on the cat*, page 12

<sup>26</sup> 幼福編輯部 (2005g): 小象妹找自信 (*xiǎo xiàng mèi zhǎo zì xìn—Little Elephant ...confidence*), page 5

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)
Do you see me as pretty?	nǐ kàn wǒ piào liàng ma 27 你 看 我 漂 亮 嗎 ? 你 看 我 漂 亮 嗎 ? you to see I pretty bright pretty
To me, here is just perfect.	zhè lǐ duì wǒ lái shuō gāng gāng hǎo 28 這 裡 對 我 來 說 剛 剛 好 這 里 对 我 来 说 刚 刚 好 this inside facing me come speak exactly exactly good here perfect

## 11.4 The will

Table 11.11:

English	Chinese (中文)
o make up one's mind	xià dìng jué xīn 下 定 決 心 下 定 決 心 to form an opinion to fix to decide heart determination
to be willing	yuàn yì 願 意 愿 意 willing idea
willing or not	yuàn bù yuàn yì 願 不 願 意 愿 不 愿 意 willing not willing idea
reluctantly	xīn bú gān qíng bù yuàn 心 不 甘 情 不 願 心 不 甘 情 不 愿 heart not sweet sentiment not willing

Example 11.1 (Intent). Following are some example sentences expressing *intent*:

1. ràng wǒ xǐ lǜ dòu  
讓 我 洗 綠 豆  
让 我 洗 绿 豆  
let I wash green legumes  
mung beans

27 幼福編輯部 (2005g): 小象妹找自信 (xiǎo xiàng mèi zhǎo zì xìn—Little Elephant ...confidence), page 5

28 Walsh (1999): 躲貓貓和睡覺—Hide and Sleep, page 8

2. wǒ lái xǐ lǜ dòu 29

我 來 洗 綠 豆  
我 來 洗 綠 豆I come wash green legumes  
mung beans○ Allow me to wash the mung beans.  
○

3. wǒ xiǎng xǐ lǜ dòu

我 想 洗 綠 豆  
我 想 洗 綠 豆I like wash green legumes  
mung beans○ I wish to wash the mung beans.  
○

4. wǒ xiǎng yào xǐ lǜ dòu

我 想 要 洗 綠 豆  
我 想 要 洗 綠 豆I like want wash green legumes  
would like to mung beans○ I would like to wash the mung beans.  
○

5. wǒ yào xǐ lǜ dòu

我 要 洗 綠 豆  
我 要 洗 綠 豆I want wash green legumes  
mung beans○ I want to wash the mung beans.  
○

6. mā mā bù tíng de cūi zhe wéi ní zhǐ hǎo

媽 媽 不 停 的 催 著 , 惟 妮 只 好  
媽 媽 不 停 的 催 着 , 惟 妮 只 好mother mother not stop 's to urge (part) only maid only good  
Mama non-stop urging Winnie could onlyxīn bù gān qíng bú yuàn de chū mén le 30  
心 不 甘 情 不 願 的 出 門 了heart not sweet sentiment not willing -ly exit door  
go out

unhappily and unwillingly

With Mama's non-stop urging,  
Winnie could only with an  
unhappy heart and an  
unwilling mind go out.

29 曾陽晴 (2009): 媽媽買綠豆 (Let's Get Mung Beans, Momma!), page 6

30 王姿云 (2008): 維尼上學囉, page 4



CHAPTER 12

WORK AND REST

12.1 Work

Table 12.1: Work

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
work	<div><div><div>gōng zùo</div><div>工 作</div><div>工 作</div></div><div>work to do</div></div>	to slack	<div><div><div>tōu lǎn</div><div>偷 懶</div><div>偷 懶</div></div><div>secretely lazy</div></div>
diligent	<div><div><div>qín fèn</div><div>勤 奮</div><div>勤 奮</div></div><div>diligent to exert</div></div>	diligent	<div><div><div>qín láo</div><div>勤 勞</div><div>勤 勞</div></div><div>diligent to work</div></div>
lazy	<div><div><div>lǎn duò</div><div>懶 惰</div><div>懶 惰</div></div><div>lazy laziness</div></div>		
relaxed; free and easy	<div><div><div>qīng sōng</div><div>輕 鬆</div><div>轻 松</div></div><div>light loose</div></div>	leisurely and carefree	<div><div><div>yōu xián</div><div>悠 閒</div><div>悠 閒</div></div><div>leisurely idle</div></div>
to strive	<div><div><div>nǔ lì</div><div>努 力</div><div>努 力</div></div><div>to exert strength</div></div>	conscientious	<div><div><div>rèn zhēn</div><div>認 真</div><div>认 真</div></div><div>to recognize true</div></div>
speciality	<div><div><div>yī jì zhī cháng</div><div>一 技 之 長</div><div>一 技 之 长</div></div><div>one skill ' strength</div></div>	master worker	<div><div><div>shī fù</div><div>師 傅</div><div>师 傅</div></div><div>teacher to teach</div></div>

Table 12.2: work expressions

English	Chinese (中文)
so busy that his head was dripping with sweat	<sup>1</sup> máng de mǎn tóu dà hàn 忙 得 滿 頭 大 汗 忙 得 滿 頭 大 汗 busy that full head big sweat
work together with one heart	<sup>2</sup> tóng xīn xié lì 同 心 協 力 同 心 協 力 together heart to assist power with one heart to unite efforts
work so difficult leaving one with grey hair and mud covered face	<sup>3</sup> hūi tóu tǔ liǎn 灰 頭 土 臉 灰 頭 土 臉 grey head soil face

Table 12.3: Work example sentence

English	Chinese (中文)
I'm so busy that I don't have time to eat.	<sup>3</sup> wǒ máng dé méi yǒu shí jiān chī wǎn cān 我 忙 得 沒 有 時 間 吃 晚 餐 我 忙 得 沒 有 時 間 吃 晚 餐 I busy that none have time between eat evening meal not have time dinner
With hard work and no fear of injury and pain, only then can you succeed.	<sup>4</sup> zhǐ yǒu nǚ lì gōng zuò , bú pà shòu shāng hàn téng tòng 只 有 努 力 工 作 , 不 怕 受 傷 和 疼 痛 只 有 努 力 工 作 , 不 怕 受 傷 和 疼 痛 only have exert force worker do not to fear receive injury and to ache pain exert work to get injured a pain cái néng chéng gōng , 才 能 成 功 , 才 能 成 功 only then can to accomplish merit success

<sup>1</sup> 幼福編輯部 (2005a): 大黃牛學勤勞 (dà huáng niú xué qín láo—Big Yellow Cow Learns Diligence), page 4

<sup>2</sup> 幼福編輯部 (2005e): 小老虎大嗓門 A Little Tiger's Loud Voice, page 21

<sup>3</sup> Stephens (1999): 我真的很忙 (I'm Too Busy), page 4

<sup>4</sup> 姜子安 (2007): 阿良造紙 (Ah-Liang Makes Paper), page 9

Table 12.4: Work

English	Chinese (中文)
What work do you do?	nǐ zuò shé me gōng zuò ? 你 做 什 麼 工 作 你 做 什 么 工 作 you do what worker do what work
I am a ____.	wǒ shì ____. 我 是 我 是 I is

Table 12.5: Jobs

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
boss	lǎo bǎn 老 板 老 板 old board	businessman	shāng rén 商 人 商 人 discuss person
doctor	yī shēng 醫 生 医 生 doctor birth	professor	jiào shòu 教 授 教 授 teach give
student	xué shēng 學 生 学 生 learn birth	manager	jīng lǐ 經 理 经 理 manage reason
teacher	lǎo shī 老 師 老 师 old teacher	worker	gōng rén 工 人 工 人 worker person
engineer	gōng chéng shī 工 程 師 工 程 师 worker rules instructor engineering		

Table 12.6: Occupations

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
artist	yì shù jiā 藝 術 家 艺 术 家 skill skill specialist art	singer	gē chàng jiā 歌 唱 家 歌 唱 家 song sing specialist to sing

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
cook	<p>chú shī 廚 師 廚 师 kitchen teacher cook</p>	driver	<p>sī jī 司 機 司 机 in charge of machine driver</p>
doctor	<p>yī shēng 醫 生 医 生 doctor life doctor</p>	dentist	<p>yá yī 牙 醫 牙 医 tooth doctor dentist</p>

## 12.2 Rest

Table 12.7: Sleep and rest

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
to sleep	<p>shuì jiào 睡 覺 睡 觉 to sleep sleep</p>	noon-time nap	<p>shuì ge wǔ jiào 睡 個 午 覺 睡 个 午 觉 to sleep a noon sleep</p>
to snore	<p>dǎ hū 打 呼 打 呼 to hit exhale</p>		
to wake up	<p>xǐng lái 醒 來 醒 来 to awake to come to</p>	to wake up	<p>yí jiào 一 覺 一 觉 one sleep xǐng lái 醒 來 醒 来 to awake to come to to wake up</p>
yawn	<p>dǎ hā qiàn 打 哈 欠 打 哈 欠 to hit to breath out to yawn to yawn</p>	yawn	<p>dǎ hē qiàn 打 呵 欠 打 呵 欠 to hit to scold to yawn to yawn</p>
oversleep	<p>shuì guò tóu 睡 過 頭 睡 过 头 to sleep to pass head</p>	plenty of sleep	<p>shuì hěn bǎo 睡 很 飽 睡 很 饱 to sleep very full</p>

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
not enough sleep	shuì bù bǎo 睡 不 飽 睡 不 饱 to sleep not full	can not sleep	shuì bù zháo jiào 睡 不 著 覺 睡 不 着 觉 to sleep not sleep
to rest	xiū xī 休 息 休 息 to rest breath	exhausted	pí bèi 疲 憊 疲 惫 tired exhausted
tired to the point of collapse	lèi kǔa 累 垮 累累 垮垮 tired to collapse	to relax	sàn sàn xīn 散 散 心 散 散 心 to come loose loose heart relax
exhausted	jìn quán lì 盡 全 力 尽 全 力 exhaust fully power to use all one's strength		
completely exhausted	jīn pí lì jìn 筋 疲 力 盡 筋 疲 力 尽 muscle tired power exhausted		
lackadaisical	wú jīng dǎ cǎi 無 精 打 采 无 精 打 采 without energy to beat to pick		

## Example 12.1.

1. nǐ shuì bǎo le méi ? Have you had enough sleep?  
 你 睡 飽 了 沒 ?  
 你 睡 饱 了 没 ?  
 you to sleep full no

<sup>6</sup> 黃慧敏 (2006): 阿尼要搬家 (ā ní yào bān jiā—Annie wants to move), page 5

<sup>7</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999c): 天鵝湖 (tiān é hú—Swan Lake), page 4

<sup>8</sup> 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008d): 真的 ! (zhēn de—Really!), page 16

<sup>9</sup> 張晉霖 (2005f): 蝴蝶風箏 (hú dié fēng zhēng—The Butterfly Kite), page 19

2. tā mén zǒu dào huáng gōng fù jìn de hú biān sàn sàn xīn 10  
 他 們 走 到 皇 宮 附 近 的 湖 邊 散 散 心 °  
 他 们 走 到 皇 宫 附 近 的 湖 边 散 散 心 °  
 he (s) walk arrive emperor palace attach near 's lake side to come loose loose heart  
 they walked palace nearby lake side relax

They walked to a lake near the palace to relax.

3. zhè ge xià wǔ bà ba hàn mā ma zhōng yú kě yǐ xiǎng shòu  
 這 個 下 午 爸 爸 和 媽 媽 終 於 可 以 享 受  
 这 个 下 午 爸 爸 和 妈 妈 终 于 可 以 享 受  
 this one below noon dad dad and mother mother the end at to approve to use as to have the use of to receive  
 this after noon dad Mom finally can to enjoy  
 piàn kè de ān níng , hǎo hǎo de shuì ge wǔ jiào 11  
 片 刻 的 安 寧 , 好 好 的 睡 個 午 覺 °  
 片 刻 的 安 宁 , 好 好 的 睡 个 午 觉 °  
 slice quarter hour of peaceful tranquility good good of to sleep a noon sleep  
 brief moment tranquility very good

This afternoon, Dad and Mom finally can enjoy a brief moment of peace and quiet, and have a very good afternoon nap.

<sup>10</sup> 劉嘉裕 (1999c): 天鵝湖 (tiān é hú—Swan Lake), page 4

<sup>11</sup> Young and Kim (2003a): 小毛蟲學電腦 Little caterpillar learns the computer, page 23

# **Appendices**





APPENDIX A

GRAMMAR TERMINOLOGY

wén  
文  
文  
a composition

fǎ  
法  
法  
the law

grammar

Table A.1: Parts of speech

English	Chinese (中文)
adjective	<div><div>xíngróngcí</div><div>形容詞</div><div>形容詞</div><div>appearancecontainword</div><div>describe</div></div>
adverb	<div><div>fùcí</div><div>副詞</div><div>副詞</div><div>secondaryword</div></div>
definite article (“the”)	<div><div>dìngguāncí</div><div>定冠詞</div><div>定冠詞</div><div>to fixto wear a capword</div><div>article</div></div>
indefinite article (“a”, “an”)	<div><div>búdìngguāncí</div><div>不定冠詞</div><div>不定冠詞</div><div>notto fixto wear a capword</div><div>article</div></div>

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)
conjunction	<div>lián jiē cí</div> <div>連 接 詞</div> <div>连 接 词</div> <div>to link to accept word</div> <div>to join</div>
gerund	<div>dòng míng cí</div> <div>動 名 詞</div> <div>动 名 词</div> <div>to move name word</div> <div>noun</div>
noun	<div>míng cí</div> <div>名 詞</div> <div>名 词</div> <div>name word</div> <div>noun</div>
preposition	<div>qián zhì cí</div> <div>前 置 詞</div> <div>前 置 词</div> <div>front to place at word</div>
pronoun	<div>dài míng cí</div> <div>代 名 詞</div> <div>代 名 词</div> <div>substitute name word</div> <div>noun</div>
possessive pronoun	<div>suǒ yǒu gé dài míng cí</div> <div>所 有 格 代 名 詞</div> <div>所 有 格 代 名 词</div> <div>that which have style substitute name word</div> <div>to possess noun</div>
relative pronoun	<div>guān xī dài míng cí</div> <div>關 係 代 名 詞</div> <div>关 系 代 名 词</div> <div>to close to tie substitute name word</div> <div>relation noun</div>
verb	<div>dòng cí</div> <div>動 詞</div> <div>动 词</div> <div>to move word</div>

Table A.2: Grammar terminology

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
stress / accent	zhòng yīn 重 音 重 音 weight sound	alphabet	zì mǔ 字 母 字 母 word a mother
grammar	wén fǎ 文 法 文 法 a composition the law	language	yǔ yán 語 言 語 言 language speech or word
phrase	piàn yǔ 片 語 片 語 a slice language	pronunciation	fā yīn 發 音 發 音 to send out sound
punctuation	biāo diǎn fǎ 標 點 法 標 點 法 a mark a spot the law punctuation	vocabulary	zì huì 字 彙 字 彙 a word to collect
sentence	jù zǐ 句 子 句 子 a sentence a son		

Table A.3: Punctuation

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
exclamation mark (!)	jīng tàn hào 驚 嘆 號 驚 嘆 號 to be startled to sigh a mark to marvel	hyphen (-)	lián zì hào 連 字 號 連 字 號 to link a word a mark a ligature
period (.)	jù hào 句 號 句 號 a sentence a mark	question mark (?)	wèn hào 問 號 問 號 to ask a mark
quotation marks (“”)	yǐn hào 引 號 引 號 to pull a mark	semicolon (;)	fēn hào 分 號 分 號 to divide into parts a mark

Table A.4: Tense

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
tense	<div>shí      tài</div> <div>時      態</div> <div>时      态</div> <div>time      form</div> <div>tense (grammar)</div>	past tense	<div>guò      qù      shì</div> <div>過      去      式</div> <div>过      去      式</div> <div>to go across to go form</div> <div>in the past</div>
present tense	<div>xiàn      zài      shì</div> <div>現      在      式</div> <div>现      在      式</div> <div>present to exist form</div> <div>at present</div>	future tense	<div>wèi      lái      shì</div> <div>未      來      式</div> <div>未      来      式</div> <div>not yet to come to form</div> <div>coming</div>

APPENDIX B

NUMBERS

Table B.1: Numbers

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
0	líng 零 零	1	yī 一 一
2	èr 二 二	3	sān 三 三
4	sì 四 四	5	wǔ 五 五
6	liù 六 六	7	qī 七 七
8	bā 八 八	9	jiǔ 九 九
10	shí 十 十	11	shí yī 十一 十一 10 1
12	shí èr 十二 十二 10 2	13	shí sān 十三 十三 10 3
14	shí sì 十四 十四 10 4	15	shí wǔ 十五 十五 10 5

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
16	shí liù 十 五 十 五 10 6	17	shí qī 十 六 十 六 10 7
18	shí bā 十 八 十 八 10 8	19	shí jiǔ 十 九 十 九 10 9
20	èr shí 二 十 二 十 2 10	21	èr shí yī 二 十 一 二 十 一 2 10 1
22	èr shí èr 二 十 二 二 十 二 2 10 2	23	èr shí sān 二 十 三 二 十 三 2 10 3
24	èr shí sì 二 十 四 二 十 四 2 10 4	25	èr shí wǔ 二 十 五 二 十 五 2 10 5
30	sān shí 三 十 三 十 3 10	31	sān shí yī 三 十 一 三 十 一 3 10 1
32	sān shí èr 三 十 二 三 十 二 3 10 2	40	sì shí 四 十 四 十 4 10
50	wǔ shí 五 十 五 十 5 10	60	liù shí 六 十 六 十 6 10
70	qī shí 七 十 七 十 7 10	80	bā shí 八 十 八 十 8 10
90	jiǔ shí 九 十 九 十 9 10	93	jiǔ shí sān 九 十 三 九 十 三 9 10 3
100	yī bǎi 一 百 一 百 1 100	200	èr bǎi 二 百 二 百 2 100

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
300	sān bǎi 三 百 三 百 3 100	400	sì bǎi 四 百 四 百 4 100
500	wǔ bǎi 五 百 五 百 5 100	600	liù bǎi 六 百 六 百 6 100
700	qī bǎi 七 百 七 百 7 100	800	bā bǎi 八 百 八 百 8 100
900	jiǔ bǎi 九 百 九 百 9 100		
1,000	yī qiān 一 千 一 千 1 1000	2,000	liǎng qiān 二 千 二 千 2 1000
3,000	sān qiān 三 千 三 千 3 1000	4,000	sì qiān 四 千 四 千 4 1000
10,000	yī wàn 一 萬 一 万 1 10 <sup>4</sup>	20,000	liǎng wàn 二 萬 二 万 2 10 <sup>4</sup>
30,000	sān wàn 三 萬 三 万 3 10 <sup>4</sup>	40,000	sì wàn 四 萬 四 万 4 10 <sup>4</sup>
100,000	shí wàn 十 萬 十 万 10 10 <sup>4</sup>	200,000	liǎng shí wàn 二 十 萬 二 十 万 2 10 10 <sup>4</sup>
300,000	sān shí wàn 三 十 萬 三 十 万 3 10 10 <sup>4</sup>	400,000	sì shí wàn 四 十 萬 四 十 万 4 10 10 <sup>4</sup>
1,000,000	yī bǎi wàn 一 百 萬 一 百 万 1 100 10 <sup>4</sup>	2,000,000	liǎng bǎi wàn 二 百 萬 二 百 万 2 100 10 <sup>4</sup>

continued on the next page ...



...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
3,000,000	sān bǎi wàn 三 百 萬 三 百 万 3 100 10 <sup>4</sup>	4,000,000	sì bǎi wàn 四 百 萬 四 百 万 4 100 10 <sup>4</sup>
10,000,000	yī qiān wàn 一 千 萬 一 千 万 1 1000 10 <sup>4</sup>	100,000,000	yī yì 一 億 一 亿 1 10 <sup>8</sup>
one billion (10 <sup>9</sup> )	shí yì 十 億 十 亿 10 10 <sup>8</sup>	ten billion (10 <sup>10</sup> )	yī bǎi yì 一 百 億 一 百 亿 1 100 10 <sup>8</sup>
one hundred billion (10 <sup>11</sup> )	yī qiān yì 一 千 億 一 千 亿 1 1000 10 <sup>8</sup>	one trillion (10 <sup>12</sup> )	yī wàn yì 一 萬 億 一 万 亿 1 10 <sup>4</sup> 10 <sup>8</sup>
ten trillion (10 <sup>13</sup> )	shí wàn yì 十 萬 億 十 万 亿 10 10 <sup>4</sup> 10 <sup>8</sup>	one hundred trillion (10 <sup>13</sup> )	yī bǎi wàn yì 一 百 萬 億 一 百 万 亿 1 100 10 <sup>4</sup> 10 <sup>8</sup>



APPENDIX C

SONGS

## C.1 Old McDonald

wàng lǎo xiān shēng yǒu kuài dì  
 王 老 先 生 有 塊 地  
 王 老 先 生 有 块 地  
 king old ahead birth have chunk earth  
 mister

Table C.1: Old McDonald

English	Chinese (中文)
Old McDonald had a farm.	<p>wàng lǎo xiān shēng yǒu kuài dì            王 老 先 生 有 塊 地            王 老 先 生 有 块 地            king old ahead birth have chunk earth            mister</p>
Yi ai yi ai oh	<p>yī yā yī yā yōu            咿 呀 咿 呀 哟 !            咿 呀 咿 呀 哟 !            (sound) (sound) (sound) (sound) (sound)</p>
And on that farm he had a duck.	<p>tā zài yuán lǐ yǎng xiǎo yā            他 在 園 裡 養 小 鴨            他 在 园 里 养 小 鸭            he at garden inside raise small duck            duckling</p>
Yi ai yi ai oh	<p>yī yā yī yā yōu            咿 呀 咿 呀 哟 !            咿 呀 咿 呀 哟 !</p>
Duckling here gua gua	<p>xiǎo yā zhè lǐ gū gū            小 鴨 這 裡 呱 呱            小 鴨 这 里 呱 呱            small duck this inside baby's cry            duckling here</p>
Duckling there gua gua	<p>xiǎo yā nà lǐ gū gū            小 鴨 那 裡 呱 呱            小 鴨 那 里 呱 呱            small duck there inside baby's cry            duckling there</p>
everywhere gua gua	<p>dào chù dōu zài gū gū            到 處 都 在 呱 呱            到 处 都 在 呱 呱            reach place all at baby's cry            everywhere</p>

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)
Old McDonald had a farm.	<p>wàng lǎo xiān shēng yǒu kuài dì  王 老 先 生 有 塊 地  王 老 先 生 有 块 地  king old ahead birth have chunk earth  mister</p>
Yī ai yī ai oh	<p>yī yā yī yā yōu  伊 呀 伊 呀 呦 !  伊 呀 伊 呀 呦 !</p>



## C.2 1 2 3 Fish

Table C.2: One two three fish

English	Chinese (中文)
One, two, three, four, five;	<p>yī èr sān sì wǔ ,            一 二 三 四 五 ,            一 二 三 四 五 ,            one two three four five</p>
once I caught a fish alive.	<p>yí cì wǒ zhǔo le yí tiáo húo yú 。            一 次 我 捉 了 一 条 活 鱼 。            一 次 我 捉 了 一 条 活 鱼 。            one order I catch (-ed) one (mw) live fish            once caught a live fish</p>
Six, seven, eight, nine, ten;	<p>liù qī bā jiǔ shí ,            六 七 八 九 十 ,            六 七 八 九 十 ,            six seven eight nine ten</p>
then I let him go again.	<p>wǒ yòu bǎ tā fàng zǒu le 。            我 又 把 他 放 走 了 。            我 又 把 他 放 走 了 。            I again he set free walk            release</p>
Why did you let him go?	<p>wèi shé me fàng zǒu le tā ?            为 什 么 放 走 了 他 ?            为 什 么 放 走 了 他 ?            for what set free walk he            what release            why</p>
Because he bit my finger so.	<p>yīn wèi tā yǎo le wǒ de shǒu zhǐ tóu 。            因 为 他 咬 了 我 的 手 指 头 。            因 为 他 咬 了 我 的 手 指 头 。            cause for he bite I 's hand finger head            because bit my finger            finger tip</p>
Which finger did he bite?	<p>tā yǎo de shì nǎ ge shǒu zhǐ tóu ?            他 咬 的 是 哪 个 手 指 头 ?            他 咬 的 是 哪 个 手 指 头 ?            he bite is what (mw) hand finger head            which finger            finger tip</p>

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)
This little finger on the right.	<div> shì wǒ yòu hand de xiǎo zhǐ tóu  是 我 右 手 的 小 指 頭 ° </div> <div> is I right hand 's small finger head  right little finger </div>



## C.3 Head Shoulders Knees and Toes

Table C.3: Head and Shoulders

English	Chinese (中文)					
Head and shoulders, knees and toes;	tóu 頭 头 head	jīan 肩 肩 shoulder	bǎng 膀 膀 wings	xī 膝 膝 knee	jiǎo 腳 脚 foot	zhǐ 趾 趾 toe
knees and toes, knees and toes.	xī 膝 膝 knee	jiǎo 腳 脚 foot	zhǐ 趾 趾 toe	xī 膝 膝 knee	jiǎo 腳 脚 foot	zhǐ 趾 趾 toe
Head and shoulders, knees and toes;	tóu 頭 头 head	jīan 肩 肩 shoulder	bǎng 膀 膀 wings	xī 膝 膝 knee	jiǎo 腳 脚 foot	zhǐ 趾 趾 toe
Eyes, ears, nose, and mouth.	yǎn 眼 眼 eyes	ěr 耳 耳 ear	bí 鼻 鼻 nose	hé 和 和 and	kǒu 口 口 mouth	.

## C.4 Bright Moon

Table C.4: Bright Moon

English	Chinese (中文)
"When did we first have the bright moon?",	<p>míng yuè jǐ shí yǒu ?  明 月 几 时 有 ?  bright moon how many time have  when</p>
holding a wine glass, I asked the blue sky.	<p>bǎ jiǔ wèn qīng tiān 。  把 酒 问 青 天 。  grip alcohol ask blue sky  hold a wine glass blue sky</p>
I wonder, in Heaven's imperial palace,	<p>bù zhī tiān shàng gōng qūe ,  不 知 天 上 宫 阙 ,  not know sky above palace palace  wonder if heaven imperial palace</p>
what year it is today.	<p>jīn xī shì hé nián 。  今 夕 是 何 年 。  present sunset is what year  today what year</p>
I desire to ride the wind to go back,	<p>wǒ yù chéng fēng guī qù ,  我 欲 乘 风 归 去 ,  I desire ride wind to go back to go  go back to</p>
but dread the magnificent jade palace,	<p>yòu kǒng qióng lóu yù yǔ ,  又 恐 琼 楼 玉 宇 ,  but dread jade building jade roof  splendid hall  magnificent jade palace</p>
that such a high place is too cold.	<p>gāo chù bù shēng hán 。  高 处 不 胜 寒 。  high place not competent cold  too</p>

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)
Rise and dance until making a pure shadow,	<p>qǐ wǔ nòng qīng yǐng , 起 舞 弄 清 影 , rise dance make pure shadow rise and dance pure shadow</p>
in what seems like the world of man!	<p>hé sì zài rén jiān ! 何 似 在 人 间 ! what similar at man between similar to world of man</p>
Arching over the bright red pavillion,	<p>zhuǎn zhū gé , 轉 朱 閣 , revolve bright red pavillion</p>
the moonlight hangs down on the beautiful door,	<p>dī qǐ hù , 低 綺 戶 , hang down beautiful door</p>
shining on the sleepless.	<p>zhào wú mián 。 照 無 眠 。 illuminate without sleep</p>
The moon should not have hate,	<p>bù yīng yǒu hèn , 不 應 有 恨 , not should have hate deserved</p>
so why when it is time to leave, is the moon so full and round?	<p>hé shì cháng xiàng bié shí yuán ? 何 事 長 向 別 時 圓 ? what affairs long hitherto leave time round why always time to leave</p>
People have sorrow, joy, separation, togetherness;	<p>rén yǒu bēi huan lí hé , 人 有 悲 歡 離 合 , people have sadness cheerful apart together</p>
the moon has times of being overcast, clear, full and round, diminished,	<p>yuè yǒu yīn qīng yuán quē , 月 有 陰 晴 圓 缺 , moon have overcast clear round deficient</p>
since ancient times, these things have been difficult to reconcile.	<p>cǐ shì gǔ nán quán 。 此 事 古 難 全 。 these affairs ancient difficult completely</p>

continued on the next page ...



...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)
If only people can remain together for a long time,	<p>dàn yuàn rén cháng jiǔ , 但 願 人 長 久 , 但 愿 人 长 久 ,</p> <p>but hope people long time if only long time</p>
or travel a thousand miles to share life with a lovely lady.	<p>qiān lǐ gòng chán jiān 。 千 里 共 嬋 娟 。 千 里 共 婵 娟 。</p> <p>thousand li share graceful beautiful long distance lovely</p>

midi file available at: <http://www.hamienet.com/midi15005.html>



## C.5 Amazing Grace

Table C.5: Amazing Grace

English	Chinese (中文)											
Amazing grace, how sweet the sound	qí 奇 奇	yì 異 異	eē 恩 恩	diǎn 典 典	hé 何 何	děng 等 等	gān 甘 甘	tián 甜 甜				
	unusual	different	favor	law	how	same as	sweet	sweet				
	unusual		grace		how		sweet					
that saved a wretch like me!	wǒ 我 我	zuì 罪 罪	yǐ 已 已	dé 得 得	shè 赦 赦	miǎn 免 免						
	I	guilt	already	obtain	pardon	to exempt						
				to pardon								
I once was lost, but now am found,	qián 前 前	wǒ 我 我	shī 失 失	sàng 喪 喪	jīn 今 今	bèi 被 被	xún 尋 尋	huí 回 回				
	before	I	to lose	to lose	now	have been	to search	to go back to				
			lost				found					
Was blind, but now I see.	xiā 瞎 瞎	yǎn 眼 眼	jīn 今 今	dé 得 得	kàn 看 看	jiàn 見 見						
	blind	eye	now	to obtain	to look at	to see						
				to see								
'Twas grace that taught my heart to fear,	rú 如 如	cǐ 此 此	eē 恩 恩	diǎn 典 典	shǐ 使 使	wǒ 我 我	jìng 敬 敬	wèi 畏 畏				
	as this		favor	law	to make	I	to reverence	to fear				
	'twas		grace				to hold in awe					
And grace my fears relieved;	shǐ 使 使	wǒ 我 我	xīn 心 心	dé 得 得	ān 安 安	wèi 慰 慰						
	to make	my	heart	to obtain	peace	to console						
				comfort								
How precious did that grace appear, The hour I first believed!	chū 初 初	xiàn 信 信	zhī 之 之	shí 時 時	jì 既 既	méng 蒙 蒙	eē 恩 恩	huí 惠 惠	zhēn 真 真	shì 是 是	hé 何 何	děng 等 等
	first	to believe	of	time	as	to receive	grace	favor	true	that	how	same as
							mercy; grace				how	
	bǎo 寶 寶	guì 貴 貴										
	treasure	expensive										
	precious											

English lyrics available at [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Amazing\\_grace](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Amazing_grace)



## C.6 You are my flower

nǐ shì wǒ de huā duǒ	by wǔ bǎi
你 是 我 的 花 朵	伍 佰
你 是 我 的 花 朵	伍 佰
you are I 's flower (quantifier)	army hundred
my flower	

Table C.6: You are my Flower

English	Chinese (中文)
Take heed to your footsteps and see everything clearly.	liú xīn jiǎo bù kàn dé qīng chǔ 留 心 脚 步 看 得 清 楚 留 心 脚 步 看 得 清 楚 to remain heart foot step to see to the extent that pure clear to take heed footprint clear
There are many dubious voices	yǒu hěnn duō kě yí de yīn sù 有 很 多 可 疑 的 因 素 有 很 多 可 疑 的 因 素 have very many to approve doubt 's cause plain suspicious a cause
calling out to you, making you confused.	hū hǎn nǐ ràng nǐ hú tú 呼 喊 你 让 你 糊 涂 呼 喊 你 让 你 糊 涂 to exhale to shout you to cause you glue to smear to call out confused
Test the extent of my love.	kǎo yàn wǒ ài de chéng dù 考 验 我 爱 的 程 度 考 验 我 爱 的 程 度 to give an exam to examine I love 's journey degree to test my love extent
The elevator of a tall building in a dark neon-lit place	gāo lóu diàn tī ní hóng shēn chù 高 楼 电 梯 霓 虹 深 处 高 楼 电 梯 霓 虹 深 处 tall building electric ladder secondary rainbow rainbow profound a place elevator neon light
dances in a crowd of people awkwardly,	wǔ dòng zài rén qún hěn jū shù 舞 动 在 人 群 很 拘 束 舞 动 在 人 群 很 拘 束 to dance to move at person crowd very to detain to bind to dance crowd awkward

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)
pulling me so that I don't float away.	<p>lā zhe wǒ bú yào piāo zǒu 拉 著 我 不 要 飄 走 拉 着 我 不 要 飄 走</p> <p>to pull I not want to float to walk to float away</p>
I am standing behind you, shielding you from the wind.	<p>wǒ zài nǐ bèi hòu dǎng fēng 我 在 你 背 後 擋 風 我 在 你 背 后 挡 风</p> <p>I at you back behind to block wind behind</p>
Oh you are my flower!	<p>o nǐ shì wǒ de huā duǒ 喔 你 是 我 的 花 朵 喔 你 是 我 的 花 朵</p> <p>(a sound) you are I 's flower (quantifier) my flower</p>
I want to have you rooted in my heart of hearts.	<p>wǒ yào yǒng yǒu nǐ chā zài wǒ xīn wō 我 要 擁 有 你 插 在 我 心 窩 我 要 拥 有 你 插 在 我 心 窩</p> <p>I want to embrace to have you to stick into at my heart nest to have heart of hearts</p>
I want to protect you, giving you a smooth road free of obstacles.	<p>wǒ yào bǎo hù nǐ yī lù dōu chàng tōng 我 要 保 護 你 一 路 都 暢 通 我 要 保 护 你 一 路 都 畅 通</p> <p>I want to keep to defend you one path all unobstructed through to protect all the way freely flowing</p>
Even if the path by your side is littered with stones,	<p>jiù suàn nǐ shēn biān hěn duō xiǎo shí tóu 就 算 你 身 邊 很 多 小 石 頭 就 算 你 身 边 很 多 小 石 头</p> <p>(aux. verb) to calculate you body side very many small stone head even if side stones</p>
I want to sleeplessly and endlessly love you.	<p>wǒ yào ài zhe nǐ bù mián yě bù xiū 我 要 愛 著 你 不 眠 也 不 休 我 要 爱 着 你 不 眠 也 不 休</p> <p>I want love you not sleep also not rest sleepless endlessly</p>
No matter if your heart is full of so much confusion,	<p>bù guǎn nǐ xīn chōng mǎn duō shǎo kùn hù 不 管 你 心 充 滿 多 少 困 惑 不 管 你 心 充 满 多 少 困 惑</p> <p>not tube you heart full full many few distressed bewildered no matter your heart full so many bewildered</p>

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)
I am totally unable to release myself from loving you.	<p>wǒ jué duì bú huì duì ài fàng sōng  我 絕 對 不 會 對 愛 放 鬆  我 绝 对 不 会 对 爱 放 松</p> <p>I extremely correct not able for love to set free to loosen  absolutely unable to release</p>
You are the source of all the happiness that I possess.	<p>nǐ shì wǒ suǒ yǒu kuài lè yuán tóu  你 是 我 所 有 快 樂 源 頭  你 是 我 所 有 快 乐 源 头</p> <p>you are I that which to have quick joyous fountainhead head  possess happiness fountainhead</p>
You and I together can reach the paradise of joy.	<p>wǒ hàn nǐ jiāng huì dào dá nà kāi xīn lè yuán  我 和 你 將 會 到 達 那 開 心 樂 園  我 和 你 将 会 到 达 那 开 心 乐 园</p> <p>I and you will able to reach to reach that to open heart joyous garden  to arrive at joyful paradise</p>

# APPENDIX D

## NAMES

Chinese names typically consist of three characters. The first character is the family name. The next two characters are the given name. To the right is an example using actor “Jackie Chan's” Chinese name:

Chén	gǎng	shēng
陳	港	生
陈	港	生
to lay out	a port	to give birth

## D.1 Family Names

A list of some Chinese surnames follows.<sup>1</sup> For pairs of characters, the one on the left is *traditional*, and the one on the right is *simplified*.

Common family names							
白	白	Bái	white	蔡	蔡	Cài	a large turtle
曹	曹	Cáo	(a plural particle)	常	常	Cháng	common; normal
陳	陈	Chén	to arrange	埕	埕	Chéng	
催	催	Cūi	high and steep	戴	戴	Dài	to wear
鄧	邓	Dèng		丁	丁	Dīng	
董	董	Dǒng	to oversee	杜	杜	Dù	to plug
段	段	Duàn	a section	范	范	Fàn	bee
方	方	Fāng	square	馮	冯	Féng	
傅	傅	Fù	a teacher	高	高	Gāo	high; tall
龔	龚	Gōng	reverential	顧	顾	Gù	to turn around and look
郭	郭	Gūo	town	韓	韩	Hán	fence
郝	郝	Hǎo	(an ancient place)	何	何	Hé	
賀	贺	Hè	to congratulate	洪	洪	Hóng	a flood
侯	侯	Hóu	marquis	胡	胡	Hú	to blunder
黃	黄	Huáng	yellow	賈	贾	Jiǎ	(“gǔ”=merchant)
姜	姜	Jiāng	ginger	江	江	Jiāng	river

<sup>1</sup>Reference: [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_common\\_Chinese\\_surnames](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_common_Chinese_surnames)

蔣	蒋	Jiǎng		金	金	Jīn	gold
康	康	Kāng	health	孔	孔	Kǒng	hole
賴	赖	Lài	to rely on	雷	雷	Léi	thunder
李	李	Lǐ	plums	梁	梁	Liáng	bridge
廖	廖	Liào		林	林	Lín	forest
劉	刘	Liú	to kill	龍	龙	Lóng	dragon
盧	卢	Lú	black	羅	罗	Lúo	thin light silk
陸	陆	Lù	land	呂	吕	Lǚ	
馬	马	Mǎ	horse	毛	毛	Máo	hair
孟	孟	Mèng	eldest child	牛	牛	Niú	ox
潘	潘	Pān	water	彭	彭	Péng	
錢	钱	Qián	money	秦	秦	Qín	Qin Dynasty
邱	邱	Qiū	hill	任	任	Rén	
邵	邵	Shào		沈	沈	Shěn	
史	史	Shǐ	history	施	施	Shī	to carry out
石	石	Shí	rocks	宋	宋	Sòng	
蘇	苏	Sū		孫	孙	Sūn	grandchild; descendent
譚	谭	Tán	to talk	唐	唐	Táng	the Tang Dynasty
田	田	Tián	agricultural land	萬	万	Wàn	ten thousand
汪	汪	Wāng	pool of water	王	王	Wáng	king
韋	韦	Wéi	tanned leather	魏	魏	Wèi	lofty; stately
吳	吴	Wú		武	武	Wǔ	military
夏	夏	Xià	summer	謝	谢	Xiè	to thank
蕭	萧	Xiāo	oxtail southern wood; respectful	熊	熊	Xióng	bear
徐	徐	Xú	slowly; gently; calmly	許	许	Xǔ	
薛	薛	Xūe	(a kind of marsh grass)	姚	姚	Yáo	handsome
嚴	严	Yán	stern; strict	揚	扬	Yáng	to raise
姚	姚	Yáo	handsome	葉	叶	Yè	leaf
尹	尹	Yǐn	to govern	余	余	Yú	I
袁	袁	Yúan	the graceful look of a flowing robe	曾	曾	Zēng	(a 4th generation relationship)
張	张	Zhāng	to spread	趙	赵	Zhào	(an ancient feudal state)
周	周	Zhōu	Zhou Dynasty	鄭	郑	Zhèng	solemn
鍾	钟	Zhōng	bell	鄒	邹	Zōu	
朱	朱	Zhū	bright red				

## Not so common family names

班	班	Bān	a grade	包	包	Bāo	to wrap
鮑	鲍	Bào	abalone	貝	贝	Bèi	shells
畢	毕	Bì	to complete	卜	卜	Bǔ	to divine
成	成	Chéng	completed; accomplished	遲	迟	Chí	late
仇	仇	Chóu	enemy	楚	楚	Chǔ	
狄	狄	Dí		督	督	Dū	to oversee
鐸	铎	Dúo	a large bell	樊	樊	Fán	bird cage
房	房	Fáng	house	斐	斐	Fěi	elegant; beautiful
費	费	Fèi	expedition	馮	冯	Féng	
甘	甘	Gān	delicious	戈	戈	Gē	spear; lance



葛	葛	Gě		辜	辜	Gū	sin; crime
古	古	Gǔ	ancient	官	官	Gūan	government official
花	花	Huā	flower	季	季	Jì	season
簡	簡	Jiǎn	brief	焦	焦	Jiāo	scorched
景	景	Jǐng	scenery	柯	柯	Kē	tall evergreen tree
寇	寇	Kòu	bandits	匡	匡	Kuāng	to correct
黎	黎	Lí	numerous	栗	栗	Lì	chestnut tree
連	连	Lián	to connect	柳	柳	Liǔ	willow tree
魯	鲁	Lǔ	dull	陸	陆	Lù	land
路	路	Lù	road	麥	麦	Mài	wheat; barley; oats
眉	眉	Méi	eyebrows	梅	梅	Méi	prunes
門	门	Mén	door	苗	苗	Miáo	a sprout
莫	莫	Mò	not	穆	穆	Mù	peaceful; serene
納	纳	Nà	to receive	南	南	Nán	south
年	年	Nián	year	聶	聂	Niè	
裴	裴	Péi	the look of a flowing gown	皮	皮	Pí	skin; fur
溥	溥	Pǔ	great; wide; vast	齊	齐	Qí	equal
泉	泉	Quán	spring; fountain	阮	阮	Rǔan	(ancient musical instrument)
單	单	Shàn		水	水	Shuǐ	water
肅	肃	Sù	respectful; majestic	臺	台	Tái	a lookout; an observatory
太	太	Tài	very big	湯	汤	Tāng	hot water; soup
陶	陶	Táo	pottery	童	童	Tóng	child
宛	宛	Wǎn	crooked	尾	尾	Wěi	tail
魏	魏	Wèi	lofty; stately; magnificent	溫	温	Wēn	warm
聞	闻	Wén	to hear	翁	翁	Wēng	father
巫	巫	Wū	witch; wizard	烏	乌	Wū	crow; raven
向	向	Xiàng	to face	須	须	Xū	must
宣	宣	Xūan	to announce	玄	玄	Xúan	far and obscure
晏	晏	Yàn	clear	楊	杨	Yáng	poplar
伊	伊	Yī	he; she	宜	宜	Yí	right; fitting
易	易	Yì	to exchange	英	英	Yīng	a flower
尤	尤	Yóu	to feel bitter	猶	犹	Yóu	similar to
玉	玉	Yù	precious stone	郁	郁	Yù	colorfully ornamented
喻	喻	Yù	parable; to explain	越	越	Yüe	to go beyond
樂	乐	Yüe	music	宰	宰	Zǎi	to preside
曾	曾	Zēng	3 generation difference	詹	詹	Zhān	verbosity
湛	湛	Zhàn	deep; profound	戰	战	Zhàn	war
章	章	Zhāng	a piece of writing	芝	芝	Zhī	
智	智	Zhì	capable; wisdom	摯	挚	Zhì	sincere
莊	庄	Zhūang	solemn	宗	宗	Zōng	ancestor
祖	祖	Zǔ	grandfather; grandmother				

## Rare family names

邸	邸	Dǐ	residence of a high official	頽	頽	Tuí	to crumble
洗	洗	Xiǎn		荀	荀	Xún	



義	义	Yì	justice	於	于	Yú	in
禹	禹	Yǔ		於	于	Zhā	
湖	湖	Hú	lake	據	据	Jù	proof
可	可	Kě	to be able to	臨	临	Liń	to look down from above
茅	茅	Máo	couch grass	猛	猛	Měng	bold; fierce

## D.2 Characters for male names

Common characters for male names							
澳	澳	ào	deep waters	奧	奥	ào	mysterious; profound
保	保	bǎo	to guard	備	备	bèi	completeness
炳	炳	bǐng	bright; luminous	伯	伯	bó	a count (nobility)
博	博	bó	extensive; abundant	財	财	cái	wealth
燦	灿	càn	bright and brilliant	闡	阐	chǎn	to make clear
昌	昌	chāng	proper; good	暢	畅	chàng	smoothly; fluently
超	超	chāo	to exceed	晨	晨	chén	morning; daybreak
誠	诚	chéng	sincere; honest	矗	矗	chù	steep; lofty
川	川	chūan	river	達	达	dá	intelligent; understanding
道	道	dào	road; path	德	德	dé	virtue
登	登	dēng	to ascend; to climb	燈	灯	dēng	lamp; lantern
迪	迪	dí	to progress	頂	顶	dǐng	the top
鬥	斗	dòu	to struggle	渡	渡	dù	to cross
敦	敦	dūn	honest; to deepen	奮	奋	fèn	to rise in force
豐	丰	fēng	abundant	奉	奉	fèng	to receive with respect
福	福	fú	good fortune; a blessing	扶	扶	fú	to support
富	富	fù	wealthy	功	功	gōng	merit; achievement
谷	谷	gǔ	valley	固	固	gù	stable; sturdy
圭	圭	guī	(a jade tablet)	傀	傀	guī	great; wonderful
貴	贵	guì	high-placed	過	过	guò	to pass
捍	捍	hàn	to defend	皓	皓	hào	white and bright
篆	篆	háo	outstandingly intelligent	和	和	hé	harmony
宏	宏	hóng	magnificent	泓	泓	hóng	deep
鴻	鸿	hóng	swan	煥	焕	huàn	shining
虎	虎	hǔ	brave	暉	晖	hūi	radiant
火	火	huǒ	fire	繼	继	jì	to carry on
堅	坚	jiān	strong and durable	佼	佼	jiǎo	charming
結	结	jiē	tough	杰	杰	jié	outstanding
捷	捷	jié	swift	傑	杰	jié	remarkable
介	介	jiè	upright	勁	劲	jìn	vigor
進	进	jìn	to advance	晉	晋	jìn	to advance
井	井	jiǐng	a well	靖	靖	jìng	peaceful
炯	炯	jiǒng	brightness	凱	凯	kǎi	peace
康	康	kāng	healthy	慷	慷	kāng	unselfish

克	克	kè	to overcome
昆	昆	kūn	elder brother
瑯	瑯	láng	pure and white
理	理	lǐ	reason; logic
良	良	liáng	fine; desirable
嶙	嶙	lín	rugged
諒	諒	liàng	honest
磷	磷	lín	water flowing between stones
流	流	liú	to flow; mobile
民	民	mín	the people
睦	睦	mù	friendly; to befriend
滿	滿	mǎn	full; plentiful
茂	茂	mào	exuberant
渺	渺	miǎo	endlessly vast
明	明	míng	bright; brilliant
耐	耐	nài	to endure
忤	忤	pēng	eager
杞	杞	qǐ	a species of willow
勤	勤	qín	diligent; industrious
遒	遒	qiú	strong; vigorous
仁	仁	rén	benevolence; kindness
融	融	róng	glowing
塞	塞	sài	to compete
山	山	shān	mountain
贍	贍	shàn	to provide
慎	慎	shèn	cautious; prudent
守	守	shǒu	to protect
碩	碩	shuò	great; large
添	添	tiān	to increase
潭	潭	tán	deep water; profound
威	威	wēi	dignity; authority; awe
維	維	wéi	to hold fast
梧	梧	wú	a support
晤	晤	wù	to meet; enlightened; wise
皙	皙	xī	fair, white
俠	俠	xiá	chivalry
黠	黠	xiá	smart; clever
賢	賢	xián	capable; versatile
祥	祥	xiáng	auspicious
新	新	xīn	new; fresh
興	興	xīng	cheerful; happy
勳	勳	xūn	merits; honors
巖	巖	yán	a rock
儼	儼	yǎn	majestic; respectable
杳	杳	yǎo	deep and expansive

客	客	kè	guest
琅	琅	láng	clean and white
禮	禮	lǐ	courtesy
力	力	lì	strength
烈	烈	liè	fiery
亮	亮	liàng	bright
霖	霖	lín	continuous heavy rain
令	令	lìng	excellent
隆	隆	lóng	prosperous; abundant
牧	牧	mù	to shepherd
邁	邁	mài	to surpass
茫	茫	máng	vast; boundless
萌	萌	méng	to bud; to shoot forth
淼	淼	miǎo	extensive; vast
慕	慕	mù	to long for; to adore
沛	沛	pèi	abundance
祈	祈	qí	to pray
謙	謙	qiān	humble
清	清	qīng	pure; virtuous
饒	饒	ráo	abundant
榮	榮	róng	glory; honor
睿	睿	rùi	wise and clever
森	森	sēn	luxuriant vegetation
善	善	shàn	good; virtuous
盛	盛	shèng	abundant; rich
士	士	shì	scholar
舒	舒	shū	to unfold
嵩	嵩	sōng	mountain song
遂	遂	sù	to satisfy; to fulfill
旺	旺	wàng	prosperous
惟	惟	wéi	to think; to meditate
穩	穩	wěn	stable; steady
悟	悟	wù	to become aware of; to realize
悉	悉	xī	to know
溪	溪	xī	mountain stream
峽	峽	xiá	a gorge
閒	閒	xián	quiet; calm
現	現	xiàn	to emerge
協	協	xié	to agree; to help
興	興	xīng	to rise; to thrive
旭	旭	xù	radiance of daybreak
涯	涯	yá	water's edge
嚴	嚴	yán	beautiful
決	決	yǎng	great; profound
屹	屹	yì	to rise high

奕	奕	yì	great; grand; abundant	益	益	yì	to increase
軼	軼	yì	to excel	肄	肄	yì	to study; to toil
毅	毅	yì	firm; endurance; fortitude	藝	藝	yì	art; skill
翼	翼	yì	wings; to help	殷	殷	yīn	flourishing
蔭	蔭	yìn	shade	廕	廕	yìn	to shelter
熒	熒	yíng	candle light	贏	贏	yíng	to win
雍	雍	yōng	harmony; peaceful	勇	勇	yǒng	courageous; fearless
優	優	yōu	excellent; abundant	域	域	yù	frontier
裕	裕	yù	abundance; generous	譽	譽	yù	fame; honor
豫	豫	yù	comfort; to travel	援	援	yúan	to lead; to rescue
嶽	嶽	yùe	a high mountain	贊	贊	zàn	to assist; to support
增	增	zēng	to increase	嶄	嶄	zhǎn	towering
璋	璋	zhāng	an ancient jade ornament	朝	朝	zhāo	morning
哲	哲	zhé	a thinker; wise	崢	崢	zhēng	lofty; outstanding
拯	拯	zhěng	to save; to deliver	正	正	zhèng	proper
陟	陟	zhì	to ascend	忠	忠	zhōng	faithful; devoted
助	助	zhù	to help				

### Not commonly used characters for male names

瀑	瀑	bào	sudden pouring rain	懂	懂	dǒng	to understand
敢	敢	gǎn	to dare; bold	趕	趕	gǎn	to pursue
好	好	hǎo	good	駕	駕	jià	to excel
肩	肩	jiān	to sustain	澗	澗	jiàn	mountain stream
匠	匠	jiàng	craftsman	禁	禁	jīn	to endure
勁	勁	jìng	powerful	剋	剋	kè	to overcome
懇	懇	kěn	sincere	款	款	kǔan	sincerity
闊	闊	kùo	wealthy	擴	擴	kùo	to expand
倆	倆	liǎng	craft; ability	瀏	瀏	liú	the appearance of a clear stream

## D.3 Characters for female names

### Common characters for female names

愛	爱	ài	to love	芭	芭	bā	a fragrant plant
蓓	蓓	bèi	flower bud	嬋	嬋	chán	graceful; ladylike
春	春	chūn	spring	淳	淳	chún	pure; clean; simple
慈	慈	cí	kind; loving	黛	黛	dài	a beauty
旦	旦	dàn	daybreak	朵	朵	dúo	flower
婀	婀	ē	graceful; elegant	娥	娥	é	good; beautiful
芳	芳	fāng	fragrant; virtuous	菲	菲	fēi	fragrant
芬	芬	fēn	fragrance; perfume	鳳	凤	fèng	male phoenix
馥	馥	fù	fragrant fragrance	瑰	瑰	guī	fabulous; a kind of jasper
蕙	蕙	huì	fragrant orchid	薈	薈	huì	luxuriant growth
慧	慧	huì	wise	姬	姬	jī	beautiful lady
佳	佳	jiā	beautiful	嬌	嬌	jiāo	delicate
潔	洁	jié	pure	菁	菁	jiāng	the flower of the leek

靜	静	jiǐng	tranquility	淨	净	jiǐng	pure
娟	娟	jūan	graceful	嵐	岚	lán	mountain vapor
蘭	兰	lán	orchid	莉	莉	lì	white jasmine
麗	丽	lì	beautiful	蓮	莲	lián	lotus
戀	恋	liàn	to be in love	玲	玲	líng	tinklings of jade
綾	绫	líng	very fine silk cloth	曼	曼	màn	delicately beautiful; graceful
玫	玫	méi	rose	美	美	měi	beautiful
蜜	蜜	mì	honey	妙	妙	miào	wonderful; intriguing; ingenious
念	念	niàn	to miss; to long for	嫵	妩	niǎo	delicate; graceful
寧	宁	níng	peace; serenity	綺	绮	qǐ	beautiful; resplendent
情	情	qíng	feelings; love	晴	晴	qíng	fine; fair
瓊	琼	qióng	fine jade	柔	柔	róu	soft and tender
珊	珊	shān	tinkling of jade	韶	韶	sháo	a form of music; beautiful, harmonious
絲	丝	sī	silk	素	素	sù	pure white silk
曇	昙	tán	clouds	甜	甜	tián	sweet; agreeable
恬	恬	tián	quiet; undisturbed	窈	窈	tiǎo	slender; charming
婉	婉	wǎn	amiable; pleasant	舞	舞	wǔ	to dance
絃	弦	xián	the string of a musical instrument	嫻	娴	xián	refined; gracious
香	香	xiāng	sweet-smelling	心	心	xiān	heart
欣	欣	xiān	glad	欣	欣	xiān	glad; joyful
曉	晓	xiǎo	daybreak; dawn	秀	秀	xiù	brilliant; beautiful; graceful
絢	绚	xuàn	bright and brilliant	雪	雪	xuě	snow
雅	雅	yǎ	refined; polished	嫵	妩	yān	captivating; fascinating
雁	雁	yàn	wild goose	瑤	瑶	yáo	precious jade
樂	乐	yào	to love	怡	怡	yí	harmony; jubilation
旖	旖	yǐ	romantic; tender	音	音	yīn	sound; musical note
瑛	瑛	yīng	glitter of jade	櫻	樱	yīng	cherry; cherry blossoms
詠	咏	yǒng	to sing; to hum	瑜	瑜	yú	perfect gem
愉	愉	yú	happy; joyful	月	月	yuè	the moon
韻	韵	yùn	rhymes	貞	贞	zhēn	chastity; pure
珍	珍	zhēn	precious; rare	珠	珠	zhū	pearl
Not often used characters for female names							
緋	绯	fēi	scarlet; crimson	邵	邵	shào	to encourage; graceful
簫	箫	yùe	a kind of flute				

## D.4 Characters for either male or female names

Characters for either male or female names							
藹	蔼	ǎi	exuberant; amiable	安	安	ān	peaceful
本	本	běn	root; source	才	才	cái	gifted person
恩	恩	ēn	grace; kindness	梵	梵	fàn	clean and pure
飛	飞	fēi	to fly	霏	霏	fēi	falling of snow and rain
翡	翡	fěi	kingfisher; emerald	丰	丰	fēng	good-looking
風	风	fēng	wind; breeze	佳	佳	jiā	excellent

錦	锦	jǐn	glorious	樂	乐	lè	happy
夢	梦	mèng	dream	瑞	瑞	rùi	lucky
詩	诗	shī	poetry	思	思	sī	to think
琬	琬	wǎn	(a kind of jade tablet)	望	望	wàng	to watch; to hope
文	文	wén	a composition; culture	蓊	蓊	wěng	flourishing; lush
喜	喜	xǐ	a joyful thing	禧	禧	xǐ	happiness; blessings
夏	夏	xià	summer	相	相	xiàng	to examine; to help
行	行	xíng	to walk	幸	幸	xìng	well-being
續	续	xù	to continue; to renew	誼	谊	yì	friendship
穎	颖	yǐng	outstanding; remarkable	愉	愉	yú	happy; contented
雨	雨	yǔ	rain	照	照	zhào	to shine upon
甄	甄	zhēn	potter's wheel	佐	佐	zuǒ	to assist
妍	妍	yán	beautiful	耀	耀	yào	to shine; to dazzle
盈	盈	yíng	to fill	羽	羽	yǔ	feather; wing
知	知	zhī	knowledge				

## D.5 Famous names

It might be useful to see some examples of names of real people (past and present). <sup>2</sup>

Table D.5: Famous people

name	description
Féng      Gúo      zhāng 馮      國      璋 冯      国      璋 country    jade tablet	male, 1858–1919, army general and politician
Lí      Yúan      hóng 黎      元      洪 黎      元      洪 many    first    flood	male, 1864–1928, general and former president of Taiwan
Dùan      qí      rùi 段      祺      瑞 段      祺      瑞 lucky    auspicious	male, 1864–1936, army commander and provisional chief executive
Wèi      dào      míng 魏      道      明 魏      道      明 magnificent    road    bright	male, 1900–1978, governor of Taiwan province from 1947–1949
Yúan      shì      kǎi 袁      世      凱 袁      世      凱 generation    triumphant strains	male, 1859–1916, military official and politician

continued on the next page ...

<sup>2</sup>Reference: [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_Chinese\\_people](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_Chinese_people)

...continued from the previous page

name	description
<p>Yáng gù fēi 楊 貴 妃 杨 贵 妃</p> <p>poplar valued concubine</p>	female, 719–756, highest ranking imperial concubine
<p>Wáng zhāo jūn 王 昭 君 王 昭 君</p> <p>king clear monarch</p>	female, ~40B.C., One of the “Four Beauties” of ancient China
<p>Jiǎng tíng xī 蔣 廷 錫 蒋 廷 锡</p> <p>monarch's court tin</p>	male, 1669–1732 painter and encyclopedia editor
<p>liáng lǎng qiū 梁 朗 秋 梁 朗 秋</p> <p>roof beam bright autumn</p>	male, ~ 1900; poet and calligrapher
<p>Qí bái shí 齊 白 石 齐 白 石</p> <p>orderly white stone</p>	male, 1864–1957; painter
<p>Wáng xī zhī 王 羲 之 王 羲 之</p> <p>king (a legendary ruler) to arrive at</p>	male, 303–361; the “Sage of Calligraphy”
<p>Zhào mèng fǔ 趙 孟 頌 赵 孟 頌</p> <p>first month of a season to bow the head</p>	male, 1254–1322; prince, scholar, painter, and calligrapher
<p>Zhèng xiào xū 鄭 孝 胥 郑 孝 胥</p> <p>solemn dutiful together</p>	male, 1860–1938; statesman, diplomat, and calligrapher
<p>Chéng màn qīng 鄭 曼 青 郑 曼 青</p> <p>graceful blue</p>	male, 1902–1975; the “Master of Five Excellences”: Chinese medicine, Tai Chi Chuan, calligraphy, painting, and poetry
<p>Xiè tíng fēng 謝 霆 鋒 谢 霆 锋</p> <p>to thank sudden thunder cutting edge of a sword</p>	male, 1980– ; singer and actor
<p>Fàn bīng bīng 范 冰 冰 范 冰 冰</p> <p>ice ice</p>	female, 1981– ; actress

continued on the next page ...





...continued from the previous page

name	description
<p>Bó      ān      ní  柏      安      妮  柏      安      妮  cypress   peaceful   maid</p>	female; actress, English name “Ann Bridgewater”
<p>Lǐ      Xiǎo      lóng  李      小      龍  李      小      龍  plum tree   little   dragon</p>	male, 1940–1973, martial arts actor, English name, “Bruce Lee”
<p>Chén      gǎng      shēng  陳      港      生  陈      港      生  to lay out   a port   to give birth</p>	male, 1954– ; martial arts actor, English name “Jackie Chan”
<p>Zhōu      xīng      chí  周      星      馳  周      星      馳  star   to gallop</p>	male, 1962; actor, director, English name “Stephen Chow”
<p>Wú      yǔ      sēn  吳      宇      森  吴      宇      森  roof   luxuriant vegetation</p>	male, 1946– ; director, producer, English name “John Woo”
<p>Chén      huì      shān  陳      慧      珊  陈      慧      珊  to lay out   wisdom   tinkling of jade</p>	female, 1970– ; actress, English name “Flora Chan”
<p>Chén      huì      lín  陳      慧      琳  陈      慧      琳  to layout   wisdom   beautiful jade</p>	female, 1972– ; singer and actress, English name, “Kelly Chen”
<p>Dèng      lì      jūn  鄧      麗      君  邓      丽      君  beautiful   monarch</p>	female, 1953–1995; singer, English name “Teresa Teng”
<p>Chén      jǐng      rùn  陳      景      潤  陈      景      潤  a view   moist</p>	male, 1933–1996; mathematician



## D.6 Non-Chinese names

Chinese names are often carefully chosen for their meanings. However when translating non-Chinese names into Chinese, characters are chosen that “sound like” the name of the person in that person's mother tongue. Here are some examples of famous non-Chinese people:



name	description
<p> <span>Wéi</span> <span>dé</span> <span>Lái</span> <span>tè</span> <sup>3</sup>            韋 得 萊 特            韦 得 莱 特            soft leather to get wild weeds special            Wilbur Wright         </p>	<p>Wilbur Wright, one of the inventors of the modern airplane</p>
<p> <span>Aò</span> <span>wēi</span> <span>ěr</span> <span>Lái</span> <span>tè</span> <sup>4</sup>            奥 威 尔 莱 特            奥 威 尔 莱 特            abstruse might you wild weeds special            Wright         </p>	<p>Orville Wright, one of the inventors of the modern airplane</p>

## References:

-  葉德明, editor: *Far East Pinyin Chinese-English Dictionary*: 遠東拼音漢英辭典. Taipei: 遠東圖書公司 (yǎn dōng tú shū gōng sī) The Far East Book Company, Limited, 2000 (URL: <http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/957612462X>), ISBN 978-9576124624
-  *Dr. Eye for Windows 95/98/NT/2000/ME/XP*. Inventec Group (URL: <http://www.dreya.com>)

<sup>3</sup>  (2004) 萊特兄弟 *Wright Brothers*, page 1

<sup>4</sup>  (2004) 萊特兄弟 *Wright Brothers*, page 1



APPENDIX E

MATHEMATICS

E.1 Branches

Table E.1: Branches of mathematics

English	Chinese (中文)
algebra	<div><div>dài shù xué</div><div>代 數 學</div><div>代 数 学</div><div>substitute number learn</div><div>mathematics</div></div>
analysis	<div><div>fēn xī</div><div>分 析</div><div>分 析</div><div>divide divide</div><div>analyze</div></div>
arithmetic	<div><div>jì suàn</div><div>計 算</div><div>计 算</div><div>count calculate</div></div>
calculus	<div><div>wēi jī fēn</div><div>微 積 分</div><div>微 积 分</div><div>tiny accumulate divide</div><div>integral</div></div>
combinatorics	<div><div>zǔ hé shù xué</div><div>組 合 數 學</div><div>组 合 数 学</div><div>organize close number learn</div><div>combination mathematics</div></div>

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)				
complex analysis	fù 複 复 repeat	biàn 變 变 become different	shù 數 数 number	jī 積 积 accumulate	fēn 分 分 divide
ordinary differential equations	cháng 常 常 ordinary	wēi 微 微 tiny	fēn 分 分 divide	fāng 方 方 square	chéng 程 程 rules
discrete mathematics	lí 離 离 leave	sàn 散 散 lose	shù 數 数 number	xué 學 学 learn	
functional analysis	fàn 泛 泛 float	hán 函 函 letter	fēn 分 分 divide	xī 析 析 divide	
geometry	jǐ 幾 几 how many	hé 何 何 study	xué 學 学 study		
graph theory	tú 圖 图 drawing	lùn 論 论 theory			
linear algebra	xiàn 線 线 thread	xìng 性 性 nature	dài 代 代 substitute	shù 數 数 number	xué 學 学 learn
logic	tūi 推 推 push	lǐ 理 理 reason			
numerical analysis	shù 數 数 number	zhí 值 值 value	fēn 分 分 divide	xī 析 析 divide	

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)
number theory	shù lùn 數 論 数 论 number theory
partial differential equations	piān wēi fēn fāng chéng 偏 微 分 方 程 偏 微 分 方 程 slanting tiny divide square rules differential equation
probability	jī lǜ 機 率 机 率 machine rate
real analysis	shí biàn hán shù lùn 實 變 函 數 論 实 变 函 数 论 real become letter number theory function
statistics	tǒng jì xué 統 計 學 统 计 学 system count study compile statistics
topology	tuò pū xué 拓 撲 學 拓 扑 学 open beat study
trigonometry	sān jiǎo hán shù 三 角 函 數 三 角 函 数 three angle letter number triangle function

## E.2 Arithmetic

Table E.2: Arithmetic



English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
add	jiā 加 加 add	addition	jiā fǎ 加 法 加 法 add law

continued on the next page ...

...continued from the previous page

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
subtract	jǎn 減 減 subtract	subtraction	jǎn fǎ 減 法 減 法 subtract law
multiply	chéng 乘 乘 multiply	multiplication	chéng fǎ 乘 法 乘 法 multiply law
divide	chú 除 除 divide	division	chú fǎ 除 法 除 法 divide law
equal	děng yú 等 於 等 于 rank at	altogether	gòng 共 共

## E.3 Sets

-  The most fundamental structures are
  - ① *sets*: collections of objects
  - ② *relations*: relationships between sets
-  Fundamental relations:







relations	 <i>functions</i> :	$f : X \rightarrow Y$
	 <i>logic operators</i> :	$\vee, \wedge, \neg : \{1, 0\}^2 \rightarrow \{1, 0\}$
	 <i>equivalence relations</i> :	$\equiv$
	 <i>order relations</i> :	$R$
	 <i>set inclusion relations</i> :	$\subseteq, \supseteq, =, \subsetneq, \supsetneq$
	 <i>set operations</i> :	$\cup, \cap, \setminus, \Delta$

Table E.3: Sets

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
set	jí hé 集 合 集 合 gather combine set	relation	guān xì 關 係 關 系 close to bind relation

## E.4 Spaces

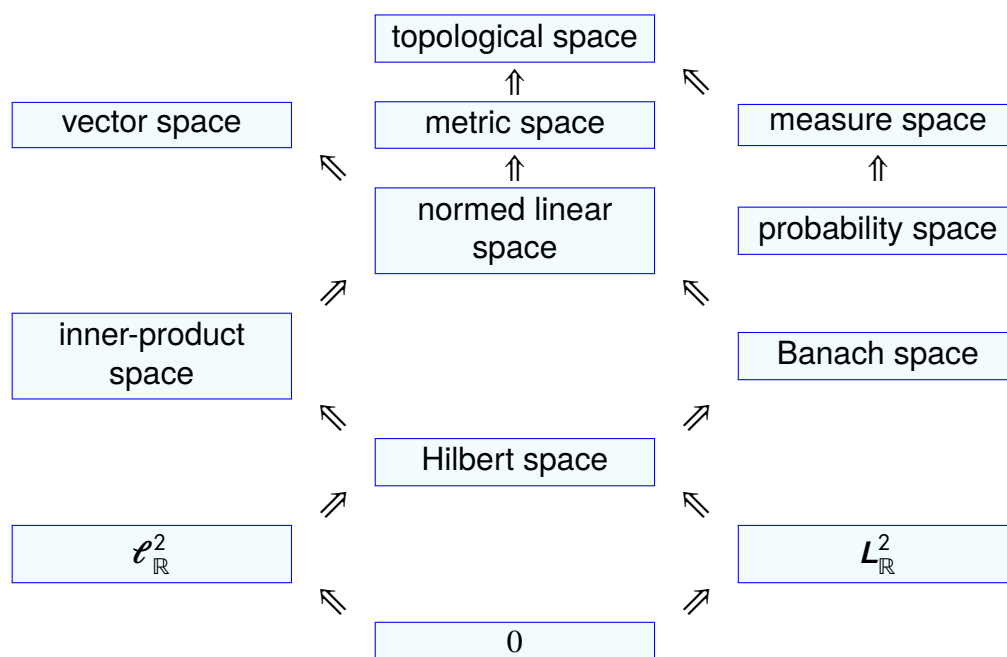


Figure E.1: Common abstract spaces

Table E.4: Topological spaces

English	Chinese (中文)			
inner-product space	nèi 内	jī 积	kōng 空	jiān 间
	inside accumulate inner-product		empty between space	
topological space	tùo 拓	pū 扑	kōng 空	jiān 间
	open up to beat topology		empty between space	

## E.5 Relations

1

A relation  $\leq$  is an **partial ordering relation** on  $X$  if

- |  |                         |                 |                          |
|--|-------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| 1. $x \leq x$                                  | $\forall x \in X$       | (reflexive)     | and<br>and<br>] preorder |
| 2. $x \leq y$ and $y \leq z \implies x \leq z$ | $\forall x, y, z \in X$ | (transitive)    |                          |
| 3. $x \leq y$ and $y \leq x \implies x = y$    | $\forall x, y \in X$    | (antisymmetric) |                          |

An **partially ordered set** is the pair  $(X, \leq)$ .

If  $x \leq y$  or  $y \leq x$ , then we say that  $x$  and  $y$  are **comparable**; otherwise, they are **incomparable** which is denoted as  $x \parallel y$ .

<sup>1</sup> [MacLane and Birkhoff \(1999\): Algebra](#), page 470

[Halmos \(1960\): Naive Set Theory](#), page 54

[Kuratowski \(1921\): Fundamenta Mathematicae 2 \[1921\]](#) page 164

Table E.5: Types of relations

English	Chinese (中文)
partial order relation	<p>piān      xù      guān      xì</p> <p>偏      序      關      係</p> <p>偏      序      關      系</p> <p>slanting order      to close to tie</p> <p>partial order      relation</p>

Table E.6: Relation properties

English	Chinese (中文)	English	Chinese (中文)
irreflexive	<p>zì      fǎn      xìng</p> <p>自      反      性</p> <p>自      反      性</p> <p>self opposite property</p> <p>reflexive</p>	reflexive	<p>zì      fǎn      xìng</p> <p>自      反      性</p> <p>自      反      性</p> <p>self opposite property</p> <p>reflexive</p>
transitive	<p>chuán      dì      xìng</p> <p>傳      遞      性</p> <p>传      递      性</p> <p>pass pass over property</p> <p>transitive</p>		
symmetric	<p>dùì      chèn</p> <p>對      稱</p> <p>对      称</p> <p>facing a weighing machine</p> <p>symmetric</p> <p>xìng</p> <p>性</p> <p>性</p> <p>property</p>	antisymmetric	<p>fǎn</p> <p>反</p> <p>反</p> <p>contrary</p> <p>dùì      chèn</p> <p>對      稱</p> <p>对      称</p> <p>facing a weighing machine</p> <p>symmetric</p> <p>xìng</p> <p>性</p> <p>性</p> <p>property</p>



# APPENDIX F

## FONT INFORMATION

### F.1 Typesetting engine

This text was typeset using Xe<sub>Λ</sub>TeX, which is part of the T<sub>E</sub>Xfamily of typesetting engines, which is arguably the greatest development since the Gutenberg Press. Graphics were rendered using the *pstricks* and related packages, and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X graphics support.

```
1 \usepackage{etex} % deal with counter problem
2 \usepackage{xifthen} % if then else support, includes \cnttest
3 \usepackage{calc} % calculation
4 \usepackage{array} % new tabular and array support, \newcolumntype
5 \usepackage{longtable} % tabular with page breaks
6 \usepackage{xcolor} % color support
7 \usepackage{graphicx} %
8 \usepackage{fancyhdr} % headers
9 \usepackage[Glenn]{fncychap} % fancy chapter headings: Sonny, Lenny, Glenn, Conny, Rejne, Bjarne
10 \usepackage{url} % url support: \url{} \path{}
11 \usepackage{index} % multiple index support
12 \usepackage{fancybox} % shadow, oval, and double boxes
13 \usepackage[multiple]{footmisc} % footnote support
14 \usepackage{fancyvrb} % fancy verbatim -- supports verbatim in footnotes plus more
15 \usepackage{nextpage} % \cleartooddpage, \cleartoevenpage
16 \usepackage{multicol} % multiple column support
17 \usepackage{colortbl} % color in tables
18 %\usepackage{xetex-pstricks} % pstricks help for XeLaTeX and XeTeX
19 \usepackage{pst-node} % psmatrix
20 \usepackage[tiling]{pst-fill} % pst fill package
21 \usepackage{pst-plot} % ps plots
22 \usepackage{multido} % loop support for ps diagrams
23 \usepackage{nccrules} % dashed patterns
24 \usepackage{pstricks} % graphics support
25 \usepackage{pstricks-add} % fixe and addons for pstricks
26 \usepackage{pst-grad} % gradients
27 \usepackage{geometry} %
28 \usepackage{hyperref} % hyperlinks in text
29 \usepackage{prettyref} % references with prefixes
30 \usepackage{listings} % source code listing support
```

## F.2 Latin fonts

The main font for this document is *Heros*—a *sans-serif* font similar to Helvetica. *Heros* is from the *T<sub>E</sub>X-Gyre Project* and included in the T<sub>E</sub>XLive distribution.

```

1 \setmainfont[
2   Extension      = { .otf },
3   UprightFont    = { *-regular },
4   BoldFont       = { *-bold },
5   ItalicFont     = { *-italic },
6   BoldItalicFont = { *-bolditalic },
7   Ligatures      = { NoCommon },
8 ]{texgyreheros} % sans-serif font

```

The font used in quotation boxes on page [vii](#) is adapted from *Zapf Chancery Medium Italic*, originally from URW++ Design and Development Incorporated. The font used for the text in the title is Adventor (similar to *Avant-Garde*) from the *T<sub>E</sub>X-Gyre Project*. The font used for the version identifier in the footer of individual pages is LIQUID CRYSTAL (*Liquid Crystal*) from *FontLab Studio*.

## F.3 IPA typesetting

The IPA information is typeset using the *GnuFree Sans-Serif font family*:

<http://www.gnu.org/s/freefont/>

The glyphs were entered using a *TECKit mapping* in an X<sub>Y</sub>L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X environment with font feature specification as follows:

```
\newcommand{\fntipa}{\fntFreeSans\addfontfeatures{Mapping=/dan/r/common/TECKit/ascii-uipa}}
```

...where *ascii-uipa* is a *TECKit mapping* compiled from a *TECKit ascii-uipa.map* file which is about 350 lines long and looks in part something like this:

```

1 latin_capital_letter_S      <> latin_small_letter_esh      ;tipa| U+0053 <> U+0283
2 latin_capital_letter_Z      <> latin_small_letter_ezh      ;tipa| U+005A <> U+0292
3 BSL COL latin_small_letter_s <> latin_small_letter_s_with_hook ;tipa| \:s   <> U+0282
4 FSL COL latin_small_letter_s > latin_small_letter_s_with_hook ;   | /:s   <> U+0282

```

As a result, “`{\fntipa San}`” typesets to “jan”.

## F.4 PinYin typesetting

The PinYin information is typeset using the documents main Latin font (see Section [F.2](#)) but with assistance from a *TECKit mapping* in an X<sub>Y</sub>L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X environment with font feature specification as follows:

```

1 \defaultfontfeatures{%
2   Ligatures      = { NoCommon },% e.g. "fi" be represented as a single character?
3   Mapping        = /dan/r/common/TECKit/punctuation ,
4   SmallCapsFeatures = { Letters=SmallCaps },
5 }

```

...where `punctuation` is a TECKit mapping compiled from a TECKit `punctuation.map` file which is about 230 lines long and contains statements like these:

```
1 FSL grave_accent    latin_small_letter_a <> latin_small_letter_a_with_grave    ;/`a <> U+00E0
2 FSL apostrophe     latin_small_letter_a <> latin_small_letter_a_with_acute    ;/'a <> U+00E1
3 FSL colon          latin_small_letter_a <> latin_small_letter_a_with_diaeresis ;/:a <> U+00E4
4 FSL less_than_sign latin_small_letter_a <> latin_small_letter_a_with_circumflex ;/<a <> U+00E2
5 FSL HYP            latin_small_letter_a <> latin_small_letter_a_with_macron    ;/-a <> U+0101
```

As a result, “sh/-an” typesets to “shān”.

## F.5 Traditional Chinese typesetting

Traditional Chinese glyphs appearing in the text are from Google's *Noto Sans CJK* font family: <https://www.google.com/get/noto/help/cjk/>. The Noto project has both *sans-serif* (illustrated to the left) and *serif* (illustrated to the right) fonts available. The serif font is perhaps closer to the traditional brush stroke (as is the Roman serif fonts closer to what was made by Romans using a chisel to carve letters in stones). But it is likely that most people writing Chinese characters by hand will first pick up a pen, not a brush, when learning to write Chinese. And pen strokes are by nature basically sans-serif.

bǐ  
筆  
笔  
pen

bǐ  
筆  
笔  
pen

```
1 \newfontfamily{\fntNotoSansCJK}[
2   ExternalLocation ,
3   Path              = {/xfonts/noto/},
4   Extension         = {.otf},
5   UprightFont       = {*-Regular},
6   BoldFont          = {*-Bold},
7   ItalicFont        = {*-DemiLight},
8   BoldItalicFont    = {*-Black},
9   Ligatures         = {NoCommon},% e.g. "fi" be represented as a single character?
10 ]{NotoSansCJKtc}
```

shū 書 书 book upright	shū 書 书 book bold	shū 書 书 book italic	shū 書 书 book bold italic
----------------------------------	-------------------------------	---------------------------------	--------------------------------------

## F.6 Ruby characters

Ruby characters are Asian characters with pronunciation symbols adjacent to that character. For traditional Chinese characters, the symbols are ZhuYin and are located to the right of the character.

In this document, the font used to achieve this is

我<sub>wǒ</sub>看<sub>kàn</sub>到<sub>dào</sub>你<sub>nǐ</sub>

Wáng	Hàn	Zōng	zhōng	Míng	tǐ	zhù	yīn
王	漢	宗	中	明	體	注	音
王	漢	宗	中	明	體	注	音
King	the Han people	ancestor	medium	Míng Dynasty	style	to annotate	sound
						ZhuYin	

Font designer's name?

```

1 %
2 % Chinese typefaces with Zhuyin
3 % http://apt.nc.hcc.edu.tw/pub/FreeSoftware/free_fonts/wangttf/
4 %
5 \newfontfamily{\fntWangClearZY}{%
6   ExternalLocation,
7   Path              = {/xfonts/zht/},
8   Extension         = {.ttf},
9   UprightFont       = {wp010-05},
10  BoldFont          = {wp010-05},
11  ItalicFont        = {wp010-05},
12  BoldItalicFont    = {wp010-05},
13  }{wp010-05}

```

## F.7 Simplified Chinese typesetting

Just as the Traditional Chinese glyphs, Simplified Chinese glyphs are from Google's Noto Sans CJK (both traditional and simplified are in the same OpenType files). But in this document, the simplified characters were not typed in directly, rather traditional characters were typed, and then mapped to simplified characters using a *TECKit mapping* in an X<sub>3</sub>LaTeX environment with font feature specification as follows:

```
\newcommand{\fntzhs}{\fntNotoSansCJK\addfontfeatures{Mapping=../common/TECKit/zht2zhs}}
```

...where `zht2zhs` is a TECKit mapping compiled from a TECKit `zht2zhs.map` file which is about 3000 lines long and in part looks something like this:

```

1 ;=====
2 ; Variants to TECKit mapping file
3 ; Daniel J. Greenhoe
4 ;=====
5 ...
6 U+346F > U+3454 ; 37
7 U+3473 > U+3447 ; 38
8 U+3493 > U+20242 ; 41
9 U+34E8 > U+523E ; 52
10 U+35F2 > U+20D7E ; 68
11 U+361A > U+360E ; 72
12 U+3704 > U+36AF ; 87
13 U+370F > U+36E3 ; 88
14 ...

```

X<sub>3</sub>LaTeX commands have also been defined such as the following:

```

1 \newcommand{\zhtss}[3]{%
2   \begin{tabular}[t]{@{}@{}}
3     \color{red}\footnotesize #2\
4     \color{black}\large{\fntzht #1}\
5     \color{black}\large{\fntzhs #1}\
6     \color{blue}\footnotesize #3\
7   \end{tabular}%
8   \index[xchar]{\fntzht #1}/{\fntzhs #1} (#2) #3}
9   \index[xpinyin]{#2 ({\fntzht #1/\fntzhs #1}) #3}
10  \index[xeng]{#3 {\fntzht #1/\fntzhs #1} (#2)}
11 }

```

In the actual body of the document, the information for a character can be input as follows:

```
\zhtss{見}{ji/`an}{to see}
```

which writes index information to three different index files (a character index file, a PinYin index file, and an English word index file) and typesets glyphs as appearing to the right:

jiàn  
見  
见  
to see

Note that it is arguably safer to map from traditional to simplified rather than the converse because the traditional to simplified mapping tends to be *many-to-one*. An example is the set of traditional characters {干, 幹, 乾}, which all map to the simplified character 干.<sup>1</sup>

U+4E7E gān 乾 干 dry U+5E72	U+5E72 gān 干 干 to offend U+5E72	U+5E79 gàn 幹 干 tree trunk U+5E72
--	--	---

However, this is not always the case.

Sometimes the traditional to simplified mapping is *one-to-many*.<sup>2</sup>

traditional		simplified	PinYin	meaning	Unicode
徵	←	征	zhēng	to invade	U+5FB5 ← U+5F81
徵	←	徵	zhēng	to summon	U+5FB5 ← U+5FB5

## F.8 Generating the zht2zhs TECKit map file

As indicated previously, this document supports both traditional and simplified characters where the simplified is in most all cases mapped, when necessary, from the traditional using the TECKit map “[zht2zhs.map](#)”. A mapping is “necessary” when there is “variation” between the two for a given character.

The traditional-simplified variants are identified in a document from [www.unicode.org](http://www.unicode.org) called “[Unihan\\_Variants.txt](#)”. Version 10.0.0, for example, of this file can be found in “[Unihan.zip](#)” at <https://www.unicode.org/Public/10.0.0/ucd/>.

For this document, “[zht2zhs.map](#)” was generated from “[Unihan\\_Variants.txt](#)” using a simple command line utility compiled from the C source file called “[var2map.c](#)” resulting in a program which can be used like this:

```
var2map.exe Unihan_Variants_10-0-0.txt zht2zhs_10-0-0.map
```

To download the C source, go to <https://github.com/dgreenhoe/unihan>.

## F.9 Default bullet

The ship appearing throughout this text is loosely based on the *Golden Hind*, a sixteenth century English galleon famous for circumnavigating the globe.<sup>3</sup> The ship image as appears in this document was rendered using PStricks packages using code which includes something like that listed below:



```
1 %-----
2 % forward and middle mast and sails
3 %-----
```

<sup>2</sup> <http://hanzidb.org/character-list/multiple-simplified-variants>

<sup>3</sup> Paine (2000): *Warships of the World to 1900* page 63 (Golden Hind)

```

4 {\psset{fillstyle=gradient}}%
5 \multirput(21,31)(38,-6){2}{% forward and middle masts and sails
6   \pscustom[linewidth=2pt,arrows=-]{% upper sail
7     \pscurve(-18,8)(-20,22)(-8,36)%
8     \psline(-8,36)(8,52)%
9     \pscurve(8,52)(9,42)(14,40)%
10    \pscurve(14,40)(2,30)(-18,8)%
11    }%
12  \pscustom[linewidth=2pt,arrows=-]{% lower sail
13    \psline(-16,8)(16,40)%
14    \pscurve(16,40)(12,28)(16,20)%
15    \psline(16,20)(-16,-8)%
16    \pscurve(-16,-8)(-20,2)(-16,8)%
17    }%
18  \psline[linewidth=10pt](-17,28)(8,52)% upper crossbeam
19  \psline[linewidth=10pt](-16,8)(16,40)% lower crossbeam
20  \psline[linewidth=10pt](0,0)(0,50)% vertical mast
21  }%

```

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. BEEP dictionary. Cambridge University (URL: <http://svr-www.eng.cam.ac.uk/comp.speech/Section1/Lexical/beep.html>), "Phonemic transcriptions of over 250,000 English words. (British English pronunciations)"
2. 狐狸與鸛鳥 (hú lí yǔ gùan niǎo) The Fox and the Stork. 台南市 (tái nán shì) Tainan City: 世一文化 (shì yì wén huà) The world of one culture (Acme Books) (URL: <http://www.acmebooks.com.tw/product/showprod.asp?PDNBR=3134>), adopted from one of *Aesop's Fables, The Fox and the Stork*, circa 600BC, <http://books.google.com/books?id=2rNDiwA0AfEC&pg=PA281>, ISBN 978-986-193-112-8
3. ISO 7098:1991. International Organization for Standardization, 1991 (URL: [http://www.iso.org/iso/catalogue\\_detail.htm?csnumber=13683](http://www.iso.org/iso/catalogue_detail.htm?csnumber=13683)), 5
4. 萊特兄弟 Wright Brothers. 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, August 2004, The Biographies of Giants 2038-03 (URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/item.jsp?item=318>)
5. 台北 (Taiwan): 世一文化 (shì yì wén huà—The world of one culture—Acme Books), 2006a, 品德·智能學習圖畫書 (pǐndé·zhìnéng xué xí tú huà shū, Character—Intelligent learning picture-story books)
6. 2007b, 聲音從哪裡來 (shēng yīn cóng nǎ lǐ lái ?—Where is the sound from?) (URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/1060.jsp#1067>), 16
7. 動物說話 (dòng wù shuō huà—animals are speaking 1). 2007a Volume 1067-1 of (2007b) (URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/1060.jsp#1067>), 16
8. 動物說話 (dòng wù shuō huà—animals are speaking 2). 2007b Volume 1067-2 of (2007b) (URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/1060.jsp#1067>), 16
9. 有聲世界 (yǒu shēng shì jiè—sounds of the world). 2007c Volume 1067-5 of (2007b) (URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/1060.jsp#1067>), 16
10. 生活說話 (shēng huó shuō huà—life is speaking 1). 2007d Volume 1067-3 of (2007b) (URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/1060.jsp#1067>), 16
11. 生活說話 (shēng huó shuō huà—life is speaking 2). 2007e Volume 1067-4 of (2007b) (URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/1060.jsp#1067>), 16



12. 車車說話 (chē chē de shuō huà—cars are speaking). 2007f Volume 1067-6 of (2007b) (URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/1060.jsp#1067>), 16
13. **Allen, Julie, editor:** The Unicode Standard 5.1.0. Unicode Inc., 2008 (URL: <http://www.unicode.org/versions/Unicode5.1.0/>)
14. Animation Factory. Peoria, Illinois, USA, 1996–\* (URL: <http://www.animationfactory.com>)
15. **Association, International Phonetic:** Handbook of the International Phonetic Association : A Guide to the Use of the International Phonetic Alphabet. New York: Cambridge University Press, June 28 1999 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521637511>), 214, ISBN 0521637511
16. **Atiya, Farid:** Ancient Egypt. American Univ in Cairo Press, 2006 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9771736345>), 296, ISBN 9771736345
17. **Comrie, Bernard:** Tense. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1985, Cambridge textbooks in linguistics (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521281385>), 139, ISBN 0521281385
18. Dr. Eye for Windows 95/98/NT/2000/ME/XP. Inventec Group (URL: <http://www.dreya.com>)
19. **Ewen, David:** The Book of Modern Composers. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1950 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=yHw4AAAAIAAJ>), 586
20. **Ewen, David:** The New Book of Modern Composers. 3rd edition. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1961 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=bZiAAAAAMAAJ>), 491
21. **Fasold, Ralph W. and Connor-Linton, Jeff:** An introduction to language and linguistics. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2006 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521847680>), 556, ISBN 0521847680
22. **Greenbaum, Sidney:** The Oxford English Grammar. New York: Oxford University Press, May 2 1996 (URL: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/0198612508>), 672, ISBN 0198612508
23. **Group, Carnegie Mellon Speech:** Carnegie Mellon University Pronouncing Dictionary. Carnegie Mellon University (URL: <http://www.speech.cs.cmu.edu/cgi-bin/cmudict>)
24. **Halmos, Paul Richard; Kelley, John L. and Halmos, Paul R., editors:** Naive Set Theory. Princeton, New Jersey: D. Van Nostrand Company, Inc., 1960, The University Series in Undergraduate Mathematics (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0387900926>), ISBN 0387900926
25. **Harbaugh, Rick:** 中文字譜 Chinese Characters: A Genealogy and Dictionary. Zhongwen.com First Yale University Press impression, 2009 (URL: <http://www.zhongwen.com/>), ISBN 0966075005
26. **Hardy, Godfrey H.:** A Mathematician's Apology. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1940 (URL: <http://www.math.ualberta.ca/~mss/misc/A%20Mathematician's%20Apology.pdf>)
27. **Heijenoort, Jean Van:** From Frege to Gödel : A Source Book in Mathematical Logic, 1879-1931. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press, 1967 (URL: <http://www.hup.harvard.edu/catalog/VANFGX.html>)



28. **Housman, Alfred Edward:** More Poems. Alfred A. Knopf, 1936 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=rTMiAAAAMAAJ>), 146
29. **Kenyon, John Samuel and Knott, Thomas Albert:** A Pronouncing Dictionary of American English. Springfield: G. & C. Merriam Co., 1949 (URL: <https://archive.org/details/pronouncingdicti00unse>), 400
30. **Kenyon, John Samuel and Knott, Thomas Albert:** A Pronouncing Dictionary of American English. Springfield: G. & C. Merriam Co., June 1953 (URL: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/0877790477>), 484, ISBN 0877790477
31. **Kuratowski, Kazimierz:** Sur la notion d'ordre dans la theorie des ensembles (On the concept of order in set theory). Fundamenta Mathematicae, 2 1921, 161–171 (URL: <http://matwbn.icm.edu.pl/ksiazki/fm/fm2/fm2122.pdf>)
32. **Lewis, M. Paul, editor:** Ethnologue: Languages of the World. 16th edition. Dallas: Intl Academic Bookstore, 2009 (URL: <http://www.ethnologue.com/>), 1248, ISBN 1556712162
33. **Li, Charles N. and Thompson, Sandra A.:** Mandarin Chinese: a functional reference grammar. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1989 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0520066103>), ISBN 0520066103
34. **MacLane, Saunders and Birkhoff, Garrett:** Algebra. 3rd edition. Providence: AMS Chelsea Publishing, 1999 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0821816462>), 626, ISBN 0821816462
35. **McNaughton, William and Ying, Li:** Reading & Writing Chinese: a guide to the Chinese writing system: the student's 1,020 list, the official 2,000 list. Revised edition. Rutland: Charles E. Tuttle Company, September 1999 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0804832064>), 352, ISBN 0–8048–3206–4
36. **Paine, Lincoln P.:** Warships of the World to 1900. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt, 2000, Ships of the World Series (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780395984149>), 266, ISBN 9780395984147
37. **Prasad, Tarni:** A Course in Linguistics. New Delhi: Prentice-Hall of India Private Limited, 2008 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN8120334299>), ISBN 9788120334298
38. **Ross, Claudia and Sheng Ma, Jing heng:** Modern Mandarin Chinese Grammar: A Practical Guide. London, New York: Routledge, 2006, Routledge modern grammars (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0415700108>), 397, ISBN 0415700108
39. **Sears, Richard:** Chinese Etymology. 2017 (URL: [hanziyuan.net](http://hanziyuan.net))
40. **Shibles, Warren A.:** Chinese Romanization Systems: IPA Transliteration. Sino-Platonic Papers, November 1994, Nr. 52 (URL: [http://www.sino-platonic.org/complete/spp052\\_chinese\\_ipa.pdf](http://www.sino-platonic.org/complete/spp052_chinese_ipa.pdf))
41. **Stephens, Helen:** 我真的很忙 (I'm Too Busy). trans. by 萬惠華. Dorling Kindersley, 1999
42. **Trask, Robert Lawrence:** Key concepts in language and linguistics. 2nd edition. London: Routledge, 1999, Key concepts series (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0415157420>), 378, ISBN 0415157420
43. **Walsh, Melanie:** 躲貓貓和睡覺—Hide and Sleep. trans. by 林世玲. Dorling Kindersley, 1999

44. **Wilford, John Noble:** Hunting One Language, Stumbling Upon Another. The New York Times, October 11 2010 (URL: <http://www.nytimes.com/2010/10/12/science/12language.html>), accessed 2010 March 16 EST
45. **Young, Dalton and Kim, Loretta:** 小毛蟲學電腦 Little caterpillar learns the computer. trans. by 黃姿樺 and 蔡如茵. Tainan: 企鵝圖書有限公司黃姿樺 (Ta Chien Publishing Company Limited), May 2003a Volume 7 of **Young and Kim (2003b): 斑斑的生活故事 (Ban Ban's life story)**(URL: <http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/71292562>)
46. **Young, Dalton and Kim, Loretta:** 斑斑的生活故事 (Ban Ban's life story). trans. by 黃姿樺 and 蔡如茵. Tainan: 企鵝圖書有限公司黃姿樺 (Ta Chien Publishing Company Limited), May 2003b, 斑斑的生活故事 (Ban Ban's life story)
47. **Young, Dalton and Kim, Loretta:** 毛蟲家族去購物 (máo chóng jiā zú qù gòu wù) The caterpillar family goes shopping. trans. by 黃姿樺 and 蔡如茵. Tainan: 企鵝圖書有限公司黃姿樺 (Ta Chien Publishing Company Limited), May 2003c Volume 4 of **Young and Kim (2003b): 斑斑的生活故事 (Ban Ban's life story)**(URL: <http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/71292613>)
48. **余亮:** 不準親吻噴火龍 (bù zhǔn qīn wěn pēn huǒ lóng, Do not kiss the fire breathing dragon). 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, December 20 2010, [余亮: Yú Liàng], [劉慧潔: Liú Huì Jié]
49. **余治瑩:** 彩色小兔 (cǎi sè xiǎo tù—The colored rabbit). 台北 (Taiwan): 世一文化 (shì yì wén huà—The world of one culture—Acme Books), December 2006 Volume B6630 of **(2006a)**(URL: <http://www.acmebooks.com.tw/product/showprod.asp?PDNBR=2780>), 24, [余治瑩: Yú Zhì Yíng]
50. **劉嘉裕:** 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, January 1999a, 幼福兒童EQ教育童話 (yòu fú ér tóng EQ jiào yù tóng huà—Young fortunate children EQ educational fairy tales) (URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/4001.jsp>), 33, [劉嘉裕: Liú Jiā Yù]
51. **劉嘉裕:** 三劍客 (sān jiàn kè—The Three Musketeers). 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, January 1999b Volume 18 of **劉嘉裕 (1999a):** (URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/4001.jsp>), 33, based on the novel originally written in French by père Alexandre Dumas and published in 1844, ISBN 9789577471833
52. **劉嘉裕:** 天鵝湖 (tiān é hú—Swan Lake). 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, June 01 1999c Volume 7 of **劉嘉裕 (1999a):** (URL: <http://m.sanmin.com.tw/product/index/000535350>), 33, *Swan Lake* was originally a ballet by Pyotr Ilyich Tchaikovsky, which in turn was in turn was adapted from Russian folk tales., ISBN 9789577471727
53. **劉嘉裕:** 賣香屁 (mài xiāng pì—Selling Fragrant Gas). 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, January 1999d Volume 23 of **劉嘉裕 (1999a):** (URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/4001.jsp#4006>), 33, [劉嘉裕: Liú Jiā Yù], ISBN 9789577471888
54. **劉嘉裕:** 醜小鴨 (chǒu xiǎo yā—The Ugly Duckling). 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, January 1999e Volume 2 of **劉嘉裕 (1999a):** (URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/4001.jsp>), 33, based on the text originally written in Danish by Hans Christian Andersen and published in 1843, ISBN 9789577471673

55. 垂石真子: Everyone Comes to Big Red Apples 好大的紅蘋果. trans. by 信誼 (Hsin Yi Publications). March 2009, n14810 <URL: <http://www.kimy.com.tw/project/200407/0123language/index-1.asp>>, Mako Taruishi (垂石真子), ISBN 978-986-161-302-4
56. 姜子安: 阿良造紙 (Ah-Liang Makes Paper). 世一文化事業股份有限公司, January 2007, 品得培養成長繪本 6 <URL: <http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/9864189204>>, 23, [姜子安: Jiāng Zǐ Ān], ISBN 9789864189205
57. 幼福編輯部, editor: 大黃牛學勤勞 (dà huáng niú xué qín láo—Big Yellow Cow Learns Diligence). 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, August 2005a Volume 2034-1 of 幼福編輯部 (2005b): 寶寶心靈成長雙語繪本 <URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/2034.jsp>>, 34, ISBN 9789577475169
58. 幼福編輯部, editor: 寶寶心靈成長雙語繪本. 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, August 2005b, 寶寶心靈成長雙語繪本 (bǎo bǎo xīn líng chéng zhǎng shuāng yǔ huì yǔ) Baby intelligent growth bilingual illustrated books <URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/2034.jsp>>, 34
59. 幼福編輯部, editor: 小猴子長大了 A Little Monkey Grows Up. 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, September 2005c Volume 2034-12 of 幼福編輯部 (2005b): 寶寶心靈成長雙語繪本 <URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/2034.jsp>>, 34, ISBN 9789577475275
60. 幼福編輯部, editor: 小白兔的友誼 The Rabbit's Friendship. 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, August 2005d Volume 2034-5 of 幼福編輯部 (2005b): 寶寶心靈成長雙語繪本 <URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/2034.jsp>>, 34, ISBN 9789577475206
61. 幼福編輯部, editor: 小老虎大嗓門 A Little Tiger's Loud Voice. 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, August 2005e Volume 2034-6 of 幼福編輯部 (2005b): 寶寶心靈成長雙語繪本 <URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/2034.jsp>>, 34, ISBN 9789577475213
62. 幼福編輯部, editor: 小豬送的花兒 The Pig Was Given Me Flowers. 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, September 2005f Volume 2034-9 of 幼福編輯部 (2005b): 寶寶心靈成長雙語繪本 <URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/2034.jsp>>, 34, ISBN 9789577475244
63. 幼福編輯部, editor: 小象妹找自信 (xiǎo xiàng mèi zhǎo zì xìn—Little Elephant Sister looks For confidence). 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, August 2005g Volume 2034-2 of 幼福編輯部 (2005b): 寶寶心靈成長雙語繪本 <URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/2034.jsp>>, 34, ISBN 9789577475176
64. 幼福編輯部, editor: 獅子王的原則 (shī zi wáng de yuán zé) The King of Lion's Principle. 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, September 2005h Volume 2034-8 of 幼福編輯部 (2005b): 寶寶心靈成長雙語繪本 <URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/2034.jsp>>, 34, ISBN 9789577475237
65. 幼福編輯部, editor: 酷酷熊有決心 The Bear Got The Determination. 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, September 2005i Volume 2034-10 of 幼福編輯部 (2005b): 寶寶心靈成長雙語繪本 <URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/2034.jsp>>, 34, ISBN 9789577475251

66. 幼福編輯部, editor: 黑猩猩來了 (hēi xīng xīng lái le—The Black Gorilla is coming). 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, October 2005j Volume 2035-4 of 幼福編輯部 (2005b): 寶寶心靈成長雙語繪本 (URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/2034.jsp#2035>), 36, ISBN 9789577475534
67. 張晉霖: 台北 (Taiwan): 風車出版 (fēng chē chū bǎn—Windmill Publishing), September 2005a, 一本從故事理啟發智慧學習的圖畫書 (yì běn cóng gù shì lǐ qǐ fā zhì huì xué xí de tú huà shū—an illustrated book using stories to inspire wisdom and learning) (URL: <http://shopping.windmill.com.tw/epaperbox/E1019999070.html>), [張晉霖: Zhāng Jìn Lín]
68. 張晉霖: 一塊錢 · 買一個夢 (yí kuài qián · mǎi yī ge mèng—One dollar · buy one dream). 台北 (Taiwan): 風車出版 (fēng chē chū bǎn—Windmill Publishing), May 2005b Volume 7 of 張晉霖 (2005a): (URL: <http://shopping.windmill.com.tw/epaperbox/E1019999070.html#7>), [張晉霖: Zhāng Jìn Lín], ISBN 9789867267108
69. 張晉霖: 哈啾不見了 (hā jiū bú jiàn le—“Achoo” No More). 台北 (Taiwan): 風車出版 (fēng chē chū bǎn—Windmill Publishing), September 2005c Volume 8 of 張晉霖 (2005a): (URL: <http://shopping.windmill.com.tw/epaperbox/E1019999070.html#8>), 28, [張晉霖: Zhāng Jìn Lín], ISBN 9789867267177
70. 張晉霖: 奇怪的客人 (qí guài de kè rén—The Strange Visitor). 台北 (Taiwan): 風車出版 (fēng chē chū bǎn—Windmill Publishing), September 2005d Volume 4 of 張晉霖 (2005a): (URL: <http://shopping.windmill.com.tw/epaperbox/E1019999070.html#4>), 36, [張晉霖: Zhāng Jìn Lín]
71. 張晉霖: 白雲枕頭 (bái yún zhěn tóu—White Cloud Pillow). 台北 (Taiwan): 風車出版 (fēng chē chū bǎn—Windmill Publishing), May 2005e Volume 3 of 張晉霖 (2005a): (URL: <http://shopping.windmill.com.tw/epaperbox/E1019999070.html#3>), 36, [張晉霖: Zhāng Jìn Lín]
72. 張晉霖: 蝴蝶風箏 (hú dié fēng zhēng—The Butterfly Kite). 台北 (Taiwan): 風車出版 (fēng chē chū bǎn—Windmill Publishing), September 2005f Volume 1 of 張晉霖 (2005a): (URL: <http://shopping.windmill.com.tw/epaperbox/E1019999070.html#1>), [張晉霖: Zhāng Jìn Lín], ISBN 9-789867-267108
73. 張晉霖: 給貓咪掛鈴鐺. In 給貓咪掛鈴鐺. May 2006a (URL: [https://www.kingstone.com.tw/book/book\\_page.asp?kmcode=2015231399920](https://www.kingstone.com.tw/book/book_page.asp?kmcode=2015231399920)), ISBN 9789867014047?, 4-9, [張晉霖: Zhāng Jìn Lín]
74. 張晉霖: 給貓咪掛鈴鐺 (gěi māo mī guà líng dāng) hang a bell on the cat. Volume 1, 一本從故事理啟發人生智慧的圖畫書 (yì běn cóng gù shì lǐ qǐ fā rén shēng zhì huì de tú huà shū) an illustrated book using stories to inspire wisdom for life. 台北, Taiwan: 風車出版 (fēng chē chū bǎn) Windmill Publishing, May 2006b (URL: <http://shopping.windmill.com.tw/bookcomment-2.aspx?BOKNO=10155802>), 27, [張晉霖: Zhāng Jìn Lín], ISBN 9789867014047
75. 張晉霖 and 李美華; 漢唐出版設計製作群, editor: 愛與心靈成長學習繪本 (ài yǔ xīn líng chéng zhǎng xué xí huì běn) Love and intelligence growth and learning illustrated books. 台北 (Tái bēi) Taipei: 風車出版 (fēng chē chū bǎn) Windmill Publishing, February 2008a, 愛與心靈成長學習繪本 (ài yǔ xīn líng chéng zhǎng xué xí huì běn) Love and intelligence growth and learning illustrated books, [張晉霖: Zhāng Jìn Lín, 李美華: Lǐ Měi Huá]



76. 張晉霖 and 李美華; 漢唐出版設計製作群, editor: 沙漠中的一桶水 (shā mò zhōng de yī tǒng shuǐ) A bucket of water in the dessert. 台北 (Tái běi) Taipei: 風車出版 (fēng chē chū bǎn) Windmill Publishing, February 2008b Volume 8 of 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008a): 愛與心靈成長學習繪本 (ài yǔ xīn líng chéng zhǎng xué xí huì běn) Love and intelligence growth and learning illustrated books (URL: <http://shopping.windmill.com.tw/bookcomment-2.aspx?BOKNO=10155838>), 36, [張晉霖: Zhāng Jìn Lín, 李美華: Lǐ Měi Huá], ISBN 9789866855740
77. 張晉霖 and 李美華; 漢唐出版設計製作群, editor: 流浪貓 (liú làng māo) The vagrant cat. 台北 (Tái běi) Taipei: 風車出版 (fēng chē chū bǎn) Windmill Publishing, February 2008c Volume 3 of 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008a): 愛與心靈成長學習繪本 (ài yǔ xīn líng chéng zhǎng xué xí huì běn) Love and intelligence growth and learning illustrated books (URL: <http://shopping.windmill.com.tw/bookcomment-2.aspx?BOKNO=10155833>), 32, [張晉霖: Zhāng Jìn Lín, 李美華: Lǐ Měi Huá], ISBN 9789866855696
78. 張晉霖 and 李美華; 漢唐出版設計製作群, editor: 真的! (zhēn de)—Really! 台北 (Tái běi) Taipei: 風車出版 (fēng chē chū bǎn) Windmill Publishing, February 2008d Volume 6 of 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008a): 愛與心靈成長學習繪本 (ài yǔ xīn líng chéng zhǎng xué xí huì běn) Love and intelligence growth and learning illustrated books (URL: <http://shopping.windmill.com.tw/bookcomment-2.aspx?BOKNO=10155836>), 36, [張晉霖: Zhāng Jìn Lín, 李美華: Lǐ Měi Huá], ISBN 9789866855726
79. 張晉霖 and 李美華; 漢唐出版設計製作群, editor: 貝絲的心願 (bèi sī de xīn yuàn) Beth's cherished desire. 台北 (Tái běi) Taipei: 風車出版 (fēng chē chū bǎn) Windmill Publishing, February 2008e Volume 2 of 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008a): 愛與心靈成長學習繪本 (ài yǔ xīn líng chéng zhǎng xué xí huì běn) Love and intelligence growth and learning illustrated books (URL: <http://shopping.windmill.com.tw/bookcomment-2.aspx?BOKNO=10155832>), 36, [張晉霖: Zhāng Jìn Lín, 李美華: Lǐ Měi Huá], ISBN 9789866855689
80. 征矢清: 葉子小屋 (Small House of Leaves). 信誼基金出版, 1999 (URL: <http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/9576425816>), 24+8, [征矢清: Zhēng Shǐ Qīng], ISBN 9789576425813
81. 方素珍: 那是一個洞嗎? (Nà shì yī ge dòng ma?—Is that a hole?). trans. by 方素珍. 上人文化事業股份有限公司, 1999 (URL: <http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/9578298463>), [方素珍: Fāng Sù Zhēn], ISBN 9789578298460
82. 曾陽晴: 媽媽買綠豆 (Let's Get Mung Beans, Momma!). 3rd edition. 信誼基金出版社, 2009 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9576421403>), 28, [曾陽晴: Céng Yáng Qíng / Yang Ching Tseng], ISBN 978-986-161-260-7
83. 李美華; 漢唐出版設計製作群, editor: 讓人思念的小章魚 (ràng rén sī niàn de xiǎo zhāng yú)—The Little Octopus who makes people miss him. 台北 (Tái běi) Taipei: 風車出版 (fēng chē chū bǎn) Windmill Publishing, February 2008a Volume 5 of 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008a): 愛與心靈成長學習繪本 (ài yǔ xīn líng chéng zhǎng xué xí huì běn) Love and intelligence growth and learning illustrated books (URL: <http://shopping.windmill.com.tw/bookcomment-2.aspx?BOKNO=10155835>), 36, [李美華: Lǐ Měi Huá], ISBN 9789866855719
84. 李美華; 漢唐出版設計製作群, editor: 避雨 (bì yǔ) Taking shelter from the rain. 台北 (Tái běi) Taipei: 風車出版 (fēng chē chū bǎn) Windmill Publishing, February 2008b Volume 4 of 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008a): 愛與心靈成長學習繪本 (ài yǔ xīn líng chéng zhǎng xué xí huì běn) Love and intelligence growth and learning illustrated books (URL:

- <http://shopping.windmill.com.tw/bookcomment-2.aspx?BOKNO=10155834>), 36, [李美華: Lǐ Měi Huá], ISBN 9789866855702
85. **林真卿**: 想家的巧克力: 不灰心的奮鬥 (Homesick Chocolate: Don't lose heart in the struggle). 巧育文化 (Artful cultural education), December 2010, 系列名: EQ學習創作繪本 (Creative learning picture books) (URL: <http://m.sanmin.com.tw/product/index/001495688>), [林真卿: Lín Zhēn Qīng], ISBN 9789866267659
86. **王姿云**: 維尼上學囉. 上人文化, June 2008 (URL: [https://www.zdbooks.com.tw/?route=product/product&product\\_id=176163](https://www.zdbooks.com.tw/?route=product/product&product_id=176163)), [王姿云: Wáng Zī Yún], ISBN 9789862120644
87. **胡韶真**: 公雞國王 (gōng jī guó wáng—The rooster named King). Volume 4, (pǐn dé péi yǎng chéng zhǎng huì běn, Character development illustrated books). 世一文化 (shì yì wén huà) The world of one culture (Acme Books), 2007 (URL: <http://www.acmebooks.com.tw/product/showprod.asp?PDNBR=2782>), 24, [胡韶真: Hú Sháo Zhēn]
88. **陽子**: 小狼的禮物 (xiǎo láng de lǐ wù—Little Wolf's gift). 台北 (Taiwan): 世一文化 (shì yì wén huà—The world of one culture—Acme Books), September 2006 Volume B6600-2 of (2006a) (URL: <http://www.acmebooks.com.tw/product/showprod.asp?PDNBR=2618>), 24
89. **葉德明, editor**: Far East Pinyin Chinese-English Dictionary: 遠東拼音漢英辭典. Taipei: 遠東圖書公司 (yuǎn dōng tú shū gōng sī) The Far East Book Company, Limited, 2000 (URL: <http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/957612462X>), 878, editor 葉德明=Yè Dé Míng (leaf virtue bright), ISBN 978-9576124624
90. **蘇錦梅**: 乞丐王子 (qǐ gài wáng zǐ—The Prince and the Pauper). 台北, Taiwan: 幼福文化事業股份有限公司, January 1999 Volume 20 of 劉嘉裕 (1999a): (URL: <http://www.168books.com.tw/page/4001.jsp>), 33, [蘇錦梅: Sū Jǐn Méi], ISBN 9789577471857
91. **許慎**: 說文解字注 (Shuō Wén Jiě Zì Zhù, Explanatory Notes of Chinese Characters). GuangZhou HuanHui Cultural Development Company Limited, 121 (URL: <http://www.gg-art.com/imgbook/index.php?bookid=53>), [許慎: Xǔ Shèn]
92. **郭桂玲**: 一起想辦法 (yī qǐ xiǎng bàn fǎ)—Together Think of a Way. In 小朋友的MQ童話. 台南市, Taiwan: 世一文化 (URL: <http://www.acmebooks.com.tw/product/showprod.asp?PDNBR=2198>), ISBN 9789864187027, 25–40, [郭桂玲: Gúo Guì Líng]
93. **郭桂玲**: 神氣的披風 (shén qì de pī fēng)—The Majestic Cape. In 小朋友的MQ童話. 台南市, Taiwan: 世一文化 (URL: <http://www.acmebooks.com.tw/product/showprod.asp?PDNBR=2198>), ISBN 9789864187027, 3–18, [郭桂玲: Gúo Guì Líng]
94. **陳書韻**: 奇奇愛耍酷: (qí qí ài shuǎ kù). 上人文化, June 30 2008 (URL: [http://www.shang-renpub.com.tw/product\\_info.php?products\\_id=608](http://www.shang-renpub.com.tw/product_info.php?products_id=608)), [陳書韻: Chén Shū Yùn, 林莞菁: Lín Guǎn Jīng]
95. **風車編輯部/編**: 10隻討厭的烏鴉 (shí zhī tǎo yàn de wū yā—Ten Disagreeable Crows). 台北, Taiwan: 風車出版 (fēng chē chū bǎn) Windmill Publishing, September 2002 (URL: <http://shopping.windmill.com.tw/epaperbox/learn40.htm>), 122

96. 黃慧敏: 阿尼要搬家 (ā ní yào bān jiā—Annie wants to move). 台北 (Taiwan): 世一文化 (shì yì wén huà—The world of one culture—Acme Books), September 2006 Volume B6615 of (2006a) (URL: <http://www.acmebooks.com.tw/product/showprod.asp?PDNBR=2618>), 24, [黃慧敏: Huáng Hùi Mǐng]







## REFERENCE INDEX

- 風車編輯部/編 (2002): 10隻討厭的烏鴉 (*shí zhī tǎo yàn de wū yā—Ten Disagreeable Crows*), 37, 40, 48, 60, 62, 63, 94
- 劉嘉裕 (1999b): 三劍客 (*sān jiàn kè—The Three Musketeers*), 41, 56, 81
- 黃慧敏 (2006): 阿尼要搬家 (*ā ní yào bān jiā—Annie wants to move*), 7, 105
- 張晉霖 (2005c): 哈啾不見了 (*hā jiū bú jiàn le—“Achoo” No More*), 7, 95  
(1996–\*)*Animation Factory* (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>), ii
- 垂石真子 (2009): *Everyone Comes to Big Red Apples* 好大的紅蘋果, 89
- Atiya (2006): *Ancient Egypt*, 2
- Young and Kim (2003c): 毛蟲家族去購物 *The caterpillar family goes shopping*, 31
- Young and Kim (2003a): 小毛蟲學電腦 *Little caterpillar learns the computer*, 106
- 幼福編輯部 (2005i): 酷酷熊有決心 *The Bear Got The Determination*, 83
- 幼福編輯部 (2005a): 大黃牛學勤勞 (*dà huáng niú xué qín láo—Big Yellow Cow Learns Diligence*), 7, 60–62, 70, 102
- 幼福編輯部 (2005g): 小象妹找自信 (*xiǎo xiàng mèi zhǎo zì xìn—Little Elephant ...confidence*), 61, 63, 95, 98, 99
- 幼福編輯部 (2005j): 黑猩猩來了 (*hēi xīng xīng lái le—The Black Gorilla is coming*), 56, 60–63, 95
- 幼福編輯部 (2005h): 獅子王的原則 (*shī zi wáng de yuán zé*) *The King of Lion's Principle*, 43, 48
- 幼福編輯部 (2005c): 小猴子長大了 *A Little Monkey Grows Up*, 73
- 幼福編輯部 (2005f): 小諸送的花兒 *The Pig Was Given Me Flowers*, 71
- 幼福編輯部 (2005d): 小白兔的友誼 *The Rabbit's Friendship*, 70, 74, 96, 104
- 幼福編輯部 (2005e): 小老虎大嗓門 *A Little Tiger's Loud Voice*, 102
- BEEP dictionary*, 15
- 張晉霖 (2005f): 蝴蝶風箏 (*hú dié fēng zhēng—The Butterfly Kite*), 45, 51, 72, 81, 105
- 郭桂玲: 神氣的披風 (*shén qì de pī fēng—The Majestic Cape*), 61, 94
- 胡韶真 (2007): 公雞國王 (*gōng jī guó wáng—The rooster named King*), 43, 64, 72, 73
- 張晉霖 (2005e): 白雲枕頭 (*bái yún zhěn tóu—White Cloud Pillow*), 8, 31, 64
- Group: *Carnegie Mellon University Pronouncing Dictionary*, 15
- 余治瑩 (2006): 彩色小兔 (*cǎi sè xiǎo tù—The colored rabbit*), 43, 74, 95
- Comrie (1985): *Tense*, 46
- 張晉霖 (2005b): 一塊錢 · 買一個夢 (*yí kuài qián · mǎi yī ge mèng*), 7, 43
- Lewis (2009): *Ethnologue: Languages of the World*, 13
- Ewen (1950): *The Book of Modern Composers*, viii
- Ewen (1961): *The New Book of Modern Composers*, viii
- 方素珍 (1999): 那是一個洞嗎? (*Nà shì yī ge dòng ma?—Is that a hole?*), 89
- Fasold and Connor-Linton (2006): *An introduction to language and linguistics*, 46
- 余亮 (2010): 不準親吻噴火龍, 62
- 狐狸與鸛鳥 (*hú lí yǔ guàn niǎo*) *The Fox and the Stork*, 42
- 劉嘉裕 (1999d): 賣香屁 (*mài xiāng pì—Selling Fragrant Gas*), 39, 96–98
- Greenbaum (1996): *The Oxford English Grammar*, 46, 48
- Halmos (1960): *Naive Set Theory*, 147
- Harbaugh (2009): 中文字譜 *Chinese Characters: A Genealogy and Dictionary*, 3
- Heijenoort (1967): *From Frege to Gödel: A Source Book*, viii

- Walsh (1999): 躲貓貓和睡覺—*Hide and Sleep*, 99
- Housman (1936): *More Poems*, viii
- Association (1999): *Handbook of the International Phonetic Association...*, 13, 15
- (1991)/ISO 7098:1991, 15, 18
- 姜子安 (2007): 阿良造紙 (*Ah-Liang Makes Paper*), 74, 102
- 陳書韻 (2008): 奇奇愛耍酷: (*qí qí ài shǎ kù*), 56
- Kenyon and Knott (1949): *A Pronouncing Dictionary of American English*, 15
- Kenyon and Knott (1953): *A Pronouncing Dictionary of American English*, 15
- Kuratowski (1921): *Fundamenta Mathematicae* 2 [1921], 147
- Li and Thompson (1989): *Mandarin Chinese: a functional reference grammar*, 46, 49
- 張晉霖 (2006b): 給貓咪掛鈴鐺 (*gěi māo mī gùā líng dāng*) *hang a bell on the cat*, 98
- 林真卿 (2010): 想家的巧克力: 不灰心的奮鬥 (*Homesick Chocolate:...*), 69
- 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008d): 真的! (*zhēn de*)—*Really!*, 74, 75, 105
- 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008e): 貝絲的心願 (*bèi sī de xīn yuàn*) *Beth's cherished desire*, 97
- 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008c): 流浪貓 (*liú làng māo*) *The vagrant cat*, 37, 40
- 李美華 (2008a): 讓人思念的小章魚—*The Little Octopus ...*, 39, 41, 59, 84, 91
- 李美華 (2008b): 避雨 (*bì yǔ*) *Taking shelter from the rain*, 40, 75, 83
- 張晉霖 and 李美華 (2008b): 沙漠中的一桶水 *A bucket of water in the desert*, 44
- MacLane and Birkhoff (1999): *Algebra*, 147
- McNaughton and Ying (1999): *Reading & Writing Chinese...*, 8
- Paine (2000): *Warships of the World to 1900*, 153
- Prasad (2008): *A Course in Linguistics*, 13
- 蘇錦梅 (1999): 乞丐王子 (*qǐ gài wáng zǐ*—*The Prince and the Pauper*), 41, 55, 57, 71
- Ross and heng Sheng Ma (2006): *Modern Mandarin Chinese Grammar: A Practical Guide*, 3
- Shibles (1994): *Sino-Platonic Papers*, 23
- (2007a)動物說話 (*dòng wù shuō huà*—*animals are speaking 1*), 5
- (2007b)動物說話 (*dòng wù shuō huà*—*animals are speaking 2*), 5
- (2007f)車車說話 (*chē chē de shuō huà*—*cars are speaking*), 5
- (2007d)生活說話 (*shēng huó shuō huà*—*life is speaking 1*), 5
- (2007e)生活說話 (*shēng huó shuō huà*—*life is speaking 2*), 5
- (2007c)有聲世界 (*yǒu shēng shì jiè*—*sounds of the world*), 5
- Stephens (1999): 我真的很忙 (*I'm Too Busy*), 39, 57, 102
- 張晉霖 (2005d): 奇怪的客人 (*qí gài de kè rén*—*The Strange Visitor*), 60, 80, 81
- 劉嘉裕 (1999c): 天鵝湖 (*tiān é hú*—*Swan Lake*), 35, 92, 94, 105, 106
- 郭桂玲: 一起想辦法 (*yī qǐ xiǎng bàn fǎ*)—*Together Think of a Way*, 70, 93
- Trask (1999): *Key concepts in language and linguistics*, 46
- 曾陽晴 (2009): 媽媽買綠豆 (*Let's Get Mung Beans, Momma!*), 100
- 劉嘉裕 (1999e): 醜小鴨 (*chǒu xiǎo yā*—*The Ugly Duckling*), 47, 61, 70, 82, 83, 94
- Allen (2008): *The Unicode Standard 5.1.0*, 8
- Wilford (2010): *The New York Times*, 13
- 王姿云 (2008): 維尼上學囉, 100
- 腸子 (2006): 小狼的禮物 (*xiǎo láng de lǐ wù*—*Little Wolf's gift*), 38, 42, 72
- (2004)萊特兄弟 *Wright Brothers*, 62, 141
- 許慎 (121): 說文解字注 (*Shuō Wén Jiě Zì Zhù, Explanatory Notes of Chinese Characters*), 3
- 葉德明 (2000): *Far East Pinyin Chinese-English Dictionary: 遠東拼音漢英辭典*, 23
- 張晉霖 (2006a): 給貓咪掛鈴鐺 (*Hang a Bell on the Cat*), 39, 59
- 征矢清 (1999): 葉子小屋 (*Small House of Leaves*), 89

## CHINESE CHARACTER INDEX

書/书 (shū) book, 151  
 書/书 (shū) book, 151  
 \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_ () , 40  
 \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_ () , 41  
 \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_ () (complimentary verb), 55  
 \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_ () (initial verb), 55  
 書/书 (shū) book, 151  
 .../... () , 71, 73  
 一/一 (yī) one, 84  
 一/一 (yī) one, 75  
 一/一 (yī) one, 35, 70, 74, 98, 104  
 一/一 (yī) one, 67  
 一/一 (yī) one, 43, 73, 75, 101  
 一/一 (yī) one, 93, 94  
 一/一 (yī) 1, 115, 116  
 一/一 (yī) one, 84, 85, 120  
 一/一 (yī) 1, 113, 114  
 一下/一下 (yí xià) a short while, 8  
 一位/一位 (yī wèi) a, 69  
 一個/一个 (yí ge) one, 89  
 一個/一个 (yí ge) a, 22  
 一天/一天 (yī tiān) one day, 45  
 一會兒/一会儿 (yī huǐ) in a little while, 66  
 一會兒/一会儿 (yī huǐ) in a little while, 77  
 一月/一月 (yī yuè) January , 67  
 一條/一条 (yí tiào) a, 120  
 一次/一次 (yí cì) once, 56  
 一次/一次 (yí cì) once, 120  
 一起/一起 (yì qǐ) together, 43  
 一路/一路 (yí lù) all the way, 129  
 一身/一身 (yī shēn) whole

body, 95  
 一陣/一阵 (yí zhèn) a burst, 71  
 一隻/一只 (yī zhī) a, 45  
 一隻/一只 (yī zhī) a, 71, 73  
 一頭/一头 (yī tóu) one (mw), 44  
 一點/一点 (yí diǎn) a little, 59  
 丁/丁 (Dīng) , 131  
 丁/丁 (dīng) nail, 3  
 七/七 (qī) seven, 83, 120  
 七/七 (qī) 7, 113–115  
 七月/七月 (qī yuè) July , 67  
 三/三 (sān) three, 67  
 三/三 (sān) 3, 69  
 三/三 (sān) 3, 115, 116  
 三/三 (sān) three, 120  
 三/三 (sān) 3, 113–115  
 三月/三月 (sān yuè) March , 67  
 三角/三角 (sān jiǎo) triangle, 145  
 上/上 (shàng) above, 4, 51  
 上/上 (shàng) on top of, 8, 43  
 上/上 (shàng) up, 66, 75  
 上班/上班 (shàng bān) to be at work, 40  
 下/下 (xià) below, 4  
 下/下 (xià) down, 62, 66  
 下/下 (xià) to form an opinion, 99  
 下來/下来 (xià lái) come down, 72  
 下來/下来 (xià lái) to come down, 51  
 下午/下午 (xià wǔ) after noon, 106  
 丌/丌 (jī) stool, 4  
 不/不 (bù) not, 36–39, 53–56, 74, 92, 99, 100, 102, 109  
 不/不 (bù) not, 23, 39, 42, 43, 53–56, 60–62, 64, 94, 98–

100, 105  
 不/不 (bù) not, 59, 78, 81, 129  
 不/不 (bù) not, 80, 81, 84, 85, 124  
 不休/不休 (bù xiū) endlessly, 129  
 不但/不但 (bú dàn) not only, 39, 41, 69  
 不但/不但 (bù dàn) not only, 41  
 不停/不停 (bù tíng) non-stop, 100  
 不停/不停 (bù tíng) nonstop, 62, 63  
 不僅/不仅 (bù jǐn) not only, 41  
 不勝/不胜 (bù shēng) too, 123  
 不可/不可 (bù kě) not permissible, 56  
 不可/不可 (bù kě) not permitted, 56  
 不是/不是 (bú shì) (either), 40, 41  
 不時/不时 (bù shí) from time to time, 72  
 不會/不会 (bú huì) unable, 130  
 不眠/不眠 (bù mián) sleepless, 129  
 不知/不知 (bù zhī) wonder if, 123  
 不禁/不禁 (bù jīn) cannot refrain, 63  
 不管/不管 (bù guǎn) no matter, 129  
 不要/不要 (bú yào) don't, 80, 89  
 世/世 (shì) generation, 138  
 並/并 (bìng) entirely, 57  
 並/并 (bìng) entirely, 57  
 中/中 (zhōng) medium, 152

中央/中央 (zhōng yāng) middle, 44  
 丰/丰 (fēng) good-looking, 137  
 主意/主意 (zhǔ yì) idea, 42  
 主詞/主词 (zhǔ cí) subject, 45  
 久/久 (jiǔ) duration of time, 70  
 久/久 (jiǔ) duration, 64  
 之/之 (zhī) ', 101  
 之/之 (zhī) of, 126  
 之/之 (zhī) to arrive at, 139  
 乒/乒 (pīng) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 乘/乘 (chéng ) multiply, 146  
 乘/乘 (chéng) ride, 123  
 乘法/乘法 (chéng fǎ) multiplication, 146  
 九/九 (jiǔ) 9, 113–115  
 九/九 (jiǔ) nine, 120  
 九月/九月 (jiǔ yuè) September, 67  
 乞丐/乞丐 (qǐ gài) beggar, 71  
 也/也 (yě) also, 4, 64, 69, 95  
 也/也 (yě) also, 129  
 乾/干 (gān) dry, 153  
 乾淨/干净 (gān jìng) clean, 64  
 亂/乱 (lùn) disorder, 98  
 亂話/乱话 (lùn huà) indiscriminate talk, 82  
 了/了 (le) , 41, 54, 71, 73, 81, 89, 93, 100, 105, 120  
 了/了 (le) (a change of state), 71  
 了/了 (le) (a change of state), 39, 49, 59, 74  
 了/了 (le) (change of state), 7, 8, 69  
 了/了 (le) (indicates a change of state), 78  
 了/了 (liǎo) to understand, 61, 94  
 了/了 (liǎo) understand, 62  
 事/事 (shì) matters, 97  
 事/事 (shì) affairs, 124  
 事情/事情 (shì qíng) a matter, 33  
 二/二 (èr ) two, 67  
 二/二 (èr) 2, 69  
 二/二 (èr) two, 120  
 二/二 (èr ) 2, 113, 114  
 二/二 (liǎng) 2, 115  
 二月/二月 (èr yuè) February , 67  
 五/五 (liù) 6, 114  
 五/五 (sì) 4, 113  
 五/五 (wǔ ) five, 67  
 五/五 (wǔ ) 5, 113–115  
 五/五 (wǔ) five, 120  
 五月/五月 (wǔ yuè) May , 68  
 井/井 (jǐng) well, 33

井/井 (jǐng) a well, 134  
 交通/交通 (jiāo tōng) traffic, 95  
 享受/享受 (xiǎng shòu) to enjoy, 106  
 亮/亮 (liàng) bright, 7  
 亮/亮 (liàng) bright, 135  
 人/人 (rén) person, 3, 37  
 人/人 (rén) people, 124, 125  
 人家/人家 (rén jiā) household, 32  
 人群/人群 (rén qún) crowd, 97  
 人群/人群 (rén qún) crowd, 128  
 人都/人都 (rén dōu) everyone, 94  
 人間/人间 (rén jiān) world of man, 124  
 什麼/什么 (shé me) what, 36, 56, 103  
 什麼/什么 (shé me) what, 78, 79, 81, 120  
 仁/仁 (rén) benevolence; kindness, 135  
 仁慈/仁慈 (rén cí) kindness, 96  
 仇/仇 (Chóu) enemy, 132  
 今/今 (jīn) the present, 65  
 今/今 (jīn) now, 126  
 今夕/今夕 (jīn xī) today, 123  
 今天/今天 (jīn tiān) today, 22, 68, 69  
 今幣/今币 (jīn bì) gold, 41  
 介/介 (jiè) upright, 134  
 介意/介意 (jiè yì) to take offense, 80, 81  
 介紹/介绍 (jiè shào) introduce, 78  
 仍然/仍然 (réng rán) still, 38  
 他/他 (tā) he, 8, 30, 39, 54, 56, 69, 72–74, 95, 97  
 他/他 (tā) him, 56  
 他/他 (tā) he, 79, 82, 118, 120  
 他們/他们 (tā mén) their, 30  
 他們/他们 (tā mén) them, 30, 41  
 他們/他们 (tā mén) they, 48, 106  
 他們/他们 (tā men) they, 43  
 他們/他们 (tā mén) they, 81  
 他的/他的 (tā de) his, 30, 56  
 仙/仙 (xiān) celestial being, 4  
 代/代 (dài) substitute, 29, 110  
 代/代 (dài) substitute, 143, 144  
 令/令 (lìng) excellent, 135  
 件/件 (jiàn) document, 33  
 任/任 (Rén) , 132  
 份/份 (fèn) portion, 32

伊/伊 (Yī) he; she, 133  
 伍/伍 (wǔ) army, 128  
 休息/休息 (xiū xi) rest, 105  
 伯/伯 (bó) a count (nobility), 134  
 伸出/伸出 (shēn chū) to stick out, 43, 48  
 但願/但愿 (dàn yuàn) if only, 125  
 位/位 (wèi) (mw), 35  
 位/位 (wèi) location, 34  
 低/低 (dī) hang down, 124  
 住/住 (zhù) to cease, 84  
 佐/佐 (zǔ) to assist, 138  
 佔/佔 (zhàn) to seize, 97  
 何/何 (Hé) , 131  
 何事/何事 (hé shì) why, 124  
 何似/何似 (hé sì) similar to, 124  
 何年/何年 (hé nián) what year, 123  
 何等/何等 (hé děng) how, 126  
 余/余 (Yú) I, 132  
 作/作 (zuò) to do, 37, 46  
 你/你 (nǐ) you, 81, 89, 128–130  
 你/你 (nǐ) you, 29, 31, 36, 37, 41, 48, 53, 54, 93, 98, 99, 103, 105  
 你/你 (nǐ) you, 77–79, 81, 82, 84, 128, 129  
 你們/你们 (nǐ mén) you, 29, 30  
 你心/你心 (nǐ xīn) your heart, 129  
 你的/你的 (nǐ de) your, 23, 30, 93  
 佰/佰 (bǎi) hundred, 128  
 佳/佳 (jiā) beautiful, 136  
 佳/佳 (jiā) excellent, 137  
 佼/佼 (jiǎo) charming, 134  
 使/使 (shǐ) to make, 126  
 來/来 (lái) come, 51, 98–100  
 來/来 (lái) to come, 42, 43, 48, 60  
 來了/来了 (lái le) came, 45  
 侯/侯 (Hóu) marquis, 131  
 便/便 (biàn) thereupon, 38  
 便宜/便宜 (pián yí) petty gain, 97  
 保/保 (bǎo) to guard, 134  
 保/保 (bǎo) to protect, 4  
 保護/保护 (bǎo hù) to protect, 129  
 俠/俠 (xiá) chivalry, 135  
 信/信 (xìn) letter, 32  
 信/信 (xìn) to believe, 126  
 倆/俩 (liǎng) craft; ability, 136  
 個/个 (ge) (quantifier), 22, 32  
 個/个 (ge) a, 65, 66, 104, 106

個/个 (ge) one that, 62, 63  
 個性/个性 (gè xìng) personal-  
 ity, 91  
 借/借 (jiè) to borrow, 21  
 值/值 (zhí) value, 144  
 假借/假借 (jiě jià) to make  
 use of, 3  
 假意/假意 (jiǎ yì) insincerity,  
 97  
 偏/偏 (piān) slightly, 56  
 偏/偏 (piān) slanting, 145  
 偏序/偏序 (piān xù) partial or-  
 der, 148  
 做/做 (zuò) do, 103  
 做/做 (zuò) to do, 42, 74  
 停/停 (tíng) stop, 72  
 停/停 (tíng) stop, 87  
 偷懶/偷懶 (tōu lǎn) to slack,  
 101  
 偷走/偷走 (tōu zǒu) to steal,  
 71  
 傀/傀 (guī) great; wonderful,  
 134  
 傳/傳 (Fù) a teacher, 131  
 傑/杰 (jié) remarkable, 134  
 備/备 (bèi) completeness,  
 134  
 催/催 (Cūi) high and steep,  
 131  
 催著/催着 (cūi zhe) urging,  
 100  
 傳遞/传递 (chuán dì) transi-  
 tive, 148  
 傷心/伤心 (shāng xīn) heart-  
 broken, 92  
 像/像 (xiàng) to resemble, 57  
 億/亿 (yì) 10<sup>8</sup>, 116  
 儘早/尽早 (jiǎn zǎo) as soon  
 as possible, 70  
 儘早/尽早 (jiǎn zǎo) as soon  
 as possible, 82  
 優/优 (yōu) excellent; abun-  
 dant, 136  
 儼/俨 (yǎn) majestic; re-  
 spectable, 135  
 儿/儿 (rén) person, 3  
 元/元 (Yúan) first, 138  
 兄弟/兄弟 (xiōng dì) brothers,  
 62  
 充滿/充满 (chōng mǎn) full,  
 129  
 先生/先生 (xiān shēng) mis-  
 ter, 118, 119  
 克/克 (kè) to overcome, 135  
 兔/兔 (tù) rabbit, 45, 64  
 兔子/兔子 (tù zi) rabbit, 43,  
 74, 95  
 入/入 (rù) to enter, 3  
 內積/内积 (nèi jī) inner-  
 product, 147  
 全/全 (quán) entire, 61, 95

全/全 (quán) completely, 124  
 全力/全力 (quán lì) to use all  
 one's strength, 105  
 八/八 (bā) 8, 4  
 八/八 (bā) eight, 22, 71  
 八/八 (bā) eight, 83, 120  
 八/八 (bā) 8, 113–115  
 八月/八月 (bā yuè) August ,  
 67  
 公司/公司 (gōng sī) com-  
 pany, 33  
 公雞/公鸡 (gōng jī) rooster, 7,  
 43, 64, 73  
 六/六 (liù) six, 67  
 六/六 (liù) 6, 113–115  
 六/六 (liù) six, 68  
 六/六 (liù) six, 120  
 六/六 (qī) 7, 114  
 六月/六月 (liù yuè) June , 68  
 共/共 (gòng) altogether, 146  
 共/共 (gòng) share, 125  
 其實/其实 (qí shí) in fact, 38  
 再/再 (zài) further, 64  
 再見/再见 (zài jiàn) good bye,  
 77  
 冠詞/冠词 (guàn cí) article,  
 109  
 冬天/冬天 (dōng tiān) winter,  
 61  
 冰/冰 (bīng) ice, 139  
 冷/冷 (lěng) cold, 40  
 冷汗/冷汗 (lěng hàn) cold  
 sweat, 95  
 凍/冻 (dòng) to freeze, 61  
 几/几 (jǐ) small table, 3  
 凡/凡 (fán) all, 4, 97  
 凱/凯 (kǎi) peace, 134  
 凱/凯 (kǎi) triumphant  
 strains, 138  
 出/出 (chū) to exit, 42, 48, 95  
 出來/出来 (chū lái) to come  
 out, 73  
 出去/出去 (chū qù) to get out,  
 82  
 出現/出现 (chū xiàn) to ap-  
 pear, 72  
 出走/出走 (chū zǒu) to leave,  
 72  
 出門/出门 (chū mén) go out,  
 100  
 函數/函数 (hán shù) function,  
 145  
 刀/刀 (dāo) knife, 3  
 分析/分析 (fēn xī) analyze,  
 143, 144  
 分號/分号 (fēn hào) semi-  
 colon, 111  
 初/初 (chū) first, 126  
 別/别 (bié) don't, 80  
 別人/别人 (bié rén) other  
 people, 97

別時/别时 (bié shí) time to  
 leave, 124  
 刮/刮 (guā) to scrape, 71  
 到/到 (dào) to arrive, 75  
 到/到 (dào) to reach, 55, 60,  
 74  
 到處/到处 (dào chù) every-  
 where, 118  
 到達/到达 (dào dá) to arrive  
 at, 130  
 刻/刻 (kè) quarter hour, 74  
 則/则 (zé) as for him, 31  
 剋/克 (kè) to overcome, 136  
 前/前 (qián) front, 110  
 前/前 (qián) before, 126  
 前天/前天 (qián tiān) day be-  
 fore yesterday, 66  
 前邊/前边 (qián biān) front  
 side, 88  
 剛/刚 (gāng) exactly, 99  
 剛好/刚好 (gāng hǎo) per-  
 fect, 99  
 剛才/刚才 (gāng cái) a mo-  
 ment ago, 66  
 副詞/副词 (fù cí) adverb, 109  
 劇/剧 (jù) a play, 37  
 劉/刘 (Liú) to kill, 132  
 力/力 (lì) force, 3  
 力/力 (lì) power, 105  
 力/力 (lì) strength, 95  
 力/力 (lì) strength, 135  
 功/功 (gōng) merit; achieve-  
 ment, 134  
 加/加 (jiā) add, 145  
 加法/加法 (jiā fǎ) addition ,  
 145  
 助/助 (zhù) to help, 136  
 努力/努力 (nǚ lì) exert, 74,  
 102  
 努力/努力 (nǚ lì) to strive, 75,  
 101  
 勁/劲 (jìn) vigor, 134  
 勁/劲 (jìng) powerful, 136  
 勇/勇 (yǒng) courageous;  
 fearless, 136  
 勇敢/勇敢 (yǒng gǎn) brav-  
 ery, 95  
 動/动 (dòng) to move, 110  
 動/动 (dòng) to move, 98  
 動詞/动词 (dòng cí) verb, 45,  
 110  
 勤/勤 (qín) diligent; industri-  
 ous, 135  
 勤勞/勤劳 (qín láo) diligent,  
 96, 101  
 勤奮/勤奋 (qín fèn) diligent,  
 101  
 勳/勳 (xūn) merits; honors,  
 135  
 包/包 (Bāo) to wrap, 132  
 匚/匚 (fāng) , 4



匠/匠 (jiàng) craftsman, 136  
 匡/匡 (Kuāng) to correct, 133  
 匹/匹 (pǐ) equal to, 34  
 十/十 (shí) 10, 113, 114  
 十/十 (shí) 10, 69  
 十/十 (shí) 10, 114–116  
 十/十 (shí) ten, 120  
 十一月/十一月 (shí yī yuè) November, 68  
 十二月/十二月 (shí èr yuè) December, 68  
 十月/十月 (shí yuè) October, 67  
 千/千 (qiān) 1000, 115, 116  
 千里/千里 (qiān lǐ) long distance, 125  
 午/午 (wǔ) noon, 104, 106  
 半死/半死 (bàn sǐ) half to death, 39  
 協/協 (xié) to agree; to help, 135  
 協力/協力 (xié lì) to unite efforts, 102  
 南/南 (Nán) south, 133  
 博/博 (bó) extensive; abundant, 134  
 卜/卜 (Bǔ) to divine, 132  
 邵/邵 (shào) to encourage; graceful, 137  
 卻/却 (què) but, 39  
 卻/却 (què) however, 39  
 厭惡/厌恶 (yàn wù) to abhor, 94  
 去/去 (qù) go, 51, 54  
 去/去 (qù) to go, 4, 40, 55, 60  
 去/去 (qù) to go, 89  
 去世/去世 (qù shì) pass away, 69  
 去年/去年 (qù nián) last year, 66  
 去過/去过 (qù guò) went, 54  
 又/又 (yòu) again, 40  
 又/又 (yòu) again, 120  
 又/又 (yòu) but, 123  
 反/反 (fǎn) opposite, 56  
 反/反 (fǎn) contrary, 148  
 反應/反应 (fǎn yìng) response, 83  
 反而/反而 (fǎn ér) instead, 39  
 叔叔/叔叔 (shú shu) uncle, 62, 63  
 受/受 (shòu) to receive, 62  
 受傷/受伤 (shòu shāng) injured, 74  
 受傷/受伤 (shòu shāng) to get injured, 74, 102  
 口/口 (kǒu) mouth, 4, 33, 39, 93  
 口/口 (kǒu) mouth, 122  
 古/古 (Gǔ) ancient, 133  
 古/古 (gǔ) ancient, 124

句子/句子 (jù zì) sentence, 111  
 句號/句号 (jù hào) period (.), 111  
 叩/叩 (kòu) to knock, 6, 7  
 只/只 (zhǐ) only, 74  
 只/只 (zhǐ) only, 102  
 只好/只好 (zhǐ hǎo) could only, 100  
 只要/只要 (zhǐ yào) provided that, 38  
 叫/叫 (jiào) to call, 7, 43, 62, 73  
 叫/叫 (jiào) to crow, 64  
 叫/叫 (jiào) called, 78, 79  
 叭/叭 (bā) trumpet, 5  
 叮/叮 (dīng) to sting, 5  
 叮嚀/叮咛 (dīng níng) to repeatedly urge, 83  
 可/可 (Kě) to be able to, 134  
 可/可 (kě) to permit, 56  
 可以/可以 (kě yǐ) can, 106  
 可是/可是 (kě shì) but, 64  
 可疑/可疑 (kě yí) suspicious, 128  
 台/台 (tái) platform, 34  
 史/史 (Shǐ) history, 132  
 右手/右手 (yòu hand) right, 121  
 右邊/右边 (yòu biān) right side, 88  
 司機/司机 (sī jī) driver, 104  
 叼走/叼走 (diāo zǒu) to take away in the mouth, 89  
 吃/吃 (chī) to eat, 73  
 吃/吃 (chī) eat, 36, 39, 47, 53, 54, 57, 94, 102  
 吃力/吃力 (chī lì) exhausting, 73  
 吃力/吃力 (chī lì) exhausting, 43  
 吃過/吃过 (chī guò) eaten, 53  
 各/各 (gè) each, 22  
 合/合 (hé) together, 124  
 同心/同心 (tóng xīn) with one heart, 102  
 名字/名字 (míng zì) a name, 78, 79  
 名詞/名词 (míng cí) noun, 29, 110  
 向/向 (Xiàng) to face, 133  
 君/君 (jūn) monarch, 139, 140  
 否定/否定 (fǒu dìng) to negate, 53  
 吧/吧 (bā) (a particle), 5  
 吧/吧 (ba) , 82  
 吧/吧 (ba) (for suggestions), 22  
 吱/吱 (zī) a squeak, 7  
 吳/吴 (Wú) , 132, 140

吵架/吵架 (chǎo jià) to quarrel, 82  
 吸引/吸引 (/ - xī yǐn) attract, 39  
 吸食/吸食 (xī shí) to suck, 72  
 吼/吼 (hǒu) to roar, 6  
 呀/呀 (a) , 60  
 呀/呀 (yā) (sound), 118, 119  
 呂/吕 (Lǚ) , 132  
 呢/呢 (ne) , 39, 41, 57, 78, 89  
 呢/呢 (ne) (a sound), 31  
 呦/呦 (yōu) (sound), 118, 119  
 周/周 (Zhōu) , 140  
 周/周 (Zhōu) Zhou Dynasty, 132  
 呱/呱 (gūa) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 呱呱/呱呱 (gū gū) baby's cry, 118  
 呵/呵 (hē) Ha, 63  
 呵欠/呵欠 (hē qiàn) to yawn, 104  
 呼/呼 (hū) to exhale, 6, 8, 70, 92  
 呼喊/呼喊 (hū hǎn) to call out, 128  
 和/和 (hàn) and, 38, 74, 94, 102, 106  
 和/和 (hàn) with, 56  
 和/和 (hé) and, 122  
 和/和 (hé) harmony, 134  
 和/和 (hàn) and, 130  
 和平/和平 (hé píng) peace, 96  
 咕/咕 (gū) to murmur, 5, 7  
 咕嚕/咕嚕 (gū lū) "gurgle/hyperpage, 7, 62  
 咚/咚 (dōng) (onomatopoeia), 5  
 咩/咩 (miē) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 咬/咬 (yǎo) bite, 120  
 咬了/咬了 (yǎo le) bit, 120  
 咯/咯 (gé) a click, 5  
 咻/咻 (xiū) din, 7  
 咿/咿 (yī) (sound), 118, 119  
 哇/哇 (wā) (a particle), 7  
 哇/哇 (wā) wow, 42  
 哇/哇 (wa) wow, 60  
 哈/哈 (hā) to breathe on, 6  
 哈啾/哈啾 (hā jiū) achoo, 7  
 哈欠/哈欠 (hā qiàn) to yawn, 104  
 哎/哎 (āi) (onomatopoeia), 5  
 唉/唉 (móu) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 哥哥/哥哥 (gē ge) elder brother, 74  
 哪個/哪个 (něi ge) which, 36  
 哪個/哪个 (nǎ ge) which, 120  
 哪裡/哪里 (nǎ lǐ) where, 36  
 哪裡/哪里 (nǎ lǐ) where, 89

哭/哭 (kū) to cry, 4  
 哲/哲 (zhé) a thinker; wise, 136  
 唉/唉 (āi) alas, 94  
 唐/唐 (Táng) the Tang Dynasty, 132  
 唧/唧 (jī) pump, 6  
 唯一/唯一 (wéi yī) only, 69  
 唱/唱 (chàng) sing, 56  
 唱歌/唱歌 (chàng gē) to sing, 83  
 唷/唷 (yō) , 7  
 商人/商人 (shāng rén) businessman, 103  
 啊/啊 (ā) (onomatopoeia), 5  
 問/問 (wèn) ask, 123  
 問/問 (wèn) to ask, 60  
 問/問 (wèn) to request, 81  
 問號/问号 (wèn hào) question mark, 111  
 問題/问题 (wèn tí) question, 36  
 問題/问题 (wèn tí) problem, 80  
 啦/啦 (la) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 啪/啪 (pā) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 啾/啾 (jiū) chirping sound, 6  
 善/善 (shàn) good; virtuous, 135  
 喊叫/喊叫 (hǎn jiào) to shout, 82  
 喔/喔 (ō) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 喔/喔 (o) (a sound), 129  
 喜/喜 (xǐ) a joyful thing, 138  
 喜歡/喜欢 (xǐ huān) like, 47, 53  
 喜歡/喜欢 (xǐ huān) to like, 43, 94  
 喜歡/喜欢 (xǐ huān) to like, 56  
 喝/喝 (hē) drank, 63  
 喝/喝 (hē) drink, 47  
 喝了/喝了 (hē le) drank, 60  
 單/单 (Shàn) , 133  
 單元音 (monophthongs), 15  
 喵/喵 (miāo) "meow|hyperpage, 6  
 喻/喻 (Yù) parable; to explain, 133  
 嗎/吗 (ma) , 79  
 嗎/吗 (ma) (?), 36–38, 78, 81, 84, 93  
 嗎/吗 (ma) (question), 98, 99  
 嗒/嗒 (tà) dejected, 6  
 嗚/呜 (wū) (onomatopoeia), 7  
 嗡嗡 (wēng) (onomatopoeia), 7  
 嗤/嗤 (chī) to sneer, 5  
 嗨/嗨 (hāi) "hi", 6  
 嗯/嗯 (èn) Hmmm, 39, 42  
 嘩/哗 (bì) (onomatopoeia), 5  
 嗷/嗷 (áo) cry of hunger, 5

嘆氣/叹气 (tàn qì) to sigh, 94  
 嘎/嘎 (gā) (onomatopoeia), 5  
 嘛/嘛 (ma) , 89  
 嘟/嘟 (dū) (onomatopoeia), 5  
 嘩/哗 (hūa) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 噤/叽 (jī) to talk indistinctly, 6  
 嘴/嘴 (zuǐ) mouth, 83  
 嘴巴/嘴巴 (zuǐ bā) mouth, 84  
 嘶/嘶 (sī) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 嘿/嘿 (hēi) hey, 42  
 撲/撲 (pū) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 噹/当 (dāng) (onomatopoeia), 5  
 噓/噓 (hùo) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 嚇/吓 (xià) scared, 74, 95  
 嚇/吓 (xià) to scare, 39, 61, 95  
 嚕/嚕 (lū) verbose, 6, 8  
 嚴/严 (Yán) stern; strict, 132  
 嚴/严 (yán) beautiful, 135  
 囉/啰 (lūo) to chatter, 6  
 四/四 (sì) four, 67  
 四/四 (sì) 4, 115, 116  
 四/四 (sì) four, 120  
 四/四 (sì) 4, 113–115  
 四/四 (wǔ) 5, 113  
 四月/四月 (sì yuè) April, 67  
 回家/回家 (huí jiā) to return home, 40  
 回頭/回头 (huí tóu) to turn one's head, 75  
 因為/因为 (yīn wèi) because, 120  
 因素/因素 (yīn sù) a cause, 128  
 困惑/困惑 (kùn huò) bewildered, 129  
 固/固 (gù) stable; sturdy, 134  
 國/国 (Gúo) country, 138  
 國王/国王 (guó wáng) king, 41, 61  
 國語/国语 (guó yǔ) Chinese, 84, 85  
 園/园 (yúan) garden, 118  
 圓/圆 (yúan) round, 124  
 圖論/图论 (tú lùn) graph theory, 144  
 土/土 (tǔ) soil, 102  
 在/在 (zài) at, 8, 44, 51, 60  
 在/在 (zài) to exist, 65  
 在/在 (zài) at, 118, 124, 128, 129  
 圭/圭 (guī) (a jade tablet), 134  
 地/地 (dì) earth, 83, 118, 119  
 坐下/坐下 (zuò xià) to sit down, 88  
 垮/垮 (kuǎ) to collapse, 105  
 城堡/城堡 (chéng bǎo) cas-

tle, 55  
 埕/埕 (Chéng) , 131  
 域/域 (yù) frontier, 136  
 堂/堂 (táng) hall, 34  
 堅/坚 (jiān) strong and durable, 134  
 報紙/报纸 (bào zhǐ) newspaper, 32, 37  
 塊/块 (kuài) chunk, 33  
 塊/块 (kuài) chunk, 118, 119  
 塞/塞 (sài) to compete, 135  
 增/增 (zēng) to increase, 136  
 壞/坏 (huài) bad, 42  
 壞/坏 (huài) bad, 38  
 士/士 (shì) scholar, 135  
 夏/夏 (Xià) summer, 132  
 夏/夏 (xià) summer, 138  
 外/外 (wài) outside, 7  
 外婆/外婆 (wài pó) maternal grandmother, 20  
 多/多 (duō) many, 42  
 多/多 (duō) much, 70  
 多/多 (duō) many, 128, 129  
 多少/多少 (duō shǎo) so many, 129  
 夢/梦 (mèng) dream, 138  
 大/大 (dà) big, 3, 35, 45, 66, 94, 102  
 大家/大家 (dà jiā) everyone, 56  
 大象/大象 (dà xiàng) elephant, 34, 35  
 大門/大门 (dà mén) front door, 40  
 大雨/大雨 (dà yǔ) heavy rain, 62  
 天/天 (tiān) day, 43, 73  
 天/天 (tiān) sky, 7, 66, 72  
 天/天 (tiān) the sky, 65, 66  
 天上/天上 (tiān shàng) heaven, 123  
 天鵝/天鹅 (tiān é) swan, 35  
 太/太 (Tài) very big, 133  
 太/太 (tài) extremely, 78  
 失去/失去 (shī qù) to lose, 97  
 失去/失去 (shī qù) lose, 69  
 失喪/失丧 (shī sàng) lost, 126  
 奇奇/奇奇 (qí qí) Kiki, 56  
 奇異/奇异 (qí yì) unusual, 126  
 奉/奉 (fèng) to receive with respect, 134  
 奕/奕 (yì) great; grand; abundant, 136  
 奧/奥 (Ào) abstruse, 141  
 奧/奥 (ào) mysterious; profound, 134  
 奮/奋 (fèn) to rise in force, 134  
 奮戰/奋战 (fèn zhàn) to put

up a good fight, 75  
 女/女 (nǚ) woman, 4  
 女孩/女孩 (nǚ hái) girl, 34, 35  
 她/她 (tā) her, 42, 51  
 她/她 (tā) she, 22, 30, 55, 72, 75, 93  
 她們/她们 (tā mén) them, 30  
 她的/她的 (tā de) her, 30  
 好/好 (hǎo) good, 4, 42, 59, 69, 93, 136  
 好/好 (hǎo) very, 45, 60  
 好/好 (hǎo) good, 77, 78, 81  
 好事/好事 (hǎo shì) good deeds, 42  
 好像/好像 (hǎo xiàng) to seem, 7  
 好奇/好奇 (hào qí) curious, 95  
 好好/好好 (hǎo hǎo) all out, 41  
 好好/好好 (hǎo hǎo) very good, 106  
 如/如 (rú) as, 44  
 如果/如果 (rú guǒ) if, 38  
 如此/如此 (rú cǐ) 'twas, 126  
 妃/妃 (fēi) concubine, 139  
 妍/妍 (yán) beautiful, 138  
 妙/妙 (miào) wonderful; intriguing; ingenious, 137  
 妮/妮 (nī) maid, 140  
 姚/姚 (Yáo) handsome, 132  
 姜/姜 (Jiāng) ginger, 131  
 姬/姬 (jī) beautiful lady, 136  
 威/威 (wēi) dignity; authority; awe, 135  
 威/威 (wēi) might, 141  
 娟/娟 (juān) graceful, 137  
 娥/娥 (é) good; beautiful, 136  
 婀/婀 (ē) graceful; elegant, 136  
 婉/婉 (wǎn) amiable; pleasant, 137  
 媽/妈 (mā) mother, 22  
 媽媽/妈妈 (mā mā) Mama, 56, 100  
 媽媽/妈妈 (mā mā) mother, 60  
 媽媽/妈妈 (mā ma) Mom, 106  
 媽媽/妈妈 (mā ma) mother, 40  
 嫉妒/嫉妒 (jí dù) jealous, 92  
 嫌/嫌 (xián) to detest, 92  
 嬌/嬌 (yān) captivating; fascinating, 137  
 嫻/嫻 (xián) refined; gracious, 137  
 嬋/婵 (chán) graceful; lady-like, 136  
 嬋娟/婵娟 (chán juān) lovely, 125  
 嬌/娇 (jiāo) delicate, 136

嫵/嫵 (niǎo) delicate; graceful, 137  
 子/子 (zǐ) son, 4  
 子/子 (zǐ) son, 8  
 子句/子句 (zǐ jù) clause, 38  
 孔/孔 (Kǒng) hole, 132  
 字彙/字汇 (zì huì) vocabulary, 111  
 字母/字母 (zì mǔ) alphabet, 111  
 孝/孝 (xiào) dutiful, 139  
 孟/孟 (Mèng) eldest child, 132  
 孟/孟 (mèng) first month of a season, 139  
 季/季 (Jì) season, 133  
 孫/孙 (Sūn) grandchild; descendant, 132  
 學/学 (xué) study, 144, 145  
 學生/学生 (xué shēng) student, 103  
 它/它 (tā) it, 30  
 它/它 (tā) it, 89  
 它們/它们 (tā mén) them, 30  
 它的/它的 (tā de) it's, 30  
 宇/宇 (yǔ) roof, 140  
 守/守 (shǒu) to protect, 135  
 安/安 (ān) peaceful, 137, 140  
 安寧/安宁 (ān níng) tranquility, 106  
 安慰/安慰 (ān wèi) comfort, 126  
 宋/宋 (Sòng), 132  
 宏/宏 (hóng) magnificent, 134  
 宏亮/宏亮 (hóng liàng) magnificent and clear, 64  
 宗/宗 (Zōng) ancestor, 152  
 宗/宗 (Zōng) ancestor, 133  
 官/官 (Gūan) government official, 133  
 定/定 (dìng) to fix, 99, 109  
 宛/宛 (Wǎn) crooked, 133  
 宜/宜 (Yí) right; fitting, 133  
 客/客 (kè) guest, 135  
 客氣/客气 (kè qì) polite, 81  
 宣/宣 (Xūan) to announce, 133  
 宮闕/宫阙 (gōng quē) imperial palace, 123  
 宰/宰 (Zǎi) to preside, 133  
 害怕/害怕 (hài pà) afraid, 91  
 家/家 (jiā) home, 43, 48, 72, 75  
 家/家 (jiā) household, 33  
 家/家 (jiā) specialist, 103  
 寇/寇 (Kòu) bandits, 133  
 富/富 (fù) wealthy, 134  
 寒/寒 (hán) cold, 123  
 實/实 (shí) real, 145  
 實在/实在 (shí zài) really, 62

寧/宁 (níng) peace; serenity, 137  
 寬/宽 (kuān) wide, 35  
 寶貴/宝贵 (bǎo guì) precious, 126  
 封/封 (fēng) to seal, 32  
 將/将 (jiāng) will, 130  
 尋回/寻回 (xún huí) found, 126  
 對/对 (duì) as regards, 41  
 對/对 (duì) correct, 74  
 對/对 (duì) facing, 98, 99  
 對/对 (duì) facing, 80  
 對/对 (duì) for, 130  
 對稱/对称 (duì chèn) symmetric, 148  
 對象/对象 (duì xiàng) subject, 69  
 小/小 (Xiǎo) little, 140  
 小/小 (xiǎo) small, 35  
 小/小 (xiǎo) little, 40, 42, 45, 59, 63, 64  
 小/小 (xiǎo) small, 97  
 小/小 (xiǎo) little, 89  
 小/小 (xiǎo) small, 129  
 小偷/小偷 (xiǎo tōu) thief, 22  
 小指/小指 (xiǎo zhǐ) little finger, 121  
 小貓/小猫 (xiǎo māo) kitten, 40  
 小頭/小头 (xiǎo tōu) small head, 22  
 小鴨/小鸭 (xiǎo yā) duckling, 61  
 小鴨/小鸭 (xiǎo yā) duckling, 118  
 尤/尤 (Yóu) to feel bitter, 133  
 就/就 (jiù) just, 8, 59, 61, 71, 73, 95  
 就是/就是 (jiù shì) (or), 40  
 就是/就是 (jiù shì) no other than, 41  
 就算/就算 (jiù suàn) even if, 129  
 尷尬/尴尬 (gān gà) embarrassed, 92  
 尸/尸 (shī) corpse, 4  
 尹/尹 (Yǐn) to govern, 132  
 尾/尾 (Wěi) tail, 133  
 尾/尾 (wěi) tail, 34  
 居然/居然 (jū rán) unexpectedly, 38  
 屋子/屋子 (wū zi) house, 59  
 山/山 (shān) mountain, 3, 4  
 山/山 (shān) mountain, 135  
 山羊/山羊 (shān yáng) goat, 63  
 屹/屹 (yì) to rise high, 135  
 岸/岸 (àn) shore, 75  
 峽/峡 (xiá) a gorge, 135  
 崢嶸/峥嵘 (zhēng) lofty; outstand-



ing, 136  
 嵐/岚 (lán) mountain vapor, 137  
 嵩/嵩 (sōng) mountain song, 135  
 嶄/嶄 (zhǎn) towering, 136  
 嶙/嶙 (lín) rugged, 135  
 嶽/嶽 (yuè) a high mountain, 136  
 巖/巖 (yán) a rock, 135  
 川/川 (chūan) river, 134  
 工/工 (gōng) work, 4  
 工人/工人 (gōng rén) worker, 103  
 工作/工作 (gōng zuò) work, 74, 101–103  
 工程/工程 (gōng chéng) engineering, 103  
 左邊/左边 (zuǒ biān) left side, 88  
 巫/巫 (Wū) witch; wizard, 133  
 巫婆/巫婆 (wū pó) witch, 20  
 差/差 (chà) difference, 59  
 已/已 (yǐ) already, 126  
 巾/巾 (jīn) cloth, 4  
 師/师 (shī) instructor, 103  
 師傅/师傅 (shī fu) master worker, 101  
 常/常 (Cháng) common; normal, 131  
 常/常 (cháng) ordinary, 144  
 帽子/帽子 (mào zi) hat, 71  
 幅/幅 (fú) width of cloth, 32  
 干/干 (gān) shield, 4  
 干/干 (gān) to offend, 153  
 平常/平常 (píng cháng) usual, 41  
 年/年 (Nián) year, 133  
 年/年 (nián) a year, 65  
 幸/幸 (xìng) well-being, 138  
 幸運/幸运 (xìng yùn) fortunate, 57  
 幹/干 (gàn) tree trunk, 153  
 幾/几 (jǐ) how many, 68  
 幾/几 (jǐ) how many, 79  
 幾乎/几乎 (jī hū) almost, 59  
 幾何/几何 (jǐ hé) geometry, 144  
 幾天/几天 (jǐ tiān) several days, 62  
 幾時/几时 (jǐ shí) when, 123  
 床/床 (chuáng) bed, 35  
 康/康 (Kāng) health, 132  
 康/康 (kāng) healthy, 134  
 康熙/康熙 (kāng xī) Kangxi, 8  
 廕/廕 (yìn) to shelter, 136  
 廖/廖 (Liào), 132  
 廚師/厨师 (chú shī) cook, 104  
 廢話/废话 (fèi huà) garbage talk, 82

廷/廷 (tíng) monarch's court, 139  
 建立/建立 (jiàn lì) to build up, 42  
 弄/弄 (nòng) make, 124  
 弋/弋 (yì) stake, 4  
 式/式 (shì) form, 112  
 引號/引号 (yǐn hào) quotation marks, 111  
 張/张 (Zhāng) to spread, 132  
 張/张 (zhāng) to spread, 35  
 張望/张望 (zhāng wàng) to look around, 47, 48  
 形容/形容 (xíng róng) describe, 109  
 形容/形容 (xíng róng) to describe, 35  
 形聲/形声 (xíng shēng) phonetic compound, 3  
 形象/形象 (xiàng xiàng) image, 42  
 彬彬/彬彬 (bīn bīn) Bin-Bin, 7  
 彭/彭 (Péng), 132  
 影子/影子 (yǐng zi) shadow, 63  
 彼此/彼此 (bǐ cǐ) each other, 81  
 往/往 (wǎng) toward, 88  
 待/待 (dài) to wait for, 66  
 待/待 (dài) to wait for, 77  
 很/很 (hěn) early, 61, 70  
 很/很 (hěn) very, 104  
 很/很 (hěn) very, 78, 79, 128, 129  
 後/后 (hòu) after, 69  
 後/后 (hòu) behind, 70  
 後天/后天 (hòu tiān) day after tomorrow, 66  
 後邊/后边 (hòu biān) back side, 88  
 徐/徐 (Xú) slowly; gently; calmly, 132  
 得/得 (dé) that, 102  
 得/得 (dé) to get, 55, 61  
 得/得 (dé) obtain, 126  
 得/得 (dé) to get, 94  
 得/得 (dé) to obtain, 126  
 得/得 (dé) to the extent that, 128  
 得/得 (de) (to the extent of), 61, 94  
 得/得 (de) (to the extent that), 61, 64, 74, 95  
 得/得 (de) that, 102  
 得/得 (de) to the extent, 61  
 得/得 (de) to the extent of, 7, 62  
 得/得 (de) to the extent that, 61, 62, 70  
 得意/得意 (dé yì) pleased with oneself, 45

得意/得意 (dé yì) full of oneself, 97  
 從/从 (cóng) from, 43, 48  
 從來/从来 (cóng lái) always, 72  
 從此/从此 (cóng cǐ) from now on, 70  
 微/微 (wēi) tiny, 143  
 微分/微分 (wēi fēn) differential, 144, 145  
 德/德 (dé) virtue, 134  
 心/心 (xīn) heart, 97, 99, 100  
 心/心 (xīn) heart, 126, 137  
 心地/心地 (xīn dì) moral character, 91  
 心情/心情 (xīn qíng) mood, 93  
 心窩/心窝 (xīn wō) heart of hearts, 129  
 忙/忙 (máng) busy, 102  
 忠/忠 (zhōng) faithful; devoted, 136  
 忠厚/忠厚 (zhōng hòu) honest and kind, 96  
 忠誠/忠诚 (zhōng chéng) faithfulness, 96  
 快/快 (kuài) almost, 59, 60  
 快樂/快乐 (kuài lè) happy, 72  
 快樂/快乐 (kuài lè) happiness, 130  
 快樂/快乐 (kuài lè) happy, 91, 93  
 念/念 (niàn) to miss; to long for, 137  
 忽然/忽然 (hū rán) suddenly, 71  
 怎樣/怎样 (zě yàng) how, 39  
 怎麼/怎么 (zě me) how, 64, 93  
 怎麼/怎么 (zě me) how, 36  
 怕/怕 (pà) to fear, 74, 102  
 思/思 (sī) think, 98  
 思/思 (sī) to think, 138  
 怡/怡 (yí) harmony; jubilation, 137  
 急/急 (jí) urgent, 70  
 急忙/急忙 (jí máng) hurriedly, 48, 70  
 怦/怦 (pēng) eager, 135  
 性/性 (xìng) property, 148  
 怪物/怪物 (guài wù) monster, 57  
 恐/恐 (kǒng) dread, 123  
 恨/恨 (hèn) hate, 124  
 恩/恩 (ēn) grace; kindness, 137  
 恩典/恩典 (ēn diǎn) grace, 126  
 恩惠/恩惠 (ēn huì) mercy; grace, 126  
 恬/恬 (tián) quiet; undis-

turbed, 137  
 悉/悉 (xī) to know, 135  
 悟/悟 (wù) to become aware of; to realize, 135  
 悠閑/悠閑 (yōu xián) leisurely, 60  
 悠閒/悠閒 (yōu xián) leisurely, 101  
 悲/悲 (bēi) sadness, 124  
 悲傷/悲伤 (bēi shāng) sorrow, 92  
 悶/悶 (mèn) melancholy, 92  
 情/情 (qíng) sentiment, 97, 99, 100  
 情/情 (qíng) feelings; love, 137  
 情況/情况 (qíng kuàng) situation, 46  
 惟/惟 (wéi) to think; to meditate, 135  
 惟妮/惟妮 (wéi ní) Winnie, 100  
 惡/惡 (è) evil, 37  
 想/想 (xiǎng) like, 100  
 想/想 (xiǎng) think, 98  
 想/想 (xiǎng) to think, 97, 98  
 想/想 (xiǎng) would like to, 41  
 想要/想要 (xiǎng yào) would like to, 100  
 愈/愈 (yù) more, 43, 73  
 愉/愉 (yú) happy; contented, 138  
 愉/愉 (yú) happy; joyful, 137  
 愛/愛 (ài) love, 22, 96  
 愛/愛 (ài) love, 129  
 愛/愛 (ài) love, 47  
 愛/愛 (ài) love, 130  
 愛/愛 (ài) to love, 136  
 感/感 (gǎn) to feel, 42  
 感冒/感冒 (gǎn mào) to catch a cold, 7  
 感謝/感谢 (gǎn xiè) to thank, 41  
 慈/慈 (cí) kind; loving, 136  
 慌亂/慌乱 (huāng luàn) in a flurry, 70  
 慎/慎 (shèn) cautious; prudent, 135  
 慕/慕 (mù) to long for; to adore, 135  
 慧/慧 (huì) wisdom, 140  
 慧/慧 (huì) wise, 136  
 慷/慷 (kāng) unselfish, 134  
 懂/懂 (dǒng) understand, 23  
 懂/懂 (dǒng) to understand, 136  
 懇/懇 (kěn) sincere, 136  
 應有/应有 (yīng yǒu) deserved, 124  
 應該/应该 (yīng gāi) should, 42  
 懶惰/懒惰 (lǎn duò) lazy, 101  
 戀/恋 (liàn) to be in love, 137  
 戈/戈 (Gē) spear; lance, 132  
 成/成 (Chéng) completed; accomplished, 132  
 成功/成功 (chéng gōng) success, 74, 102  
 我/我 (wǒ) I, 22, 23, 29, 39, 41, 42, 51, 53, 56, 62, 71, 73, 93, 98–100, 102, 103  
 我/我 (wǒ) me, 98, 99  
 我/我 (wǒ) I, 48, 78, 79, 81, 85, 120, 121, 123, 126, 129, 130  
 我/我 (wǒ) my, 126, 129  
 我們/我们 (wǒ mén) we, 29  
 我們/我们 (wǒ men) we, 38  
 我愛/我爱 (wǒ ài) my love, 128  
 我才/我才 (wǒ cái) I myself, 31  
 我的/我的 (wǒ de) my, 22, 30, 71  
 我的/我的 (wǒ de) my, 120, 128, 129  
 戰/战 (Zhàn) war, 133  
 戴/戴 (Dài) to wear, 131  
 戶/戶 (hù) door, 32  
 戶/戶 (hù) door, 124  
 房/房 (Fáng) house, 132  
 房子/房子 (fáng zi) house, 33  
 所有/所有 (sǒu yǒu) all, 94  
 所有/所有 (sǒu yǒu) to possess, 110  
 所有/所有 (sǒu yǒu) possess, 130  
 手/手 (shǒu) hand, 31  
 手指/手指 (shǒu zhǐ) finger, 120  
 才/才 (cái) only then, 74, 102  
 才/才 (cái) gifted person, 137  
 才/才 (cái) just, 81  
 才不/才不 (cái bù) just don't, 57  
 才能/才能 (cái néng) so as to, 38, 39  
 打/打 (dǎ) beat, 41  
 打/打 (dǎ) hit, 55  
 打/打 (dǎ) to beat, 105  
 打/打 (dǎ) to hit, 104  
 打/打 (dǎ) beat, 77  
 打呼/打呼 (dǎ hū) snore, 104  
 打開/打开 (dǎ kāi) to open, 40  
 扶/扶 (fú) to support, 134  
 找到/找到 (zhǎo dào) to find, 56  
 技/技 (jì) skill, 101  
 把/把 (bǎ), 8, 55, 60  
 把/把 (bǎ) handle, 31  
 把/把 (bǎ) of, 51

把/把 (bǎ), 82, 89, 120  
 把/把 (bǎ) handle, 22  
 把酒/把酒 (bǎ jiǔ) hold a wine glass, 123  
 抓/抓 (zhūa) grabbed, 55  
 抖/抖 (dǒu) to tremble, 62  
 抬走/抬走 (tái zǒu) to carry away, 89  
 抱歉/抱歉 (bào qiàn) apologize, 80  
 拉/拉 (lā) to pull, 129  
 拓/拓 (tuò) open, 145  
 拓撲/拓扑 (tuò pù) topology, 147  
 拔/拔 (bá) to pull out, 61, 95  
 拔/拔 (bá) to uproot, 22  
 拖/拖 (tuō) to drag, 74  
 拘束/拘束 (jū shù) awkward, 128  
 招呼/招呼 (zhāo hū) call, 77  
 拯/拯 (zhěng) to save; to deliver, 136  
 拼命/拼命 (pīn mìng) desperately, 63, 64  
 拼音/拼音 (pīn yīn) pinyin, 18  
 拿/拿 (ná) take, 56  
 拿/拿 (ná) to take, 73  
 指事/指事 (zhǐ shì) ideograph, 3  
 捉了/捉了 (zhuō le) caught, 120  
 捉弄/捉弄 (zhuō nòng) to play a joke on, 42  
 捍/捍 (hàn) to defend, 134  
 捷/捷 (jié) swift, 134  
 探望/探望 (tàn wàng) to look about, 43, 47, 48  
 推/推 (tuī) to push, 31  
 推理/推理 (tuī lǐ) logic, 144  
 插/插 (chā) to stick into, 129  
 揚/扬 (Yáng) to raise, 132  
 援/援 (yuán) to lead; to rescue, 136  
 搬走/搬走 (bān zǒu) to move away, 89  
 搗/搗 (wǔ) to cover, 84  
 摔/摔 (shuāi) to fall, 62  
 摯/摯 (Zhì) sincere, 133  
 撲/扑 (pū) beat, 145  
 擁有/拥有 (yǒng yǒu) to have, 129  
 擋/挡 (dǎng) to block, 129  
 操作/操作 (cāo zuò) to operate, 46  
 擔心/担心 (dān xīn) worried, 92  
 據/据 (Jù) proof, 134  
 擠/挤 (jǐ) almost, 60  
 擴/扩 (kuò) to expand, 136  
 放走/放走 (fàng zǒu) release, 120

放鬆/放松 (fàng sōng) to release, 130  
 教授/教授 (jiào shòu) professor, 103  
 敢/敢 (gǎn) to dare; bold, 136  
 散/散 (sàn) to come loose, 105, 106  
 散心/散心 (sàn xīn) relax, 105, 106  
 敦/敦 (dūn) honest; to deepen, 134  
 敬畏/敬畏 (jìng wèi) to hold in awe, 126  
 敲門/敲门 (qiāo mén) to knock at the door, 7  
 數/数 (shù) number, 144  
 數學/数学 (shù xué) mathematics, 143, 144  
 數論/数论 (shù lùn) number theory, 145  
 文/文 (wén) a composition; culture, 138  
 文法/文法 (wén fǎ) grammar, 109, 111  
 斐/斐 (Fěi) elegant; beautiful, 132  
 斑馬/斑马 (bān mǎ) zebra, 34  
 新/新 (xīn) new; fresh, 135  
 方/方 (Fāng) square, 131  
 方程/方程 (fāng chéng) equation, 144, 145  
 於/于 (Yú) in, 134  
 於是/于是 (yú shì) thus, 38  
 施/施 (Shī) to carry out, 132  
 旖/旖 (yǐ) romantic; tender, 137  
 既/既 (jì) as, 126  
 旦/旦 (dàn) daybreak, 136  
 早/早 (zǎo) early, 61, 70  
 旭/旭 (xù) radiance of daybreak, 135  
 旺/旺 (wàng) prosperous, 135  
 昆/昆 (kūn) elder brother, 135  
 昌/昌 (chāng) proper; good, 134  
 明/明 (Míng) Míng Dynasty, 152  
 明/明 (míng) bright; brilliant, 135  
 明/明 (míng) bright, 66, 123, 138  
 明天/明天 (míng tiān) tomorrow, 77  
 明年/明年 (míng nián) next year, 66  
 易/易 (Yì) to exchange, 133  
 星/星 (xīng) star, 140  
 星期/星期 (xīng qī) week, 65–68  
 春/春 (chūn) spring, 136

昨/昨 (zúo) yesterday, 66  
 昨天/昨天 (zúo tiān) yesterday, 39  
 昭/昭 (zhāo) clear, 139  
 是/是 (shì) are, 128–130  
 是/是 (shì) is, 74  
 是/是 (shì) is, 37–39, 56, 68, 69, 103  
 是/是 (shì) is, 120, 121, 123  
 是/是 (shì) that, 126  
 時/时 (shí) time, 7  
 時/时 (shí) time, 73, 74  
 時/时 (shí) time, 126  
 時候/时候 (shí hòu) time, 71  
 時態/时态 (shí tài) tense (grammar), 112  
 時間/时间 (shí jiān) time, 32  
 時間/时间 (shí jiān) time, 65, 102  
 晉/晋 (jìn) to advance, 134  
 晏/晏 (Yàn) clear, 133  
 晚安/晚安 (wǎn ān) good night, 77  
 晚餐/晚餐 (wǎn cān) dinner, 39, 102  
 晤/晤 (wù) to meet; enlightened; wise, 135  
 晨/晨 (chén) morning; daybreak, 134  
 景/景 (Jǐng) scenery, 133  
 景/景 (jǐng) a view, 140  
 晴/晴 (qíng) clear, 124  
 晴/晴 (qíng) fine; fair, 137  
 智/智 (Zhì) capable; wisdom, 133  
 暉/晖 (hūi) radiant, 134  
 暗/暗 (àn) dark, 59  
 暢/畅 (chàng) smoothly; fluently, 134  
 暢通/畅通 (chàng tōng) freely flowing, 129  
 曇/曇 (tán) clouds, 137  
 曉/晓 (xiǎo) daybreak; dawn, 137  
 書/书 (shū) book, 31, 151  
 書桌/书桌 (shū zhuō) desk, 35  
 曹/曹 (Cáo) (a plural particle), 131  
 曼/曼 (màn) delicately beautiful; graceful, 137  
 曼/曼 (màn) graceful, 139  
 曾/曾 (Zēng) (a 4th generation relationship), 132  
 曾/曾 (Zēng) 3 generation difference, 133  
 曾經/曾经 (céng jīng) once, 62  
 最後/最后 (zuì hòu) last, 74  
 最後/最后 (zuì hòu) last, 89  
 會/会 (huì) able, 79, 84, 85,

130  
 會兒/会儿 (huǐ) to meet together, 77  
 會意/会意 (huì yì) understanding, 3  
 月/月 (yùe) the moon, 65, 66  
 月/月 (yùe) moon, 123, 124  
 月/月 (yùe) the moon, 137  
 有/有 (yǒu) has, 22  
 有/有 (yǒu) have, 37, 45, 74, 92, 102  
 有/有 (yǒu) have, 118, 119, 123, 124, 128  
 有/有 (yǒu) to have, 81  
 朋友/朋友 (péng yǒu) friend, 69  
 朗/朗 (lǎng) bright, 139  
 望/望 (wàng) to watch; to hope, 138  
 朝/朝 (zhāo) morning, 136  
 木/木 (mù) wood/tree, 4  
 木屋/木屋 (mù wū) cottage, 31  
 木琴/木琴 (mù qín) xylophone, 22  
 未來/未来 (wèi lái) coming, 112  
 未來式 (future tense), 46  
 本/本 (běn) stem, 31  
 本/本 (běn) root; source, 137  
 朱/朱 (Zhū) bright red, 132  
 朱/朱 (zhū) bright red, 124  
 朵/朵 (duǒ) (quantifier), 32  
 朵/朵 (duǒ) flower, 136  
 李/李 (Lǐ) plum tree, 140  
 李/李 (Lǐ) plums, 132  
 杜/杜 (Dù) to plug, 131  
 杞/杞 (qǐ) a species of willow, 135  
 杰/杰 (jié) outstanding, 134  
 東西/东西 (dōng xī) things, 59  
 杳/杳 (yǎo) deep and expansive, 135  
 松鼠/松鼠 (sōng shǔ) squirrel, 71  
 枕頭/枕头 (zhěn tóu) pillow, 8  
 林/林 (Lín) forest, 132  
 林/林 (lín) forest, 4  
 柏/柏 (Bó) cypress, 140  
 柔/柔 (róu) soft and tender, 137  
 查/查 (Zhā), 134  
 查裡/查里 (chá lǐ) Charlie, 39  
 柯/柯 (Kē) tall evergreen tree, 133  
 柳/柳 (Liǔ) willow tree, 133  
 柳條/柳条 (liǔ tiáo) willow twig, 32  
 柴/柴 (chái) firewood, 44  
 栗/栗 (Lì) chestnut tree, 133

根/根 (gēn) roots, 32  
 根本/根本 (gēn běn) ultimately, 55  
 格/格 (gé) style, 110  
 格/格 (gé) checks, 22  
 桂/桂 (Guì) , 133  
 桃子/桃子 (táo zi) peach, 73  
 梁/梁 (Liáng) bridge, 132  
 梁/梁 (liáng) roof beam, 139  
 梅/梅 (Méi) prunes, 133  
 條/条 (tiáo) long strip, 34  
 條件/条件 (tiáo jiàn) conditions, 38  
 梧/梧 (wú) a support, 135  
 梳子/梳子 (shū zi) comb, 31  
 梵/梵 (fàn) clean and pure, 137  
 棟/栋 (dòng) main beam, 31  
 森/森 (sēn) luxuriant vegetation, 135, 140  
 森/森 (sēn) trees, 4  
 棵/棵 (kē) (quantifier), 33  
 楊/杨 (Yáng) poplar, 133, 139  
 楚/楚 (Chǔ) , 132  
 榮/荣 (róng) glory; honor, 135  
 樂/乐 (Yùe) music, 133  
 樂/乐 (lè) joyous, 92  
 樂/乐 (lè) happy, 138  
 樂/乐 (yào) to love, 137  
 樂園/乐园 (lè yuán) paradise, 130  
 樊/樊 (Fán) bird cage, 132  
 樓/楼 (lóu) building, 123, 128  
 標點/标点 (biāo diǎn) punctuation, 111  
 樣/样 (yàng) shape, 93  
 樹/树 (shù) tree, 33, 71, 73  
 樹支/树枝 (shù zhī) branch, 32  
 機/机 (jī) alert, 98  
 機率/机率 (jī lǜ) probability, 145  
 櫻/樱 (yīng) cherry;cherry blossoms, 137  
 欣/欣 (xiān) glad, 137  
 欣/欣 (xiān) glad;joyful, 137  
 欲/欲 (yù) desire, 123  
 款/款 (kuǎn) sincerity, 136  
 歌/歌 (gē) song, 22  
 歌唱/歌唱 (gē chàng) to sing, 103  
 歎/歎 (tàn) sigh, 42  
 歐洲/欧洲 (ōu zhōu) Europe, 54  
 歡/欢 (hūan) cheerful, 124  
 歡樂/欢乐 (hūan lè) joy, 96  
 歡迎/欢迎 (hūan yíng) welcome, 81  
 正/正 (zhèng) in the process of, 71, 73

正/正 (zhèng) proper, 136  
 正在/正在 (zhèng zài) in the process of, 50  
 此/此 (cǐ) these, 124  
 武/武 (Wǔ) military, 132  
 歲/岁 (suì) years of age, 71  
 歲/岁 (suì) a year of age, 79  
 歸去/归去 (guī qù) go back to, 123  
 段/段 (Dùan) , 138  
 段/段 (Dùan) a section, 131  
 段/段 (dùan) paragraph, 32  
 殷/殷 (yīn) flourishing, 136  
 毅/毅 (yì) firm; endurance; fortitude, 136  
 母牛/母牛 (mǔ niú) cow, 44  
 母親/母亲 (mǔ qīn) mother, 22  
 比/比 (bǐ) to compare, 43, 73  
 比賽/比赛 (bǐ sài) competition, 22  
 毛/毛 (Máo) hair, 132  
 毛巾/毛巾 (máo jīn) towel, 34  
 民/民 (mín) the people, 135  
 氣/气 (qì) air, 92, 93  
 氣極/气极 (qì jí) extremely angry, 92  
 水/水 (Shuǐ) water, 133  
 水/水 (shuǐ) water, 3, 60  
 永遠/永远 (yǒng yuǎn) always, 38  
 永遠/永远 (yǒng yuǎn) forever, 70  
 求/求 (qiú) ball, 55  
 汗/汗 (hàn) sweat, 102  
 江/江 (Jiāng) river, 131  
 池塘/池塘 (chí táng) pond, 60  
 汪/汪 (Wāng) pool of water, 132  
 決定/决定 (jué dìng) to resolve, 42  
 決定/决定 (jué dìng) to decide, 72  
 決心/决心 (jué xīn) determination, 96, 99  
 汽車/汽车 (qì chē) car, 33  
 沈/沈 (Shěn) , 132  
 沒/没 (méi) no, 40, 56, 72, 105  
 沒/没 (méi) not, 63  
 沒/没 (méi) not (have), 53, 54  
 沒/没 (méi) not yet, 70  
 沒/没 (méi) no, 95  
 沒/没 (méi) not, 80  
 沒命/没命 (méi mìng) lose life, 59  
 沒有/没有 (méi yǒu) not have, 37, 57, 63, 64, 72, 102  
 沒有/没有 (méi yǒu) not have, 80

沛/沛 (pèi) abundance, 135  
 沮喪/沮丧 (jǔ sàng) depressed, 91  
 油燈/油灯 (yóu dēng) oil lamp, 34  
 泉/泉 (Quán) spring; fountain, 133  
 泓/泓 (hóng) deep, 134  
 法/法 (fǎ) the law, 111  
 泛函/泛函 (fàn hán) function, 144  
 注音/注音 (zhù yīn) ZhuYin, 18, 152  
 決/决 (yāng) great; profound, 135  
 洗/洗 (Xiǎn) , 133  
 洗/洗 (xi) wash, 99, 100  
 洗/洗 (xǐ) wash, 64  
 洞/洞 (dòng) hole, 48  
 洪/洪 (Hóng) a flood, 131  
 洪/洪 (hóng) flood, 138  
 活魚/活鱼 (huó yú) live fish, 120  
 流/流 (liú) to flow; mobile, 135  
 海狸/海狸 (hǎi lí) beaver, 73  
 涯/涯 (yá) water's edge, 135  
 淨/淨 (jìng) pure, 137  
 深深 (shēn) profound, 128  
 淳/淳 (chún) pure; clean; simple, 136  
 添/添 (tiān) to increase, 135  
 淼/淼 (miǎo) extensive;vast, 135  
 清/清 (qīng) pure; virtuous, 135  
 清影/清影 (qīng yǐng) pure shadow, 124  
 清晨/清晨 (qīng chén) early morning, 68  
 清楚/清楚 (qīng chǔ) clear, 128  
 減/减 (jiǎn) subtract, 146  
 減法/减法 (jiǎn fǎ) subtraction , 146  
 渡/渡 (dù) to cross, 134  
 港/港 (gǎng) a port, 131, 140  
 渴/渴 (kě) thirsty, 39, 40, 62  
 游/游 (yóu) to swim, 60  
 渺/渺 (miǎo) endlessly vast, 135  
 渾身/浑身 (hún shēn) entire body, 61  
 湖/湖 (Hú) lake, 134  
 湖邊/湖边 (hú biān) lake side, 106  
 湛/湛 (Zhàn) deep; profound, 133  
 湯/汤 (Tāng) hot water; soup, 133  
 湯姆/汤姆 (tāng mǔ) Tom, 41, 57, 71



源頭/源头 (yuán tóu) fountainhead, 130  
 準時/准时 (zhǔn shí) on time, 70  
 溥/溥 (Pǔ) great; wide; vast, 133  
 溪/溪 (xī) mountain stream, 135  
 溫/温 (Wēn) warm, 133  
 滾/滚 (gǔn) to roll, 82  
 滿/满 (mǎn) full, 102  
 滿/满 (mǎn) full; plentiful, 135  
 漂亮/漂亮 (piào liàng) pretty, 98, 99  
 漢/汉 (Hàn) the Han people, 152  
 漢語/汉语 (hàn yǔ) Chinese, 18  
 漸漸/渐渐 (jiàn jiàn) gradually, 97  
 潔/洁 (jié) pure, 136  
 潘/潘 (Pān) water, 132  
 潤/润 (rùn) moist, 140  
 潭/潭 (tán) deep water; profound, 135  
 澗/涧 (jiàn) mountain stream, 136  
 澳/澳 (ào) deep waters, 134  
 濕/湿 (shī) wet, 40  
 瀏/浏 (liú) the appearance of a clear stream, 136  
 瀑/瀑 (bào) sudden pouring rain, 136  
 火/火 (huǒ) fire, 134  
 灰/灰 (huī) grey, 102  
 灰心/灰心 (huī xīn) discouraged, 91  
 灰熊/灰熊 (huī xióng) grizzly bear, 69  
 炯/炯 (jiǒng) brightness, 134  
 炳/炳 (bǐng) bright; luminous, 134  
 為/为 (wèi) for, 36  
 為/为 (wèi) for, 120  
 烈/烈 (liè) fiery, 135  
 烏/乌 (Wū) crow; raven, 133  
 烏鴉/乌鸦 (wū yā) crow, 40, 48, 60, 63  
 烏鴉/乌鸦 (wū yā) crow, 89  
 無/无 (wú) without, 105  
 無/无 (wú) without, 124  
 無聊/无聊 (wú liáo) bored, 92  
 焦/焦 (jiāo) scorched, 133  
 焦急/焦急 (jiāo jí) anxious, 60  
 煥/煥 (huàn) shining, 134  
 照/照 (zhào) illuminate, 124  
 照/照 (zhào) to shine upon, 138  
 熊/熊 (Xióng) bear, 132  
 熊/熊 (xióng) bear, 75  
 熒/荧 (yíng) candle light, 136

熱心/热心 (rè xīn) warm-hearted, 96  
 熱愛/热爱 (rè ài) love, 96  
 燈/灯 (dēng) lamp; lantern, 134  
 燦/灿 (càn) bright and brilliant, 134  
 爪/爪 (zhǎo) claw/talon, 4  
 爬/爬 (pá) to climb, 71, 73, 75  
 爸/爸 (bà) dad, 22  
 爸爸/爸爸 (bà ba) dad, 31, 41, 106  
 爾/尔 (ěr) you, 141  
 片/片 (piàn) slice, 34  
 片刻/片刻 (piàn kè) brief moment, 106  
 片語/片语 (piàn yǔ) phrase, 111  
 牙刷/牙刷 (yá shuā) toothbrush, 35  
 牙醫/牙医 (yá yī) dentist, 104  
 牛/牛 (Niú) ox, 132  
 牛/牛 (niú) cow, 7, 34, 62  
 牧/牧 (mù) to shepherd, 135  
 狂風/狂风 (kuáng fēng) a very strong wind, 71  
 狄/狄 (Dí), 132  
 狼/狼 (láng) wolf, 42, 61–63, 95  
 狼/狼 (láng) wolves, 42  
 猛/猛 (Měng) bold; fierce, 134  
 猜想/猜想 (cāi xiǎng) to think so, 98  
 猩猩/猩猩 (xīng xīng) gorilla, 63  
 猶/犹 (Yóu) similar to, 133  
 獅子/狮子 (shī zi) lion, 34  
 玄/玄 (Xúan) far and obscure, 133  
 玉/玉 (Yù) precious stone, 133  
 玉宇/玉宇 (yù yǔ) splendid hall, 123  
 王/王 (Wáng) King, 152  
 王/王 (Wáng) king, 132, 139  
 王/王 (wàng) king, 118, 119  
 王子/王子 (wáng zǐ) prince, 55, 57  
 王子/王子 (wáng zi) prince, 94  
 玫/玫 (méi) rose, 137  
 玲/玲 (líng) tinklings of jade, 137  
 珊/珊 (shān) tinkling of jade, 137, 140  
 珍/珍 (zhēn) precious; rare, 137  
 珠/珠 (zhū) pearl, 137  
 班/班 (Bān) a grade, 132  
 現/现 (xiàn) present, 65

現/现 (xiàn) to emerge, 135  
 現在/现在 (xiàn zài) at present, 112  
 現在/现在 (xiàn zài) now, 68  
 現在式 (present tense), 46  
 球/球 (qiú) ball, 33  
 琅/琅 (láng) clean and white, 135  
 理/理 (lǐ) reason; logic, 135  
 琬/琬 (wǎn) (a kind of jade tablet), 138  
 琳/琳 (lín) beautiful jade, 140  
 瑛/瑛 (yīng) glitter of jade, 137  
 瑜/瑜 (yú) perfect gem, 137  
 瑞/瑞 (rùi) auspicious, 138  
 瑞/瑞 (rùi) lucky, 138  
 瑤/瑶 (yáo) precious jade, 137  
 瑯/瑯 (láng) pure and white, 135  
 瑰/瑰 (guī) fabulous; a kind of jasper, 136  
 璋/璋 (zhāng) an ancient jade ornament, 136  
 璋/璋 (zhāng) jade tablet, 138  
 瓊/琼 (qióng) fine jade, 137  
 瓊/琼 (qióng) jade, 123  
 甄/甄 (zhēn) potter's wheel, 138  
 甘/甘 (Gān) delicious, 132  
 甘/甘 (gān) sweet, 99, 100  
 甘甜/甘甜 (gān tián) sweet, 126  
 甜/甜 (tián) sweet; agreeable, 137  
 生/生 (shēng) to give birth, 131, 140  
 生氣/生气 (shēng qì) angry, 92  
 生氣/生气 (shēng qì) angry, 80  
 生活/生活 (shēng huó) life, 71  
 田/田 (Tián) agricultural land, 132  
 留心/留心 (liú xīn) to take heed, 128  
 畢/毕 (Bì) to complete, 132  
 番/番 (fān) a time, 75  
 番茄/番茄 (fān qié) tomato, 33  
 畫/画 (huà) picture, 32  
 畫/画 (huà) to draw, 51  
 當/当 (dāng) while, 73  
 當面/当面 (dāng miàn) in someone's presence, 41  
 疲/疲 (pí) tired, 105  
 疲憊/疲惫 (pí bèi) exhausted, 105

疼痛/疼痛 (téng tòng) a pain, 74, 102  
 瘦/瘦 (shòu) thin, 35, 44  
 登/登 (dēng) to ascend; to climb, 134  
 發抖/发抖 (fā dǒu) to shake, 61, 95  
 發抖/发抖 (fā dǒu) to shiver, 61  
 發現/发现 (fā xiàn) to discover, 40, 74  
 發音/发音 (fā yīn) pronunciation, 111  
 白/白 (Bái) white, 131  
 白/白 (bái) white, 64  
 白/白 (bǎi) white, 45  
 白/白 (bái) white, 139  
 百/百 (bǎi) 100, 114–116  
 的/的 (de), 120  
 的/的 (de) 's, 7, 60, 62, 63, 69, 71, 94, 97, 100, 106, 121, 128  
 的/的 (de) 's (possesses), 60  
 的/的 (de) ('s), 7, 30, 42–44, 74  
 的/的 (de) (adj), 37  
 的/的 (de) -ly, 60, 100  
 的/的 (de) of, 106  
 的/的 (de) to the extent of, 39  
 皇宮/皇宫 (huáng gōng) palace, 106  
 皓/皓 (hào) white and bright, 134  
 皙/皙 (xī) fair, white, 135  
 皮/皮 (Pí) skin; fur, 133  
 盈/盈 (yíng) to fill, 138  
 益/益 (yì) to increase, 136  
 盛/盛 (shèng) abundant; rich, 135  
 盞/盞 (zhǎn) small cup, 34  
 盡/尽 (jìn) exhausted, 97  
 盡/尽 (jìn) exhaust, 105  
 盡/尽 (jìn) exhausted, 105  
 盧/卢 (Lú) black, 132  
 盪/荡 (dàng) to swing, 43  
 盯/盯 (dīng) fix eyes on, 47  
 直到/直到 (zhí dào) until, 72  
 相/相 (xiāng) mutually, 96  
 相/相 (xiàng) to examine; to help, 138  
 相反/相反 (xiāng fǎn) on the contrary, 39  
 眉/眉 (Méi) eyebrows, 133  
 看/看 (kàn) see, 47, 54, 93  
 看/看 (kàn) to look at, 43, 59, 75  
 看/看 (kàn) to see, 47, 99  
 看/看 (kàn) to see, 128  
 看了/看了 (kàn le) saw, 95  
 看到/看到 (kàn dào) hear, 54  
 看到/看到 (kàn dào) see, 22,

48, 56, 63  
 看著/看着 (kàn zhe) look at, 47, 48  
 看見/看见 (kàn jiàn) to see, 126  
 真/真 (zhēn) real, 56  
 真/真 (zhēn) really, 42, 56  
 真/真 (zhēn) true, 126  
 眠/眠 (mián) sleep, 124  
 眼/眼 (yǎn) eye, 97  
 眼/眼 (yǎn) eye, 126  
 眼/眼 (yǎn) eyes, 122  
 睡/睡 (shuì) to sleep, 54, 104–106  
 睡著/睡着 (shuì zháo) to fall asleep, 8  
 睡覺/睡觉 (shuì jiào) sleep, 53, 104  
 督/督 (Dū) to oversee, 132  
 睦/睦 (mù) friendly; to be friend, 135  
 睿/睿 (ruì) wise and clever, 135  
 瞎/瞎 (xiā) blind, 126  
 瞪著/瞪着 (dèng zhe) glare at, 47  
 矗/矗 (chù) steep; lofty, 134  
 知/知 (zhī) know, 81  
 知/知 (zhī) knowledge, 138  
 短/短 (duǎn) short, 35  
 矮/矮 (ǎi) short, 35  
 石/石 (Shí) rocks, 132  
 石/石 (shí) stone, 139  
 石頭/石头 (shí tóu) stones, 129  
 砍掉/砍掉 (kǎn diào) to cut down, 73  
 砰/砰 (pēng) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 碩/硕 (shuò) great; large, 135  
 磷/磷 (lín) water flowing between stones, 135  
 祈/祈 (qí) to pray, 135  
 祖/祖 (Zǔ) grandfather; grandmother, 133  
 祥/祥 (xiáng) auspicious, 135  
 祺/祺 (qí) lucky, 138  
 禁/禁 (jīn) to endure, 136  
 福/福 (fú) good fortune; a blessing, 134  
 禧/禧 (xǐ) happiness; blessings, 138  
 禮/礼 (lǐ) courtesy, 135  
 禮物/礼物 (lǐ wù) gift, 32  
 禮貌/礼貌 (lǐ mào) manners, 80, 81  
 禮貌/礼貌 (lǐ mào) politeness, 79  
 禹/禹 (Yǔ), 134  
 秀/秀 (xiù) brilliant; beautiful; graceful, 137

秋/秋 (qiū) autumn, 139  
 秦/秦 (Qín) Qin Dynasty, 132  
 移動/移动 (yí dòng) to move, 88  
 程度/程度 (chéng dù) extent, 128  
 穆/穆 (Mù) peaceful; serene, 133  
 積分/积分 (jī fēn) integral, 143, 144  
 積木/积木 (jī mù) building blocks, 33  
 穎/颖 (yǐng) outstanding; remarkable, 138  
 穩/稳 (wěn) stable; steady, 135  
 空間/空间 (kōng jiān) space, 147  
 突然/突然 (tú rán) suddenly, 35, 71  
 窄/窄 (zhǎi) narrow, 35  
 窈/窈 (tiǎo) slender; charming, 137  
 立刻/立刻 (lì kè) immediately, 95  
 立刻/立刻 (lì kè) immediately, 61  
 站/站 (zhàn) to stand, 44, 87  
 章/章 (Zhāng) a piece of writing, 133  
 章魚/章鱼 (zhāng yú) octopus, 59  
 童/童 (Tóng) child, 133  
 笑/笑 (xiào) to laugh, 63  
 笑/笑 (xiào) to smile, 4  
 笑/笑 (xiào) to laugh, 83  
 符號/符号 (fú hào) symbol, 18  
 筆/笔 (bǐ) pen, 151  
 等/等 (děng) to wait, 75  
 等/等 (děng) to wait/not until, 75  
 等於/等于 (děng yú) equal, 146  
 筋/筋 (jīn) muscle, 105  
 答/答 (dá) to answer, 84  
 筷子/筷子 (kuài zi) chopsticks, 35  
 管/管 (Gǎn) tube; pipe, 133  
 簡/简 (Jiǎn) brief, 133  
 篆/篆 (háo) outstandingly intelligent, 134  
 籠子/笼子 (lóng zi) cage, 69  
 簫/箫 (yuè) a kind of flute, 137  
 粒/粒 (lì) granule, 33  
 精/精 (jīng) energy, 105  
 糊塗/糊涂 (hú tú) confused, 128  
 紅/红 (hóng) red, 89  
 納/纳 (Nà) to receive, 133

紙條/纸条 (zhǐ tiáo) slip of paper, **35**  
 素/素 (sù) pure white silk, **137**  
 累/累 (lèi) tired, **105**  
 累了/累了 (lèi le) tired, **91**  
 終於/终于 (zhōng yú) finally, **75, 106**  
 絃/絃 (xián) the string of a musical instrument, **137**  
 組合/组合 (zǔ hé) combination, **143**  
 結/结 (jiē) tough, **134**  
 絕對/绝对 (jué duì) absolutely, **130**  
 絢/绚 (xùan) bright and brilliant, **137**  
 給/给 (gěi) to give, **41**  
 統計/统计 (tǒng jì) compile statistics, **145**  
 絲/丝 (sī) silk, **137**  
 經理/经理 (jīng lǐ) manager, **103**  
 經過/经过 (jīng guò) to pass through, **75**  
 綠色/绿色 (lǜ sè) green, **37**  
 綠豆/绿豆 (lǜ dòu) mung beans, **99, 100**  
 維/维 (wéi) to hold fast, **135**  
 綺/绮 (qǐ) beautiful, **124**  
 綺/绮 (qǐ) beautiful; resplendent, **137**  
 綾/綾 (líng) very fine silk cloth, **137**  
 緊張/紧张 (jǐn zhāng) nervous, **92**  
 緋/绯 (fēi) scarlet; crimson, **137**  
 線性/线性 (xiàn xìng) linear, **144**  
 緬甸語 (Burmese), **46**  
 總/总 (zǒng) always, **56**  
 總是/总是 (zǒng shì) always, **97**  
 繼/继 (jì) to carry on, **134**  
 續/续 (xù) to continue; to renew, **138**  
 缺/缺 (quē) deficient, **124**  
 罪/罪 (zuì) guilt, **126**  
 置/置 (zhì) to place at, **110**  
 罵/骂 (mà) to scold, **22, 41**  
 羅/罗 (Lúo) thin light silk, **132**  
 美/美 (měi) beautiful, **137**  
 義/义 (Yì) justice, **134**  
 義大利語 (Italian), **46**  
 義/義 (xī) (a legendary ruler), **139**  
 羽/羽 (yǔ) feather; wing, **138**  
 翁/翁 (Wēng) father, **133**  
 翡/翡 (fěi) kingfisher; emerald, **137**  
 翼/翼 (yì) wings; to help, **136**

耀/耀 (yào) to shine; to dazzle, **138**  
 老/老 (lǎo) old, **43, 69, 73**  
 老/老 (lǎo) old, **118, 119**  
 老實/老实 (lǎo shí) honest, **96**  
 老師/老师 (lǎo shī) teacher, **103**  
 老板/老板 (lǎo bǎn) boss, **103**  
 老鼠/老鼠 (lǎo shǔ) mouse, **55**  
 老鼠/老鼠 (lǎo shǔ) mouse, **89**  
 考驗/考验 (kǎo yàn) to test, **128**  
 而且/而且 (ér qiě) but also, **41**  
 而且/而且 (ér qiě) furthermore, **39**  
 而且/而且 (ér qiě) and, **72**  
 而已/而已 (ér yǐ) that is all, **84**  
 耐/耐 (nài) to endure, **135**  
 耐力/耐力 (nài lì) endurance, **96**  
 耐心/耐心 (nài xīn) patience, **96**  
 耐性/耐性 (nài xìng) patience, **96, 97**  
 耳/耳 (ěr) ear, **122**  
 聊天/聊天 (liáo tiān) to chat, **69**  
 聊天/聊天 (liáo tiān) to chat, **82**  
 聞/闻 (Wén) to hear, **133**  
 聞/闻 (wén) smell, **47**  
 聲/声 (shēng) sound, **94**  
 聲音/声音 (shēng yīn) sound, **7**  
 聶/聂 (Niè), **133**  
 聽/听 (tīng) hear, **23**  
 聽/听 (tīng) listen, **47**  
 聽/听 (tīng) listen, **83**  
 聽到/听到 (tīng dào) hear, **54**  
 聽力/听力 (tīng lì) listening comprehension, **83**  
 聽著/听着 (tīng zhe) listen to, **83**  
 肄/肄 (yì) to study; to toil, **136**  
 肅/肃 (Sù) respectful; majestic, **133**  
 肚子/肚子 (dù zi) stomach, **7, 39, 62**  
 肩/肩 (jiān) to sustain, **136**  
 肩膀/肩膀 (jiān bǎng) shoulder, **122**  
 背後/背后 (bèi hòu) behind, **129**  
 胖/胖 (pàng) fat, **35, 60**  
 胡/胡 (Hú) to blunder, **131**  
 胡/胡 (hú) reckless, **32, 98**

胥/胥 (xū) together, **139**  
 能/能 (néng) can, **74, 102**  
 腫/肿 (zhǒng) swollen, **62**  
 腳/脚 (jiǎo) foot, **88**  
 腳步/脚步 (jiǎo bù) footstep, **128**  
 腳趾/脚趾 (jiǎo zhǐ) toe, **122**  
 腿/腿 (tuǐ) leg, **61**  
 腿/腿 (tuǐ) legs, **95**  
 膝/膝 (xī) knee, **122**  
 臉/脸 (liǎn) face, **62, 102**  
 臉/脸 (liǎn) face, **89**  
 臨/临 (Lín) to look down from above, **134**  
 自/自 (zì) self, **83, 84**  
 自反/自反 (zì fǎn) reflexive, **148**  
 自問/自问 (zì wèn) to ask oneself, **84**  
 自己/自己 (zì jǐ) one's own, **43**  
 自從/自从 (zì cóng) ever since, **69**  
 臺/台 (Tái) a lookout; an observatory, **133**  
 興/兴 (xīng) to rise; to thrive, **135**  
 興/兴 (xīng) cheerful; happy, **135**  
 興奮/兴奋 (xīng fèn) excited, **92**  
 興趣/兴趣 (xìng qù) interest, **92**  
 舉/举 (jǔ) to raise, **88**  
 舉手/举手 (jǔ shǒu) to raise hand, **88**  
 舊的/旧的 (jiù de) old, **37**  
 舌/舌 (shé) tongue, **83**  
 舒/舒 (Shū) to unfold, **135**  
 舞/舞 (wǔ) to dance, **137**  
 舞動/舞动 (wǔ dòng) to dance, **128**  
 舟/舟 (zhou) boat, **4**  
 舸/舸 (gě) barge, **22**  
 船/船 (chuán) boat, **4**  
 良/良 (liáng) fine; desirable, **135**  
 芝/芝 (Zhī), **133**  
 芬/芬 (fēn) fragrance; perfume, **136**  
 芭/芭 (bā) a fragrant plant, **136**  
 花/花 (Hua) flower, **133**  
 花/花 (hūa) flower, **32**  
 花園/花园 (hūa yuán) flower garden, **34**  
 花朵/花朵 (hūa duǒ) a flower, **51**  
 花朵/花朵 (hūa duǒ) flower, **128, 129**  
 花蜜/花蜜 (hūa mì) nectar, **72**

芳/芳 (fāng) fragrant; virtuous, 136  
 苗/苗 (Miáo) a sprout, 133  
 苦惱/苦惱 (kǔ nǎo) vexed, 91  
 英/英 (Yīng) a flower, 133  
 英語/英語 (yīng yǔ) English, 79, 84  
 茂/茂 (mào) exuberant, 135  
 范/范 (Fàn) , 139  
 范/范 (Fàn) bee, 131  
 茅/茅 (Máo) couch grass, 134  
 茜/茜 (qiàn) madder, 40  
 茫/茫 (máng) vast; boundless, 135  
 荀/荀 (Xún) , 133  
 草莓/草莓 (cǎo méi) strawberry, 33  
 莉/莉 (lì) white jasmine, 137  
 莊/庄 (Zhūang) solemn, 133  
 莫/莫 (Mò) not, 133  
 菁/菁 (jīng) the flower of the leek, 136  
 菲/菲 (fēi) fragrant, 136  
 萊特/萊特 (Lái tè) Wright, 62  
 萊特/萊特 (Lái tè) Wright, 141  
 萌/萌 (méng) to bud; to shoot forth, 135  
 萬/万 (Wàn) ten thousand, 132  
 萬/万 (wàn) 10<sup>4</sup>, 115, 116  
 葉/叶 (Yè) leaf, 132  
 著/着 (zháo) , 105  
 著/着 (zhe) (adv. part.), 47  
 著/着 (zhe) (adv. particle), 129  
 著/着 (zhe) (adverbial), 7  
 葛/葛 (Gě) , 133  
 董/董 (Dǒng) to oversee, 131  
 蒙/蒙 (méng) to receive, 126  
 莠/莠 (wèng) flourishing; lush, 138  
 蓓/蓓 (bèi) flower bud, 136  
 蓮/莲 (lián) lotus, 137  
 蔔/蔔 (bo) edible roots, 32  
 蔡/蔡 (Cài) a large turtle, 131  
 蔣/蒋 (Jiǎng) , 132, 139  
 蔭/荫 (yìn) shade, 136  
 蕙/蕙 (huì) fragrant orchid, 136  
 蕭/萧 (Xiāo) oxtail southern wood; respectful, 132  
 薈/荟 (huì) luxuriant growth, 136  
 薛/薛 (Xūe) (a kind of marsh grass), 132  
 藝/艺 (yì) art; skill, 136  
 藝術/艺术 (yì shù) art, 103  
 藹/蔼 (ǎi) exuberant; amiable, 137  
 蘇/苏 (Sū) , 132

蘋果/苹果 (píng guǒ) apple, 89  
 蘭/兰 (lán) orchid, 137  
 蘿/萝 (luó) creeping plant, 32  
 虎/虎 (hǔ) tiger, 78  
 虎/虎 (hǔ) brave, 134  
 處/处 (chù) a place, 128  
 處/处 (chù) place, 123  
 虛/虚 (xū) empty, 97  
 號/号 (hào) a mark, 111  
 號/号 (hào) number, 68, 69  
 蛋糕/蛋糕 (dàn gāo) cake, 57  
 蜜/蜜 (mì) honey, 137  
 蝴蝶/蝴蝶 (hú dié) butterfly, 35, 45, 51, 72  
 融/融 (róng) glowing, 135  
 螞蟻/蚂蚁 (mǎ yǐ) ant, 89  
 行/行 (xíng) to walk, 138  
 表情/表情 (biǎo qíng) facial expression, 94  
 表現/表现 (biǎo xiàn) to show, 81  
 袁/袁 (Yúan) the graceful look of a flowing robe, 132, 138  
 被/被 (bèi) by, 39, 73  
 被/被 (bèi) have been, 126  
 裕/裕 (yù) abundance; generous, 136  
 裡/里 (lǐ) inside, 43, 48, 69  
 裡/里 (lǐ) inside, 60, 118  
 裡拜/里拜 (lǐ bài) week, 66, 67  
 裡面/里面 (lǐ miàn) inside, 59  
 裴/裴 (Péi) the look of a flowing gown, 133  
 複/复 (fù) repeat, 144  
 要/要 (yào) to want, 51  
 要/要 (yào) want, 36, 41, 47, 53, 54, 56, 97, 100  
 要/要 (yào) will, 56  
 要/要 (yào) want, 81, 129  
 見/见 (jiàn) to see, 3, 4, 41, 59, 153  
 見/见 (jiàn) to see, 77  
 親/亲 (qīn) close, 96  
 親切/亲切 (qīn qiè) cordial, 80  
 覺/觉 (jiào) sleep, 104–106  
 覺得/觉得 (jué dé) feel, 93  
 解開/解开 (jiě kāi) to undo, 81  
 言/言 (yán) speech, 83  
 計算/计算 (jì suàn) arithmetic, 143  
 計較/计较 (jì jiào) to plan, 97  
 討厭/讨厌 (tǎo yàn) to dislike, 94  
 討厭/讨厌 (tǎo yàn) to loathe, 31, 92  
 討厭/讨厌 (tǎo yàn) to loathe, 89

討論/讨论 (tǎo lùn) to discuss, 82  
 許/许 (Xǔ) , 132  
 許多/许多 (xǔ duō) much, 41  
 詞/词 (cí) word, 35, 109, 110  
 詠/咏 (yǒng) to sing; to hum, 137  
 詩/诗 (shī) poetry, 138  
 該/该 (gāi) should, 81  
 詹/詹 (Zhān) verbosity, 133  
 誇獎/夸奖 (kūa jiǎng) to commend, 41  
 認真/认真 (rèn zhēn) conscientious, 101  
 認識/认识 (rèn shì) know, 79  
 語/语 (yǔ) language, 42  
 語/语 (yǔ) language, 83  
 語言/语言 (yǔ yán) language, 23, 111  
 誠/诚 (chéng) sincere; honest, 134  
 誠懇/诚恳 (chéng kěn) sincere, 96  
 誤會/误会 (wù huì) misunderstanding, 81  
 說/说 (shuō) say , 47  
 說/说 (shuō) speak, 98, 99  
 說/说 (shuō) to say, 56, 98  
 說/说 (shuō) say, 81  
 說/说 (shuō) speak, 79  
 說/说 (shuō) to say, 82, 83  
 誰/谁 (shéi) who, 36  
 課/课 (kè) lesson, 34  
 誼/谊 (yì) friendship, 138  
 調/调 (diào) tune, 56  
 談天/谈天 (tán tiān) to chat, 82, 83  
 談論/谈论 (tán lùn) to talk about, 82  
 請/请 (qǐng) please, 80  
 請/请 (qǐng) to request, 81  
 請問/请问 (qǐng wèn) excuse me, 37  
 請教/请教 (qǐng jiào) to consult, 37  
 諒/谅 (liàng) honest, 135  
 論/论 (lùn) theory, 145  
 謙/谦 (qiān) humble, 135  
 謙虛/谦虚 (qiān xū) humble, 96  
 講/讲 (jiǎng) speak, 84, 85  
 講話/讲话 (jiǎng huà) talk, 47  
 講話/讲话 (jiǎng huà) to talk, 82  
 謝/谢 (Xiè) to thank, 132, 139  
 謝/谢 (xiè) to thank, 78  
 謝謝/谢谢 (xiè xiè) thanks, 80, 81  
 譚/谭 (Tán) to talk, 132  
 警察/警察 (jǐng chá) police, 95



譽/誉 (yù) fame; honor, 136  
 變/变 (biàn) become, 145  
 變成/变成 (biàn chéng) become, 35  
 變數/变数 (biàn shù) variable, 144  
 讓/让 (ràng) let, 99  
 讓/让 (ràng) to cause, 128  
 谷/谷 (gǔ) valley, 134  
 豐/丰 (fēng) abundant, 134  
 象/象 (xiàng) elephant, 61  
 象形/象形 (xiàng xíng) pictograph, 3  
 豫/豫 (yù) comfort; to travel, 136  
 貓/猫 (māo) cat, 55  
 貝/贝 (Bèi) shells, 132  
 貝殼/贝壳 (bèi ké) shell, 33  
 貞/贞 (zhēn) chastity; pure, 137  
 負責/负责 (fù zé) to be in charge of, 31  
 財/财 (cái) wealth, 134  
 貪婪/贪婪 (tān lán) greedy, 60  
 貴/贵 (guì) high-placed, 134  
 貴/贵 (guì) valued, 139  
 費/费 (Fèi) expenditure, 132  
 賀/贺 (Hè) to congratulate, 131  
 賈/贾 (Jiǎ) ("gǔ=merchant), 131  
 賞賜/赏赐 (shǎng cì) award, 41  
 賢/贤 (xián) capable; versatile, 135  
 賣力/卖力 (mài lì) to exert, 64  
 賴/赖 (Lài) to rely on, 132  
 贊/赞 (zàn) to assist; to support, 136  
 贍/贍 (shàn) to provide, 135  
 贏/赢 (yíng) to win, 136  
 赦免/赦免 (shè miǎn) to pardon, 126  
 走/走 (zǒu) walk, 73  
 走/走 (zǒu) to walk, 78  
 走/走 (zǒu) walk, 87  
 走到/走到 (zǒu dào) walked, 106  
 起/起 (qǐ) to rise, 80  
 起/起 (qǐ) to start, 7  
 起/起 (qǐ) to rise, 71  
 起來/起来 (qǐ lái) to stand, 87  
 起來/起来 (qǐ lái) rise up, 93  
 起來/起来 (qǐ lái) to rise, 60  
 起舞/起舞 (qǐ wǔ) rise and dance, 124  
 超/超 (chāo) to exceed, 134  
 越/越 (Yüè) to go beyond, 133  
 越/越 (yüè) more, 43

趕/赶 (gǎn) to pursue, 136  
 趕緊/赶紧 (gǎn jiǎn) hurriedly, 70  
 趕走/赶走 (gǎn zǒu) kick out, 82  
 趙/赵 (Zhào) , 139  
 趙/赵 (Zhào) (an ancient feudal state), 132  
 跑/跑 (pǎo) ran, 95  
 跑/跑 (pǎo) run, 61, 63  
 跑/跑 (pǎo) run, 87  
 路/路 (Lù) road, 133  
 路/路 (lù) road, 34, 44  
 跳/跳 (tiào) jump, 87  
 踢/踢 (tī) kick, 87  
 身/身 (shēn) body, 43, 61, 95  
 身邊/身边 (shēn biān) side, 129  
 躲/躲 (duǒ) to hide, 74  
 車/车 (chē) wheeled devices, 31  
 車子/车子 (chē zi) vehicle, 31  
 軼/轶 (yì) to excel, 136  
 輕/轻 (qīng) light, 35  
 輕鬆/轻松 (qīng sōng) relaxed, 101  
 輛/辆 (liàng) (quantifier), 33  
 轉/转 (zhuǎn) revolve, 124  
 轉/转 (zhuǎn) to turn, 89  
 轉注/转注 (zhuǎn zhù) semantic derivation, 3  
 轉眼/转眼 (zhuǎn yǎn) in the twinkling of an eye, 70  
 轉身/转身 (zhuǎn shēn) to turn about, 87  
 辜/辜 (Gū) sin; crime, 133  
 辦法/办法 (bàn fǎ) way, 56  
 迪/迪 (dí) to progress, 134  
 逃/逃 (táo) to flee, 74  
 這/这 (zhè) these, 62  
 這/这 (zhè) this, 7, 65, 74  
 這/这 (zhè) this, 56  
 這些/这些 (zhè xiē) these, 35  
 這個/这个 (zhè ge) this, 106  
 這樣/这样 (zhè yàng) like this, 74  
 這裡/这里 (zhè lǐ) here, 99  
 這裡/这里 (zhè lǐ) here, 118  
 這麼/这么 (zhè me) like this, 38, 72  
 通/通 (tōng) through, 98  
 通到/通到 (tōng dào) to lead to, 89  
 連/连 (Lián) to connect, 133  
 連/连 (lián) even, 63, 95  
 連字/连字 (lián zì) a ligature, 111  
 連接/连接 (lián jiē) to join, 110  
 進/进 (jìn) to enter, 55  
 進/进 (jìn) to advance, 134

進/进 (jìn) to enter, 81  
 進來/进来 (jìn lái) to come in, 60  
 遂/遂 (suì) to satisfy; to fulfill, 135  
 過/过 (guò) to pass, 72, 104  
 過/过 (guò) to pass, 81, 134  
 過來/过来 (guò lái) to come over, 89  
 過去/过去 (guò qù) in the past, 112  
 過去/过去 (guò qù) to go over, 89  
 過去式 (past tense), 46  
 過著/过着 (guò zhe) to pass, 71  
 邁/迈 (qiú) strong; vigorous, 135  
 道/道 (dào) road, 138  
 道/道 (dào) road; path, 134  
 達/达 (dá) intelligent; understanding, 134  
 遲/迟 (Chí) late, 132  
 遲到/迟到 (chí dào) arrive late, 70  
 邁/迈 (mài) to surpass, 135  
 還/还 (hái) still, 38–41, 61, 70  
 還是/还是 (hái shì) nevertheless, 39  
 還是/还是 (hái shì) or, 38  
 還是/还是 (hái shì) still, 62  
 還是/还是 (hái shì) had better, 82  
 邊/边 (biān) side, 73–75  
 那/那 (nà) that, 130  
 那裡/那里 (nà lǐ) there, 118  
 那麼/那么 (nà me) so, 57  
 邱/邱 (Qū) hill, 132  
 邵/邵 (Shào) , 132  
 邸/邸 (Dǐ) residence of a high official, 133  
 郁/郁 (Yù) colorfully ornamented, 133  
 郝/郝 (Hǎo) (an ancient place), 131  
 部/部 (bù) part, 31  
 部首/部首 (bù shǒu) radical, 8  
 郭/郭 (Gūo) town, 131  
 都/都 (dōu) all, 38, 43, 56, 60, 63, 72, 97  
 都/都 (dōu) completely, 95  
 都/都 (dōu) all, 118, 129  
 鄒/邹 (Zōu) , 132  
 鄧/邓 (Dèng) , 131, 140  
 鄭/郑 (Chéng) , 139  
 鄭/郑 (Zhèng) solemn, 132, 139  
 醒來/醒来 (xǐng lái) to wake up, 104  
 醫生/医生 (yī shēng) doctor ,

103

醫生/医生 (yī shēng) doctor,

104

采/采 (cǎi) to pick, 105

重/重 (zhòng) heavy, 35

重音/重音 (zhòng yīn)

stress/accent, 111

野/野 (yě) wild, 42

野狼/野狼 (yě láng) wolves,

38

金/金 (jīn) gold, 132

鈕扣/钮扣 (niǔ kòu) clothing

button, 33

鋒/锋 (fēng) cutting edge of a sword, 139

錢/钱 (Qián) money, 132

錦/锦 (jǐn) glorious, 138

錫/锡 (xí) tin, 139

錯/错 (cuò) faults, 78

鍾/钟 (Zhōng) bell, 132

鎮定/镇定 (zhèn dìng) calm,

92

鏟子/铲子 (chǎn zi) shovel,

31

鏡子/镜子 (jìng zi) mirror, 33

鐘/钟 (zhōng) a bell, 68

鐸/铎 (Dúo) a large bell, 132

長/长 (cháng) long, 35

長/长 (cháng) strength, 101

長久/长久 (cháng jiǔ) long time, 125

長向/长向 (cháng xiàng) always, 124

門/门 (Mén) door, 133

門/门 (mén) door, 7

開始/开始 (kāi shǐ) since, 71

開始/开始 (kāi shǐ) to start, 71

開心/开心 (kāi xīn) joyful, 130

閒/閒 (xián) quiet; calm, 135

間/间 (jiān) period of time, 70

間/间 (jiān) room, 33

閣/阁 (gé) pavillion, 124

闊/阔 (kuò) wealthy, 136

關係/关系 (gūan xī) relation,

110

關係/关系 (gūan xì) relation,

80

關係/关系 (guān xì) relation,

146, 148

闡/阐 (chǎn) to make clear,

134

阮/阮 (Rǔan) (ancient musical instrument), 133

附近/附近 (fù jìn) nearby, 106

陟/陟 (zhì) to ascend, 136

除/除 (chú) divide, 146

除法/除法 (chú fǎ) division, 146

陰/阴 (yīn) overcast, 124

陳/陈 (Chén), 140

陳/陈 (Chén) to arrange, 131

陳/陈 (Chén) to lay out, 131, 140

陳/陈 (Chén) to layout, 140

陶/陶 (Táo) pottery, 133

陸/陆 (Lù) land, 132, 133

隆/隆 (lóng) prosperous; abundant, 135

隔壁/隔壁 (gé bì) next door,

69

隻/只 (zhī) single, 35

雁/雁 (yàn) wild goose, 137

雅/雅 (yǎ) refined; polished, 137

集合/集合 (jí hé) set, 146

雍/雍 (yōng) harmony; peaceful, 136

雖然/虽然 (suī rán) although, 38

雙元音 (diphthongs), 15

雞/鸡 (jī) chicken, 60

離/离 (lí) to leave, 72

離/离 (lí) apart, 124

離散/离散 (lí sàn) dispersed, 144

難/难 (nán) difficult, 124

難過/难过 (nán guò) sad, 91, 93

難道/难道 (nán dào) is it possible that, 37, 38

難道/难道 (nán dào) is it possible that ..., 37

雨/雨 (yǔ) rain, 138

雪/雪 (xuě) snow, 137

零/零 (líng) 0, 113

雷/雷 (Léi) thunder, 132

電梯/电梯 (diàn tī) elevator, 128

電腦/电脑 (diàn nǎo) computer, 34

電視/电视 (diàn shì) television, 34

需要/需要 (xū yào) need, 47

霆/霆 (tíng) sudden thunder, 139

霏/霏 (fēi) falling of snow and rain, 137

霓虹/霓虹 (ní hóng) neon light, 128

霖/霖 (lín) continuous heavy rain, 135

靈/灵 (líng) clever, 98

青/青 (qīng) blue, 62

青/青 (qīng) blue, 139

青天/青天 (qīng tiān) blue sky, 123

靖/靖 (jìng) peaceful, 134

靜/静 (jìng) tranquility, 137

非/非 (fēi) not, 56

靠/靠 (kào) to lean, 8

面/面 (miàn) face to face, 33

面目/面目 (miàn mù) face, 56

鞦韆/鞦韆 (qiū qiān) swing, 43

鞭子/鞭子 (biān zi) whip, 32

韋/韦 (Wéi) tanned leather, 132

韋得/韦得 (Wéi dé) Wilbur, 141

韓/韩 (Hán) fence, 131

音/音 (yīn) sound; musical note, 137

韶/韶 (sháo) a form of music; beautiful, harmonious, 137

韻/韵 (yùn) rhymes, 137

響/响 (xiǎng) sound, 7

頂/顶 (dǐng) the top, 134

須/须 (Xū) must, 133

預言/预言 (yù yán) prediction, 23

頓/顿 (dùn) pause, 32

頹/颓 (fǔ) to bow the head, 139

頭/头 (tóu) head, 8, 34, 43, 48, 102, 104

頭/头 (tóu) head, 120–122

頹/颓 (Túi) to crumble, 133

顏色/颜色 (yán sè) color, 43

願/愿 (yuàn) willing, 99

願/愿 (yuàn) willing, 99, 100

願意/愿意 (yuàn yì) to be willing, 99

願意/愿意 (yuàn yì) to wish, 47

顧/顾 (Gù) to turn around and look, 131

風/风 (fēng) wind; breeze, 137

風/风 (fēng) wind, 123, 129

風箏/风筝 (fēng zhēng) kite, 19

飄走/飘走 (piāo zǒu) to float away, 129

飛/飞 (fēi) fly, 45, 51

飛/飞 (fēi) to fly, 137

飛/飞 (fēi) fly, 87

飯/饭 (fàn) rice, 36

飽/饱 (bǎo) full, 54, 104, 105

養/养 (yǎng) raise, 118

餓/饿 (è) hungry, 7, 39, 40

餓/饿 (è) hungry, 62

饒/饶 (ráo) abundant, 135

香/香 (xiāng) sweet-smelling, 137

香蕉/香蕉 (xiāng jiāo) banana, 53

馥/馥 (fù) fragrant fragrance, 136

馬/马 (Mǎ) horse, 132

馬/马 (mǎ) horse, 34

馬/马 (mǎ) horse, 78

馬/马 (mǎ) horse, 22

馮/冯 (Féng), 131, 132, 138

馳/驰 (chí) to gallop, 140  
 駕/驾 (jià) to excel, 136  
 騎/骑 (qí) ride, 87  
 驕傲/骄傲 (jiāo ào) proud, 97  
 驚/惊 (jīng) to be startled, 94  
 驚嘆/惊叹 (jīng tàn) to marvel, 111  
 驚訝/惊讶 (jīng yà) surprised, 92  
 骨/骨 (gǔ) bone, 44  
 體/体 (tǐ) style, 152  
 體諒/体谅 (tǐ liàng) to show understanding for, 98  
 高/高 (Gāo) high; tall, 131  
 高/高 (gāo) high, 43  
 高/高 (gāo) tall, 35  
 高/高 (gāo) high, 123  
 高/高 (gāo) tall, 128  
 高興/高兴 (gāo xìng) glad, 61, 91, 94  
 高興/高兴 (gāo xìng) happy,

45  
 高興/高兴 (gāo xìng) glad, 79  
 鬆/松 (sōng) loose, 93  
 鬥/斗 (dòu) to struggle, 134  
 鬧鐘/闹钟 (nào zhōng) alarm clock, 64  
 魏/魏 (Wèi) lofty; stately, 132  
 魏/魏 (Wèi) lofty; stately; magnificent, 133  
 魏/魏 (Wèi) magnificent, 138  
 魚/鱼 (yú) fish, 34, 57  
 魯/鲁 (Lǔ) dull, 133  
 鮑/鲍 (Bào) abalone, 132  
 鳳/凤 (fèng) male phoenix, 136  
 鴻/鸿 (hóng) swan, 134  
 麗/丽 (lì) beautiful, 137, 140  
 麥/麦 (Mài) wheat; barley; oats, 133  
 麻/麻 (má) numbness, 22  
 麼/么 (ma) (for questions), 22

黃/黄 (Húang) yellow, 131  
 黃/黄 (huáng) yellow, 7  
 黃牛/黄牛 (huáng niú) cow, 60  
 黎/黎 (Lí) many, 138  
 黎/黎 (Lí) numerous, 133  
 黑/黑 (hēi) black, 63, 72  
 黛/黛 (dài) a beauty, 136  
 點/点 (diǎn) a dot, 68  
 點/点 (diǎn) drop, 84, 85  
 黠/黠 (xiá) smart; clever, 135  
 鼻/鼻 (bí) nose, 62  
 鼻/鼻 (bí) nose, 122  
 鼻塞/鼻塞 (bí sāi) stuffy nose, 22  
 齊/齐 (Qí) equal, 133  
 齊/齐 (Qí) orderly, 139  
 龍/龙 (Lóng) dragon, 132  
 龍/龙 (lóng) dragon, 140  
 龔/龚 (Gōng) reverential, 131



ér qiě (而且/而且) but also, 41  
 ér qiě (而且/而且) further-more, 39  
 shí (時/时) time, 7  
 shí jiān (時間/时间) time, 32  
 yí xià (一下/一下) a short while, 8  
 ā (啊/啊) (onomatopoeia), 5  
 āi (哎/哎) (onomatopoeia), 5  
 āi (唉/唉) alas, 94  
 ān níng (安寧/安宁) tranquility, 106  
 ē (婀/婀) graceful; elegant, 136  
 ō (喔/喔) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 /-xī yǐn (吸引/吸引) attract, 39  
 ài (愛/爱) love, 22, 96  
 è (惡/恶) evil, 37  
 è (餓/饿) hungry, 7, 39, 40  
 èn (嗯/嗯) Hmm, 39, 42  
 èr (二/二) two, 67  
 /yì qǐ (一起/一起) together, 43  
 /zì jǐ (自己/自己) one's own, 43  
 é (娥/娥) good; beautiful, 136  
 ní hóng (霓虹/霓虹) neon light, 128  
 pí (疲/疲) tired, 105  
 pí bèi (疲憊/疲惫) exhausted, 105  
 qí (騎/骑) ride, 87  
 shí tóu (石頭/石头) stones, 129  
 yí dòng (移動/移动) to move, 88  
 yí lù (一路/一路) all the way, 129  
 zhí dào (直到/直到) until, 72  
 chī (吃/吃) to eat, 73  
 chī lì (吃力/吃力) exhausting,

73  
 shī qù (失去/失去) to lose, 97  
 sī (思/思) think, 98  
 yī (一/一) one, 84  
 yīn sù (因素/因素) a cause, 128  
 zhī (之/之) ', 101  
 ài (愛/爱) love, 129  
 è (餓/饿) hungry, 62  
 shì (是/是) are, 128–130  
 shì (是/是) is, 74  
 yì (一/一) one, 75  
 yì ge (一個/一个) one, 89  
 yì shēn (一身/一身) whole body, 95  
 zì (自/自) self, 83, 84  
 zì wèn (自問/自问) to ask oneself, 84  
 ěr (爾/尔) you, 141  
 nǐ (你/你) you, 81, 89, 128–130  
 nǐ xīn (你心/你心) your heart, 129  
 qǐ (起/起) to rise, 80  
 qǐ (起/起) to start, 7  
 qǐ lái (起來/起来) to stand, 87  
 xǐ (洗/洗) wash, 99, 100  
 zhǐ (只/只) only, 74  
 zǐ (子/子) son, 4  
 (\_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_), 41  
 (\_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_) (complimentary verb), 55  
 (\_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_) (initial verb), 55  
 (\_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_), 40  
 (.../...), 71, 73  
 a (呀/呀), 60  
 áo (嗷/嗷) cry of hunger, 5  
 aǐ (矮/矮) short, 35  
 ài (愛/爱) love, 47

ān (安/安) peaceful, 137, 140  
 ān wèi (安慰/安慰) comfort, 126  
 ài (愛/爱) love, 130  
 ài (愛/爱) to love, 136  
 àn (岸/岸) shore, 75  
 àn (暗/暗) dark, 59  
 Ào (奧/奥) abstruse, 141  
 ào (奧/奥) mysterious; profound, 134  
 ào (澳/澳) deep waters, 134  
 aǐ (藹/藹) exuberant; amiable, 137  
 bá (拔/拔) to pull out, 61, 95  
 bá (拔/拔) to uproot, 22  
 bái (白/白) white, 64  
 bí (鼻/鼻) nose, 62  
 bí sāi (鼻塞/鼻塞) stuffy nose, 22  
 bú (不/不) not, 36–39, 53–56, 74, 92, 99, 100, 102, 109  
 bú dàn (不但/不但) not only, 39, 41, 69  
 bú shì (不是/不是) (either), 40, 41  
 bā yuè (八月/八月) August, 67  
 bā (八/八) 8, 4  
 bā (八/八) eight, 22, 71  
 bā (叭/叭) trumpet, 5  
 bā (吧/吧) (a particle), 5  
 bān mǎ (斑馬/斑马) zebra, 34  
 bēi shāng (悲傷/悲伤) sorrow, 92  
 bīn bīn (彬彬/彬彬) Bin-Bin, 7  
 bǎ (把/把), 8, 55, 60  
 bǎ (把/把) handle, 31  
 bǎ (把/把) of, 51  
 bǎi (白/白) white, 45  
 bǎo (保/保) to guard, 134



bǎo (保/保) to protect, 4  
 bǎo (飽/饱) full, 54, 104, 105  
 běn (本/本) stem, 31  
 bǐ (比/比) to compare, 43, 73  
 bǐ (筆/笔) pen, 151  
 bǐ sài (比賽/比赛) competition, 22  
 bà (爸/爸) dad, 22  
 bà ba (爸爸/爸爸) dad, 31, 41, 106  
 bàn fǎ (辦法/办法) way, 56  
 bàn sǐ (半死/半死) half to death, 39  
 bào zhǐ (報紙/报纸) newspaper, 32, 37  
 bèi (被/被) by, 39, 73  
 bèi ké (貝殼/贝壳) shell, 33  
 bì (嗶/哔) (onomatopoeia), 5  
 bìng (並/并) entirely, 57  
 bù (不/不) not, 23, 39, 42, 43, 53–56, 60–62, 64, 94, 98–100, 105  
 bù (部/部) part, 31  
 bù dàn (不但/不但) not only, 41  
 bù jīn (不禁/不禁) cannot refrain, 63  
 bù jīn (不僅/不仅) not only, 41  
 bù kě (不可/不可) not permissible, 56  
 bù ké (不可/不可) not permitted, 56  
 bù shí (不時/不时) from time to time, 72  
 bù shǒu (部首/部首) radical, 8  
 bù tíng (不停/不停) non-stop, 100  
 bù tíng (不停/不停) nonstop, 62, 63  
 Bái (白/白) white, 131  
 bái (白/白) white, 139  
 bí (鼻/鼻) nose, 122  
 bíe shí (別時/别时) time to leave, 124  
 bó (伯/伯) a count (nobility), 134  
 bó (博/博) extensive; abundant, 134  
 Bó (柏/柏) cypress, 140  
 bú (不/不) not, 59, 78, 81, 129  
 bú huì (不會/不会) unable, 130  
 bú yào (不要/不要) don't, 80, 89  
 bā (八/八) eight, 83, 120  
 bā (芭/芭) a fragrant plant, 136  
 Bān (班/班) a grade, 132

bān zǒu (搬走/搬走) to move away, 89  
 Bāo (包/包) to wrap, 132  
 bēi (悲/悲) sadness, 124  
 bā (八/八) 8, 113–115  
 bào (瀑/瀑) sudden pouring rain, 136  
 Bào (鮑/鲍) abalone, 132  
 bào qiàn (抱歉/抱歉) apologize, 80  
 bèi (備/备) completeness, 134  
 bèi (蓓/蓓) flower bud, 136  
 bèi (被/被) have been, 126  
 Bèi (貝/贝) shells, 132  
 bèi hòu (背後/背后) behind, 129  
 Bì (畢/毕) to complete, 132  
 bù (不/不) not, 80, 81, 84, 85, 124  
 bù guǎn (不管/不管) no matter, 129  
 bù mián (不眠/不眠) sleepless, 129  
 bù shēng (不勝/不胜) too, 123  
 bù xiū (不休/不休) endlessly, 129  
 bù zhī (不知/不知) wonder if, 123  
 bǎ (把/把), 82, 89, 120  
 bǎ jiǔ (把酒/把酒) hold a wine glass, 123  
 bǎi (佰/佰) hundred, 128  
 bǎi (百/百) 100, 114–116  
 bǎo guì (寶貴/宝贵) precious, 126  
 bǎo hù (保護/保护) to protect, 129  
 běn (本/本) root; source, 137  
 bǐ cǐ (彼此/彼此) each other, 81  
 Bǔ (卜/卜) to divine, 132  
 ba (吧/吧), 82  
 ba (吧/吧) (for suggestions), 22  
 biān (邊/边) side, 73–75  
 biān zi (鞭子/鞭子) whip, 32  
 biāo diǎn (標點/标点) punctuation, 111  
 biǎo qíng (表情/表情) facial expression, 94  
 biàn (便/便) thereupon, 38  
 biàn chéng (變成/变成) become, 35  
 bìng (並/并) entirely, 57  
 bié (別/别) don't, 80  
 bié rén (別人/别人) other people, 97  
 bīng (冰/冰) ice, 139  
 biàn (變/变) become, 145

biàn shù (變數/变数) variable, 144  
 biǎo xiàn (表現/表现) to show, 81  
 biǎng (炳/炳) bright; luminous, 134  
 bo (蔔/蔔) edible roots, 32  
 bǎ (把/把) handle, 22  
 cái (才/才) only then, 74, 102  
 cái bù (才不/才不) just don't, 57  
 cái néng (才能/才能) so as to, 38, 39  
 céng jīng (曾經/曾经) once, 62  
 cí (詞/词) word, 35, 109, 110  
 cóng (從/从) from, 43, 48  
 cóng cǐ (從此/从此) from now on, 70  
 cóng lái (從來/从来) always, 72  
 cāi xiǎng (猜想/猜想) to think so, 98  
 cāo zuò (操作/操作) to operate, 46  
 cūi zhe (催著/催着) urging, 100  
 cǎi (采/采) to pick, 105  
 cǎo méi (草莓/草莓) strawberry, 33  
 cái (才/才) gifted person, 137  
 cái (才/才) just, 81  
 cái (財/财) wealth, 134  
 Cáo (曹/曹) (a plural particle), 131  
 cí (慈/慈) kind; loving, 136  
 Cūi (催/催) high and steep, 131  
 Cài (蔡/蔡) a large turtle, 131  
 càn (燦/灿) bright and brilliant, 134  
 cuò (錯/错) faults, 78  
 cǐ (此/此) these, 124  
 chá lǐ (查裡/查里) Charlie, 39  
 chái (柴/柴) firewood, 44  
 cháng (長/长) long, 35  
 cháng (長/长) strength, 101  
 chéng bǎo (城堡/城堡) castle, 55  
 chéng gōng (成功/成功) success, 74, 102  
 chí dào (遲到/迟到) arrive late, 70  
 chí táng (池塘/池塘) pond, 60  
 chú shī (廚師/厨师) cook, 104  
 chuáng (床/床) bed, 35  
 chē (車/车) wheeled devices, 31  
 chē zi (車子/车子) vehicle, 31

chī (吃/吃) eat, 36, 39, 47, 53, 54, 57, 94, 102  
 chī (嗤/嗤) to sneer, 5  
 chī guò (吃過/吃过) eaten, 53  
 chī lì (吃力/吃力) exhausting, 43  
 chū (出/出) to exit, 42, 48, 95  
 chū lái (出來/出来) to come out, 73  
 chū mén (出門/出门) go out, 100  
 chū xiàn (出現/出现) to appear, 72  
 chū zǒu (出走/出走) to leave, 72  
 chǎn (闡/闡) to make clear, 134  
 chǎn zi (鏟子/铲子) shovel, 31  
 chà (差/差) difference, 59  
 chàng (唱/唱) sing, 56  
 chán (嬋/嬋) graceful; lady-like, 136  
 chán juān (嬋娟/娟娟) lovely, 125  
 Cháng (常/常) common; normal, 131  
 cháng (常/常) ordinary, 144  
 cháng jiǔ (長久/长久) long time, 125  
 cháng xiàng (長向/长向) always, 124  
 chén (晨/晨) morning; day-break, 134  
 Chén (陳/陈), 140  
 Chén (陳/陈) to arrange, 131  
 Chén (陳/陈) to lay out, 131, 140  
 Chén (陳/陈) to layout, 140  
 chéng (乘/乘) multiply, 146  
 chéng fǎ (乘法/乘法) multiplication, 146  
 chéng (乘/乘) ride, 123  
 Chéng (埕/埕), 131  
 Chéng (成/成) completed; accomplished, 132  
 chéng (誠/诚) sincere; honest, 134  
 Chéng (鄭/郑), 139  
 chéng dù (程度/程度) extent, 128  
 chéng kěn (誠懇/诚恳) sincere, 96  
 Chí (遲/迟) late, 132  
 chí (馳/驰) to gallop, 140  
 Chóu (仇/仇) enemy, 132  
 chú (除/除) divide, 146  
 chú fǎ (除法/除法) division, 146  
 chuán dì (傳遞/传递) transi-

tive, 148  
 chún (淳/淳) pure; clean; simple, 136  
 chā (插/插) to stick into, 129  
 chāng (昌/昌) proper; good, 134  
 chāo (超/超) to exceed, 134  
 chōng mǎn (充滿/充满) full, 129  
 chū (初/初) first, 126  
 chū qù (出去/出去) to get out, 82  
 chūān (川/川) river, 134  
 chūn (春/春) spring, 136  
 chàng (暢/畅) smoothly; fluently, 134  
 chàng gē (唱歌/唱歌) to sing, 83  
 chàng tōng (暢通/畅通) freely flowing, 129  
 chù (矗/矗) steep; lofty, 134  
 chù (處/处) a place, 128  
 chù (處/处) place, 123  
 chǎo jià (吵架/吵架) to quarrel, 82  
 Chǔ (楚/楚), 132  
 chuán (船/船) boat, 4  
 dé (得/得) that, 102  
 dé (得/得) to get, 55, 61  
 dé yì (得意/得意) pleased with oneself, 45  
 dān xīn (擔心/担心) worried, 92  
 dāng (噹/当) (onomatopoeia), 5  
 dāng (當/当) while, 73  
 dāng miàn (當面/当面) in someone's presence, 41  
 dāo (刀/刀) knife, 3  
 dēng (燈/灯) lamp; lantern, 134  
 dēng (登/登) to ascend; to climb, 134  
 dīng (丁/丁) nail, 3  
 dīng (叮/叮) to sting, 5  
 dīng (盯/盯) fix eyes on, 47  
 dōng (咚/咚) (onomatopoeia), 5  
 dōng xī (東西/东西) things, 59  
 dōng tiān (冬天/冬天) winter, 61  
 dōu (都/都) all, 38, 43, 56, 60, 63, 72, 97  
 dōu (都/都) completely, 95  
 dū (嘟/嘟) (onomatopoeia), 5  
 duō (多/多) many, 42  
 duō (多/多) much, 70  
 dǎ (打/打) beat, 41  
 dǎ (打/打) hit, 55  
 dǎ (打/打) to beat, 105

dǎ (打/打) to hit, 104  
 dǎ hū (打呼/打呼) snore, 104  
 dǎ kāi (打開/打开) to open, 40  
 děng (等/等) to wait, 75  
 děng (等/等) to wait/not until, 75  
 dǒng (懂/懂) understand, 23  
 dǒu (抖/抖) to tremble, 62  
 duǎn (短/短) short, 35  
 duǒ (朵/朵) (quantifier), 32  
 duǒ (躲/躲) to hide, 74  
 dà (大/大) big, 3, 35, 45, 66, 94, 102  
 dà jiā (大家/大家) everyone, 56  
 dà mén (大門/大门) front door, 40  
 dà xiàng (大象/大象) elephant, 34, 35  
 dà yǔ (大雨/大雨) heavy rain, 62  
 dài (代/代) substitute, 29, 110  
 dài (待/待) to wait for, 66  
 dàn gāo (蛋糕/蛋糕) cake, 57  
 dàng (盪/荡) to swing, 43  
 dào (到/到) to arrive, 75  
 dào (到/到) to reach, 55, 60, 74  
 dìng (定/定) to fix, 99, 109  
 dòng (動/动) to move, 110  
 dòng (棟/栋) main beam, 31  
 dòng (洞/洞) hole, 48  
 dòng cí (動詞/动词) verb, 45, 110  
 dù zi (肚子/肚子) stomach, 7, 39, 62  
 duàn (段/段) paragraph, 32  
 duì (對/对) as regards, 41  
 duì (對/对) correct, 74  
 duì (對/对) facing, 98, 99  
 duì xiàng (對象/对象) subject, 69  
 dùn (頓/顿) pause, 32  
 dá (答/答) to answer, 84  
 dá (達/达) intelligent; understanding, 134  
 dé (得/得) obtain, 126  
 dé (得/得) to get, 94  
 dé (得/得) to obtain, 126  
 dé (得/得) to the extent that, 128  
 dé (德/德) virtue, 134  
 dé yì (得意/得意) full of oneself, 97  
 Dí (狄/狄), 132  
 dí (迪/迪) to progress, 134  
 dúo (朵/朵) flower, 136  
 Dúo (鐸/铎) a large bell, 132  
 dī (低/低) hang down, 124

dōu (都/都) all, 118, 129  
 Dū (督/督) to oversee, 132  
 dūn (敦/敦) honest; to deepen, 134  
 duō (多/多) many, 128, 129  
 duō shǎo (多少/多少) so many, 129  
 dài (代/代) substitute, 143, 144  
 dài (待/待) to wait for, 77  
 Dài (戴/戴) to wear, 131  
 dài (黛/黛) a beauty, 136  
 dàn (旦/旦) daybreak, 136  
 dàn yuàn (但願/但願) if only, 125  
 dào (道/道) road, 138  
 dào (道/道) road; path, 134  
 dào chù (到處/到處) everywhere, 118  
 dào dá (到達/到達) to arrive at, 130  
 Dèng (鄧/鄧), 131, 140  
 dèng zhe (瞪著/瞪著) glare at, 47  
 dì (地/地) earth, 83, 118, 119  
 dòng (凍/凍) to freeze, 61  
 dòng (動/動) to move, 98  
 dòu (鬥/鬥) to struggle, 134  
 Dù (杜/杜) to plug, 131  
 dù (渡/渡) to cross, 134  
 Duàn (段/段), 138  
 Duàn (段/段) a section, 131  
 duì (對/對) facing, 80  
 duì (對/對) for, 130  
 duì chèn (對稱/對稱) symmetric, 148  
 dǎ (打/打) beat, 77  
 dǎng (擋/擋) to block, 129  
 děng yú (等於/等於) equal, 146  
 Dī (邸/邸) residence of a high official, 133  
 dǒng (懂/懂) to understand, 136  
 Dǒng (董/董) to oversee, 131  
 de (得/得) (to the extent of), 61, 94  
 de (得/得) (to the extent that), 61, 64, 74, 95  
 de (得/得) that, 102  
 de (得/得) to the extent, 61  
 de (得/得) to the extent of, 7, 62  
 de (得/得) to the extent that, 61, 62, 70  
 de (的/的), 120  
 de (的/的) 's, 7, 60, 62, 63, 69, 71, 94, 97, 100, 106, 121, 128  
 de (的/的) 's (possesses), 60  
 de (的/的) ('s), 7, 30, 42–44,

74  
 de (的/的) (adj), 37  
 de (的/的) -ly, 60, 100  
 de (的/的) of, 106  
 de (的/的) to the extent of, 39  
 diǎn (點/點) a dot, 68  
 diàn nǎo (電腦/電腦) computer, 34  
 diàn shì (電視/電視) television, 34  
 diào (調/調) tune, 56  
 diào zǒu (叼走/叼走) to take away in the mouth, 89  
 Dīng (丁/丁), 131  
 dīng níng (叮嚀/叮嚀) to repeatedly urge, 83  
 diàn tī (電梯/電梯) elevator, 128  
 diǎn (點/點) drop, 84, 85  
 dǐng (頂/頂) the top, 134

ér qiě (而且/而且) and, 72  
 ér yǐ (而已/而已) that is all, 84  
 ēn (恩/恩) grace; kindness, 137  
 ēn diǎn (恩典/恩典) grace, 126  
 ēn huì (恩惠/恩惠) mercy; grace, 126  
 èr (二/二) 2, 69  
 èr (二/二) two, 120  
 èr (二/二) 2, 113, 114  
 èr yuè (二月/二月) February, 67  
 ěr (耳/耳) ear, 122

fán (凡/凡) all, 4, 97  
 fáng zi (房子/房子) house, 33  
 fú hào (符號/符號) symbol, 18  
 fā dǒu (發抖/發抖) to shake, 61, 95  
 fā dǒu (發抖/發抖) to shiver, 61  
 fā xiàn (發現/發現) to discover, 40, 74  
 fā yīn (發音/發音) pronunciation, 111  
 fān (番/番) a time, 75  
 fān qié (番茄/番茄) tomato, 33  
 fāng (方/方), 4  
 fēi (妃/妃) concubine, 139  
 fēi (緋/緋) scarlet; crimson, 137  
 fēi (菲/菲) fragrant, 136  
 fēi (霏/霏) falling of snow and rain, 137  
 fēi (非/非) not, 56  
 fēi (飛/飛) fly, 45, 51  
 fēi (飛/飛) to fly, 137

fēn (芬/芬) fragrance; perfume, 136  
 fēn hào (分號/分號) semicolon, 111  
 fēng (丰/丰) good-looking, 137  
 fēng (封/封) to seal, 32  
 fēng (豐/丰) abundant, 134  
 fēng (鋒/鋒) cutting edge of a sword, 139  
 fēng (風/风) wind; breeze, 137  
 fēng zhēng (風箏/風箏) kite, 19  
 fǎ (法/法) the law, 111  
 fǎn (反/反) opposite, 56  
 fǎn ér (反而/反而) instead, 39  
 fǒu dìng (否定/否定) to negate, 53  
 fàn (飯/飯) rice, 36  
 fèn (份/份) portion, 32  
 fèn zhàn (奮戰/奮戰) to put up a good fight, 75  
 fù cí (副詞/副詞) adverb, 109  
 fù jìn (附近/附近) nearby, 106  
 fù zé (負責/负责) to be in charge of, 31  
 Fán (樊/樊) bird cage, 132  
 Fáng (房/房) house, 132  
 Féng (馮/冯), 131, 132, 138  
 fú (扶/扶) to support, 134  
 fú (福/福) good fortune; a blessing, 134  
 Fāng (方/方) square, 131  
 fāng (芳/芳) fragrant; virtuous, 136  
 fāng chéng (方程/方程) equation, 144, 145  
 fēi (飛/飛) fly, 87  
 fēn xī (分析/分析) analyze, 143, 144  
 fēng (風/风) wind, 123, 129  
 fàn (梵/梵) clean and pure, 137  
 Fàn (范/范), 139  
 Fàn (范/范) bee, 131  
 fàn hán (泛函/泛函) function, 144  
 fàng sōng (放鬆/放松) to release, 130  
 fàng zǒu (放走/放走) release, 120  
 Fèi (費/费) expenditure, 132  
 fèi huà (廢話/废话) garbage talk, 82  
 fèn (奮/奋) to rise in force, 134  
 fèng (奉/奉) to receive with respect, 134



fèng (鳳/凤) male phoenix, 136  
 Fù (傅/傅) a teacher, 131  
 fù (富/富) wealthy, 134  
 fù (複/复) repeat, 144  
 fù (馥/馥) fragrant fragrance, 136  
 fǎn (反/反) contrary, 148  
 fǎn yìng (反應/反应) response, 83  
 Fěi (斐/斐) elegant; beautiful, 132  
 fěi (翡/翡) kingfisher; emerald, 137  
 fǔ (頹/頹) to bow the head, 139  
 fú (幅/幅) width of cloth, 32  
 gé (咯/咯) a click, 5  
 gé (格/格) style, 110  
 gé bì (隔壁/隔壁) next door, 69  
 guó wáng (國王/国王) king, 41, 61  
 gǎ (嘎/嘎) (onomatopoeia), 5  
 gān (乾/干) dry, 153  
 gān (干/干) shield, 4  
 gān (干/干) to offend, 153  
 gān (甘/甘) sweet, 99, 100  
 gān gà (尷尬/尴尬) embarrassed, 92  
 gān jìng (乾淨/干净) clean, 64  
 gāng (剛/刚) exactly, 99  
 gāng cái (剛才/刚才) a moment ago, 66  
 gāng hǎo (剛好/刚好) perfect, 99  
 gāo (高/高) high, 43  
 gāo (高/高) tall, 35  
 gāo xìng (高興/高兴) glad, 61, 91, 94  
 gāo xìng (高興/高兴) happy, 45  
 Gē (戈/戈) spear; lance, 132  
 gē (歌/歌) song, 22  
 gē chàng (歌唱/歌唱) to sing, 103  
 gē ge (哥哥/哥哥) elder brother, 74  
 gēn (根/根) roots, 32  
 gēn běn (根本/根本) ultimately, 55  
 gōng chéng (工程/工程) engineering, 103  
 gōng rén (工人/工人) worker, 103  
 gōng (工/工) work, 4  
 gōng jī (公雞/公鸡) rooster, 7, 43, 64, 73  
 gōng sī (公司/公司) company, 33

gōng zuò (工作/工作) work, 74, 101–103  
 gū (咕/咕) to murmur, 5, 7  
 gū lū (咕嚕/咕嚕) “gurgle/hyperpage, 7, 62  
 gūa (刮/刮) to scrape, 71  
 gūa (呱/呱) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 guān xī (關係/关系) relation, 110  
 gǎn (敢/敢) to dare; bold, 136  
 gǎn (趕/赶) to pursue, 136  
 gǎn jiǎn (趕緊/赶紧) hurriedly, 70  
 gǎn mào (感冒/感冒) to catch a cold, 7  
 gǎn xiè (感謝/感谢) to thank, 41  
 gǎng (港/港) a port, 131, 140  
 gěi (給/给) to give, 41  
 gēn (感/感) to feel, 42  
 gǔ (骨/骨) bone, 44  
 gàn (幹/干) tree trunk, 153  
 gè xìng (個性/个性) personality, 91  
 guài wù (怪物/怪物) monster, 57  
 guàn cí (冠詞/冠词) article, 109  
 guò (過/过) to pass, 72, 104  
 guò qù (過去/过去) in the past, 112  
 guò zhe (過著/过着) to pass, 71  
 gé (格/格) checks, 22  
 gé (閣/阁) pavillion, 124  
 Guó (國/国) country, 138  
 guó yǔ (國語/国语) Chinese, 84, 85  
 gāi (該/该) should, 81  
 Gān (甘/甘) delicious, 132  
 gān tián (甘甜/甘甜) sweet, 126  
 gāo (高/高) high, 123  
 Gāo (高/高) high; tall, 131  
 gāo (高/高) tall, 128  
 gāo xìng (高興/高兴) glad, 79  
 gōng (功/功) merit; achievement, 134  
 Gōng (龔/龔) reverential, 131  
 gōng quē (宮闕/宫阙) imperial palace, 123  
 Gū (辜/辜) sin; crime, 133  
 gū gū (呱呱/呱呱) baby's cry, 118  
 Guān (官/官) government official, 133  
 guān xi (關係/关系) relation, 80  
 guī (傀/傀) great; wonderful, 134

guī (圭/圭) (a jade tablet), 134  
 guī (瑰/瑰) fabulous; a kind of jasper, 136  
 guī qù (歸去/归去) go back to, 123  
 Gūo (郭/郭) town, 131  
 gè (各/各) each, 22  
 gòng (共/共) altogether, 146  
 gòng (共/共) share, 125  
 gù (固/固) stable; sturdy, 134  
 Gù (顧/顾) to turn around and look, 131  
 Guì (桂/桂), 133  
 guì (貴/贵) high-placed, 134  
 guì (貴/贵) valued, 139  
 guò (過/过) to pass, 81, 134  
 guò lái (過來/过来) to come over, 89  
 guò qù (過去/过去) to go over, 89  
 gǎn zǒu (趕走/赶走) kick out, 82  
 gē (舸/舸) barge, 22  
 Gě (葛/葛), 133  
 Gǔ (古/古) ancient, 133  
 gǔ (古/古) ancient, 124  
 gǔ (谷/谷) valley, 134  
 Gǔǎn (管/管) tube; pipe, 133  
 gǔn (滾/滚) to roll, 82  
 ge (個/个) (quantifier), 22, 32  
 ge (個/个) a, 65, 66, 104, 106  
 ge (個/个) one that, 62, 63  
 guān xi (關係/关系) relation, 146, 148  
 hái (還/还) still, 38–41, 61, 70  
 hái shì (還是/还是) nevertheless, 39  
 hái shì (還是/还是) or, 38  
 hái shì (還是/还是) still, 62  
 hóng liàng (宏亮/宏亮) magnificent and clear, 64  
 hú (胡/胡) reckless, 32, 98  
 hú biān (湖邊/湖边) lake side, 106  
 hú dié (蝴蝶/蝴蝶) butterfly, 35, 45, 51, 72  
 huí jiā (回家/回家) to return home, 40  
 huí tóu (回頭/回头) to turn one's head, 75  
 hún shēn (渾身/浑身) entire body, 61  
 hā (哈/哈) to breathe on, 6  
 hā jiū (哈啾/哈啾) achoo, 7  
 hā qiàn (哈欠/哈欠) to yawn, 104  
 hāi (嗨/嗨) “hi”, 6  
 hē (呵/呵) Ha, 63  
 hē (喝/喝) drank, 63  
 hē (喝/喝) drink, 47

hē le (喝了/喝了) drank, 60  
 hē qiàn (呵欠/呵欠) to yawn, 104  
 hēi (嘿/嘿) hey, 42  
 hēi (黑/黑) black, 63, 72  
 hū (呼/呼) to exhale, 6, 8, 70, 92  
 hū rán (忽然/忽然) suddenly, 71  
 hūa (嘩/嘩) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 hūa (花/花) flower, 32  
 hūa duǒ (花朵/花朵) a flower, 51  
 hūa mì (花蜜/花蜜) nectar, 72  
 hūa yuán (花園/花园) flower garden, 34  
 hūan lè (歡樂/欢乐) joy, 96  
 hūi xīn (灰心/灰心) discouraged, 91  
 hūi (灰/灰) grey, 102  
 hūi xióng (灰熊/灰熊) grizzly bear, 69  
 hǎi lí (海狸/海狸) beaver, 73  
 hào (好/好) good, 4, 42, 59, 69, 93, 136  
 hào (好/好) very, 45, 60  
 Hào (郝/郝) (an ancient place), 131  
 hào hào (好好/好好) all out, 41  
 hào hào (好好/好好) very good, 106  
 hào shì (好事/好事) good deeds, 42  
 hào xiàng (好像/好像) to seem, 7  
 hěn (很/很) early, 61, 70  
 hěn (很/很) very, 104  
 hòu (吼/吼) to roar, 6  
 hài pà (害怕/害怕) afraid, 91  
 hàn (和/和) and, 38, 74, 94, 102, 106  
 hàn (和/和) with, 56  
 hàn (汗/汗) sweat, 102  
 Hàn (漢/汉) the Han people, 152  
 hàn yǔ (漢語/汉语) Chinese, 18  
 hào (號/号) a mark, 111  
 hào (號/号) number, 68, 69  
 hào qí (好奇/好奇) curious, 95  
 hòu (後/后) after, 69  
 hòu (後/后) behind, 70  
 hòu tiān (後天/后天) day after tomorrow, 66  
 hù (戶/户) door, 32  
 huà (畫/画) picture, 32  
 huà (畫/画) to draw, 51

huai (壞/坏) bad, 42  
 huì yì (會意/会意) understanding, 3  
 huò (嘆/嘆) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 hái shì (還是/还是) had better, 82  
 hán (寒/寒) cold, 123  
 Hán (韓/韩) fence, 131  
 hán shù (函數/函数) function, 145  
 háo (豪/豪) outstandingly intelligent, 134  
 Hé (何/何), 131  
 hé (合/合) together, 124  
 hé (和/和) and, 122  
 hé (和/和) harmony, 134  
 hé děng (何等/何等) how, 126  
 hé nián (何年/何年) what year, 123  
 hé píng (和平/和平) peace, 96  
 hé sì (何似/何似) similar to, 124  
 hé shì (何事/何事) why, 124  
 hóng (宏/宏) magnificent, 134  
 hóng (泓/泓) deep, 134  
 Hóng (洪/洪) a flood, 131  
 hóng (洪/洪) flood, 138  
 hóng (紅/红) red, 89  
 hóng (鴻/鸿) swan, 134  
 Hóu (侯/侯) marquis, 131  
 Hú (湖/湖) lake, 134  
 Hú (胡/胡) to blunder, 131  
 hú tú (糊塗/糊涂) confused, 128  
 Huáng (黃/黄) yellow, 131  
 húo yú (活魚/活鱼) live fish, 120  
 hū (虎/虎) tiger, 78  
 hū hǎn (呼喊/呼喊) to call out, 128  
 Hūa (花/花) flower, 133  
 hūa duǒ (花朵/花朵) flower, 128, 129  
 hūan (歡/欢) cheerful, 124  
 hūan yíng (歡迎/欢迎) welcome, 81  
 hūi (暉/晖) radiant, 134  
 hàn (和/和) and, 130  
 hàn (捍/捍) to defend, 134  
 hào (皓/皓) white and bright, 134  
 Hè (賀/贺) to congratulate, 131  
 hèn (恨/恨) hate, 124  
 hòu biān (後邊/后边) back side, 88  
 hù (戶/户) door, 124

huàn (煥/煥) shining, 134  
 huì (慧/慧) wisdom, 140  
 huì (慧/慧) wise, 136  
 huì (會/会) able, 79, 84, 85, 130  
 huì (蕙/蕙) fragrant orchid, 136  
 huì (薈/荟) luxuriant growth, 136  
 hǎn jiào (喊叫/喊叫) to shout, 82  
 hào (好/好) good, 77, 78, 81  
 hěn (很/很) very, 78, 79, 128, 129  
 hǔ (虎/虎) brave, 134  
 huì (會兒/会儿) to meet together, 77  
 huǒ (火/火) fire, 134  
 huáng (黃/黄) yellow, 7  
 huáng gōng (皇宮/皇宫) palace, 106  
 huáng niú (黃牛/黄牛) cow, 60  
 huāng luàn (慌亂/慌乱) in a flurry, 70  
 huài (壞/坏) bad, 38  
 jí (急/急) urgent, 70  
 jí dù (嫉妒/嫉妒) jealous, 92  
 jí máng (急忙/急忙) hurriedly, 48, 70  
 jué dé (覺得/觉得) feel, 93  
 jué dìng (決定/决定) to resolve, 42  
 jué dìng (決定/决定) to decide, 72  
 jué xīn (決心/决心) determination, 96, 99  
 jī (几/几) stool, 4  
 jī (几/几) small table, 3  
 jī (唧/唧) pump, 6  
 jī (噤/叽) to talk indistinctly, 6  
 jī (雞/鸡) chicken, 60  
 jī hū (幾乎/几乎) almost, 59  
 jī mù (積木/积木) building blocks, 33  
 jīn (今/今) the present, 65  
 jīn (巾/巾) cloth, 4  
 jīn (筋/筋) muscle, 105  
 jīn bì (今幣/今币) gold, 41  
 jīn tiān (今天/今天) today, 22, 68, 69  
 jīng lǐ (經理/经理) manager, 103  
 jīng (精/精) energy, 105  
 jīng (驚/惊) to be startled, 94  
 jīng guò (經過/经过) to pass through, 75  
 jīng tàn (驚嘆/惊叹) to marvel, 111  
 jīng yà (驚訝/惊讶) surprised, 92

jū rán (居然/居然) unexpectedly, 38  
 jǐ (幾/几) how many, 68  
 jǐ tiān (幾天/几天) several days, 62  
 jiǎ yì (假意/假意) insincerity, 97  
 jǐn zhāng (緊張/紧张) nervous, 92  
 jǐng (井/井) well, 33  
 jiǔ yuè (九月/九月) September, 67  
 jiǔ (久/久) duration of time, 70  
 jǔ sàng (沮喪/沮丧) depressed, 91  
 jì (技/技) skill, 101  
 jì jiào (計較/计较) to plan, 97  
 jìn (盡/尽) exhausted, 97  
 jìn (進/进) to enter, 55  
 jìn lái (進來/进来) to come in, 60  
 jù (劇/剧) a play, 37  
 jù hào (句號/句号) period (.), 111  
 jù zì (句子/句子) sentence, 111  
 jí hé (集合/集合) set, 146  
 jué duì (絕對/绝对) absolutely, 130  
 jī (姬/姬) beautiful lady, 136  
 jī (機/机) alert, 98  
 jī fēn (積分/积分) integral, 143, 144  
 jī lǜ (機率/机率) probability, 145  
 jiā (加/加) add, 145  
 jiā fǎ (加法/加法) addition, 145  
 jīn (金/金) gold, 132  
 jū shù (拘束/拘束) awkward, 128  
 juān (娟/娟) graceful, 137  
 jūn (君/君) monarch, 139, 140  
 jiān bǎng (肩膀/肩膀) shoulder, 122  
 jì (季/季) season, 133  
 jì (既/既) as, 126  
 jì (繼/继) to carry on, 134  
 jì suàn (計算/计算) arithmetic, 143  
 jìn (晉/晋) to advance, 134  
 jìn (進/进) to advance, 134  
 jìn (進/进) to enter, 81  
 jù (據/据) proof, 134  
 jiǔ (九/九) 9, 113–115  
 jǐ (幾/几) how many, 79  
 jǐ (擠/挤) almost, 60  
 jǐ hé (幾何/几何) geometry, 144

jǐ shí (幾時/几时) when, 123  
 jiǎn (減/减) subtract, 146  
 jiǎn fǎ (減法/减法) subtraction, 146  
 jiě kāi (解開/解开) to undo, 81  
 jǐn (錦/锦) glorious, 138  
 jǔ (舉/举) to raise, 88  
 jǔ shǒu (舉手/举手) to raise hand, 88  
 jiā (家/家) home, 43, 48, 72, 75  
 jiā (家/家) household, 33  
 jiā (家/家) specialist, 103  
 jiān (間/间) period of time, 70  
 jiān (間/间) room, 33  
 jiāo ào (驕傲/骄傲) proud, 97  
 jiāo jí (焦急/焦急) anxious, 60  
 jiāo tōng (交通/交通) traffic, 95  
 jiē (結/结) tough, 134  
 jiū (啾/啾) chirping sound, 6  
 jiǎ (賈/贾) ("gǔ=merchant), 131  
 jiǎn (簡/简) brief, 133  
 jiǎng (蔣/蒋), 132, 139  
 jiǎng huà (講話/讲话) talk, 47  
 jiǎo (佼/佼) charming, 134  
 jiè jià (假借/假借) to make use of, 3  
 jiǔ (久/久) duration, 64  
 jiàn (件/件) document, 33  
 jiàn (見/见) to see, 3, 4, 41, 59, 153  
 jiàn jiàn (漸漸/渐渐) gradually, 97  
 jiàn lì (建立/建立) to build up, 42  
 jiào shòu (教授/教授) professor, 103  
 jiào (叫/叫) to call, 7, 43, 62, 73  
 jiào (叫/叫) to crow, 64  
 jiào (覺/觉) sleep, 104–106  
 jìng zi (鏡子/镜子) mirror, 33  
 jiù (就/就) just, 8, 59, 61, 71, 73, 95  
 jiù de (舊的/旧的) old, 37  
 jiù shì (就是/就是) (or), 40  
 jiù shì (就是/就是) no other than, 41  
 jié (傑/杰) remarkable, 134  
 jié (捷/捷) swift, 134  
 jié (杰/杰) outstanding, 134  
 jié (潔/洁) pure, 136  
 jiā (佳/佳) beautiful, 136  
 jiā (佳/佳) excellent, 137  
 jiān (堅/坚) strong and durable, 134  
 jiān (肩/肩) to sustain, 136

jiāng (姜/姜) ginger, 131  
 jiāng (將/将) will, 130  
 jiāng (江/江) river, 131  
 jiāo (嬌/娇) delicate, 136  
 jiāo (焦/焦) scorched, 133  
 jīn (今/今) now, 126  
 jīn (禁/禁) to endure, 136  
 jīn xī (今夕/今夕) today, 123  
 jīng (菁/菁) the flower of the leek, 136  
 jià (駕/驾) to excel, 136  
 jiàn (澗/涧) mountain stream, 136  
 jiàn (見/见) to see, 77  
 jiàng (匠/匠) craftsman, 136  
 jiào (叫/叫) called, 78, 79  
 jiè (介/介) upright, 134  
 jiè (借/借) to borrow, 81  
 jiè shào (介紹/介绍) introduce, 78  
 jiè yì (介意/介意) to take offense, 80, 81  
 jìn (勁/劲) vigor, 134  
 jìn (盡/尽) exhaust, 105  
 jìn (盡/尽) exhausted, 105  
 jìng (勁/劲) powerful, 136  
 jìng (淨/淨) pure, 137  
 jìng (靖/靖) peaceful, 134  
 jìng (靜/静) tranquility, 137  
 jìng wèi (敬畏/敬畏) to hold in awe, 126  
 jiù suàn (就算/就算) even if, 129  
 jiǎng (講/讲) speak, 84, 85  
 jiǎng huà (講話/讲话) to talk, 82  
 jiǎo (腳/脚) foot, 88  
 jiǎo bù (腳步/脚步) footstep, 128  
 jiǎo zhǐ (腳趾/脚趾) toe, 122  
 jǐn zǎo (儘早/尽早) as soon as possible, 70  
 jǐn zǎo (儘早/尽早) as soon as possible, 82  
 jǐng (井/井) a well, 134  
 jǐng (景/景) a view, 140  
 jǐng (景/景) scenery, 133  
 jǐng chá (警察/警察) police, 95  
 jiǒng (炯/炯) brightness, 134  
 jiǔ (九/九) nine, 120  
 kāi shǐ (開始/开始) since, 71  
 kāi shǐ (開始/开始) to start, 71  
 kāng xī (康熙/康熙) Kangxi, 8  
 kē (柯/柯) tall evergreen tree, 133  
 kē (棵/棵) (quantifier), 33  
 kū (哭/哭) to cry, 4  
 kūa jiǎng (誇獎/夸奖) to commend, 41



kūan (寬/宽) wide, 35  
 kǎi (凱/凯) peace, 134  
 kǎi (凱/凯) triumphant strains, 138  
 kǎn diào (砍掉/砍掉) to cut down, 73  
 kě (可/可) to permit, 56  
 kě (渴/渴) thirsty, 39, 40, 62  
 kě shì (可是/可是) but, 64  
 kě yǐ (可以/可以) can, 106  
 kǒu (口/口) mouth, 4, 33, 39, 93  
 kǔ nǎo (苦惱/苦惱) vexed, 91  
 kǔa (垮/垮) to collapse, 105  
 kàn (看/看) see, 47, 54, 93  
 kàn (看/看) to look at, 43, 59, 75  
 kàn (看/看) to see, 47, 99  
 kàn dào (看到/看到) hear, 54  
 kàn dào (看到/看到) see, 22, 48, 56, 63  
 kàn le (看了/看了) saw, 95  
 kàn zhe (看著/看著) look at, 47, 48  
 kào (靠/靠) to lean, 8  
 kè (刻/刻) quarter hour, 74  
 kè (課/课) lesson, 34  
 kòu (叩/叩) to knock, 6, 7  
 kuài lè (快樂/快乐) happy, 72  
 kuài zi (筷子/筷子) chopsticks, 35  
 kāi xīn (開心/开心) joyful, 130  
 kāng (康/康) health, 132  
 kāng (康/康) healthy, 134  
 kāng (慷/慷) unselfish, 134  
 kōng jiān (空間/空间) space, 147  
 kūn (昆/昆) elder brother, 135  
 kàn (看/看) to see, 128  
 kàn jiàn (看見/看见) to see, 126  
 kè (克/克) to overcome, 135  
 kè (剋/克) to overcome, 136  
 kè (客/客) guest, 135  
 kè qì (客氣/客气) polite, 81  
 Kòu (寇/寇) bandits, 133  
 kuài lè (快樂/快乐) happiness, 130  
 kùn huò (困惑/困惑) bewildered, 129  
 kùo (擴/扩) to expand, 136  
 kùo (闊/阔) wealthy, 136  
 kǎo yàn (考驗/考验) to test, 128  
 Kě (可/可) to be able to, 134  
 kě yí (可疑/可疑) suspicious, 128  
 kěn (懇/恳) sincere, 136  
 Kǒng (孔/孔) hole, 132  
 kǒng (恐/恐) dread, 123

kǒu (口/口) mouth, 122  
 kǔan (款/款) sincerity, 136  
 kuáng fēng (狂風/狂风) a very strong wind, 71  
 kuài (塊/块) chunk, 33  
 kuài (快/快) almost, 59, 60  
 kuài lè (快樂/快乐) happy, 91, 93  
 Kuāng (匡/匡) to correct, 133  
 kuài (塊/块) chunk, 118, 119  
 lái (來/来) come, 51, 98–100  
 lái (來/来) to come, 42, 43, 48, 60  
 lái le (來了/来了) came, 45  
 Lái tè (萊特/莱特) Wright, 62  
 láng (狼/狼) wolf, 42, 61–63, 95  
 láng (狼/狼) wolves, 42  
 lí (離/离) to leave, 72  
 lín (林/林) forest, 4  
 líng (靈/灵) clever, 98  
 lóng zi (籠子/笼子) cage, 69  
 lúo (蘿/萝) creeping plant, 32  
 lǔ (嚕/噜) verbose, 6, 8  
 lūo (囉/啰) to chatter, 6  
 lǎn duò (懶惰/懒惰) lazy, 101  
 lǎng (朗/朗) bright, 139  
 lǎo bǎn (老板/老板) boss, 103  
 lǎo shī (老師/老师) teacher, 103  
 lǎo (老/老) old, 43, 69, 73  
 lǎo shí (老實/老实) honest, 96  
 lǎo shǔ (老鼠/老鼠) mouse, 55  
 lěng (冷/冷) cold, 40  
 lěng hàn (冷汗/冷汗) cold sweat, 95  
 lǐ (裡/里) inside, 43, 48, 69  
 lǐ bài (裡拜/里拜) week, 66, 67  
 lǐ wù (禮物/礼物) gift, 32  
 lǜ sè (綠色/绿色) green, 37  
 lè (樂/乐) joyous, 92  
 lèi le (累了/累了) tired, 91  
 lèi (累/累) tired, 105  
 lì (力/力) force, 3  
 lì (力/力) power, 105  
 lì (力/力) strength, 95  
 lì (粒/粒) granule, 33  
 lì kè (立刻/立刻) immediately, 95  
 liú (六/六) six, 67  
 liú yuè (六月/六月) June, 68  
 lù (路/路) road, 34, 44  
 lùn (亂/乱) disorder, 98  
 Lái tè (萊特/莱特) Wright, 141  
 lán (嵐/岚) mountain vapor, 137

lán (蘭/兰) orchid, 137  
 láng (琅/琅) clean and white, 135  
 láng (瑯/瑯) pure and white, 135  
 Léi (雷/雷) thunder, 132  
 lí (離/离) apart, 124  
 Lí (黎/黎) many, 138  
 Lí (黎/黎) numerous, 133  
 lí sàn (離散/离散) dispersed, 144  
 líng (零/零) 0, 113  
 lóng (隆/隆) prosperous; abundant, 135  
 Lóng (龍/龙) dragon, 132  
 lóng (龍/龙) dragon, 140  
 lóu (樓/楼) building, 123, 128  
 Lú (盧/卢) black, 132  
 Lúo (羅/罗) thin light silk, 132  
 lā (拉/拉) to pull, 129  
 Lài (賴/赖) to rely on, 132  
 lè (樂/乐) happy, 138  
 lè yuán (樂園/乐园) paradise, 130  
 lì (力/力) strength, 135  
 Lì (栗/栗) chestnut tree, 133  
 lì (莉/莉) white jasmine, 137  
 lì (麗/丽) beautiful, 137, 140  
 lì kè (立刻/立刻) immediately, 61  
 Lù (路/路) road, 133  
 Lù (陸/陆) land, 132, 133  
 lùn huà (亂話/乱话) indiscriminate talk, 82  
 lùn (論/论) theory, 145  
 lǜ dòu (綠豆/绿豆) mung beans, 99, 100  
 liú (五/五) 6, 114  
 liú (六/六) 6, 113–115  
 lǎo (老/老) old, 118, 119  
 lǎo shǔ (老鼠/老鼠) mouse, 89  
 Lǐ (李/李) plum tree, 140  
 Lǐ (李/李) plums, 132  
 lǐ (理/理) reason; logic, 135  
 lǐ (禮/礼) courtesy, 135  
 lǐ (裡/里) inside, 60, 118  
 lǐ mào (禮貌/礼貌) manners, 80, 81  
 lǐ mào (禮貌/礼貌) politeness, 79  
 lǐ miàn (裡面/里面) inside, 59  
 Lǚ (魯/鲁) dull, 133  
 Lǚ (呂/吕), 132  
 la (啦/啦) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 le (了/了), 41, 54, 71, 73, 81, 89, 93, 100, 105, 120  
 le (了/了) (a change of state), 71  
 le (了/了) (a change of state), 39, 49, 59, 74

le (了/了) (change of state), 7, 8, 69  
 le (了/了) (indicates a change of state), 78  
 lián (連/连) even, 63, 95  
 lián jiē (連接/连接) to join, 110  
 lián zì (連字/连字) a ligature, 111  
 liáo tiān (聊天/聊天) to chat, 69  
 liǎn (臉/脸) face, 62, 102  
 liǎng (倆/俩) craft; ability, 136  
 liǎo (了/了) to understand, 61, 94  
 liǎo (了/了) understand, 62  
 liǔ tiáo (柳條/柳条) willow twig, 32  
 liàng (亮/亮) bright, 7  
 liàng (輛/辆) (quantifier), 33  
 liù (六/六) six, 68  
 lián (蓮/莲) lotus, 137  
 Lián (連/连) to connect, 133  
 Liáng (梁/梁) bridge, 132  
 liáng (梁/梁) roof beam, 139  
 liáng (良/良) fine; desirable, 135  
 liáo tiān (聊天/聊天) to chat, 82  
 lín (嶙/嶙) rugged, 135  
 Lín (林/林) forest, 132  
 lín (琳/琳) beautiful jade, 140  
 lín (磷/磷) water flowing between stones, 135  
 Lín (臨/临) to look down from above, 134  
 lín (霖/霖) continuous heavy rain, 135  
 líng (玲/玲) tinklings of jade, 137  
 líng (綾/綾) very fine silk cloth, 137  
 Liú (劉/刘) to kill, 132  
 liú (流/流) to flow; mobile, 135  
 liú (瀏/浏) the appearance of a clear stream, 136  
 liú xīn (留心/留心) to take heed, 128  
 liàn (戀/恋) to be in love, 137  
 liàng (亮/亮) bright, 135  
 liàng (諒/谅) honest, 135  
 Liào (廖/廖), 132  
 liè (烈/烈) fiery, 135  
 lìng (令/令) excellent, 135  
 liù (六/六) six, 120  
 liǎng (二/二) 2, 115  
 liǎn (臉/脸) face, 89  
 Liǔ (柳/柳) willow tree, 133  
 má (麻/麻) numbness, 22

máng (忙/忙) busy, 102  
 máo jīn (毛巾/毛巾) towel, 34  
 méi (沒/没) no, 40, 56, 72, 105  
 méi (沒/没) not, 63  
 méi (沒/没) not (have), 53, 54  
 méi (沒/没) not yet, 70  
 méi mìng (沒命/没命) lose life, 59  
 méi yǒu (沒有/没有) not have, 37, 57, 63, 64, 72, 102  
 mén (門/门) door, 7  
 Míng (明/明) Míng Dynasty, 152  
 míng cí (名詞/名词) noun, 29, 110  
 móu (眸/眸) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 mā (媽/妈) mother, 22  
 mā mā (媽媽/妈妈) Mama, 56, 100  
 mā mā (媽媽/妈妈) mother, 60  
 mā ma (媽媽/妈妈) Mom, 106  
 mā ma (媽媽/妈妈) mother, 40  
 māo (貓/猫) cat, 55  
 Mǎ (馬/马) horse, 132  
 mǎ (馬/马) horse, 34  
 mǎn (滿/满) full, 102  
 mǎn (滿/满) full; plentiful, 135  
 mǔ niú (母牛/母牛) cow, 44  
 mà (罵/骂) to scold, 22, 41  
 mài lì (賣力/卖力) to exert, 64  
 mào zì (帽子/帽子) hat, 71  
 mèn (悶/闷) melancholy, 92  
 mù (木/木) wood/tree, 4  
 mù qín (木琴/木琴) xylophone, 22  
 mù wū (木屋/木屋) cottage, 31  
 máng (茫/茫) vast; boundless, 135  
 Máo (毛/毛) hair, 132  
 Máo (茅/茅) couch grass, 134  
 Méi (梅/梅) prunes, 133  
 méi (沒/没) no, 95  
 méi (沒/没) not, 80  
 méi (玫/玫) rose, 137  
 Méi (眉/眉) eyebrows, 133  
 méi yǒu (沒有/没有) not have, 80  
 Mén (門/门) door, 133  
 méng (萌/萌) to bud; to shoot forth, 135  
 méng (蒙/蒙) to receive, 126  
 mài (邁/迈) to surpass, 135

Mài (麥/麦) wheat; barley; oats, 133  
 màn (曼/曼) delicately beautiful; graceful, 137  
 màn (曼/曼) graceful, 139  
 mào (茂/茂) exuberant, 135  
 mèng (夢/梦) dream, 138  
 Mèng (孟/孟) eldest child, 132  
 mèng (孟/孟) first month of a season, 139  
 mì (蜜/蜜) honey, 137  
 Mò (莫/莫) not, 133  
 mù (慕/慕) to long for; to adore, 135  
 mù (牧/牧) to shepherd, 135  
 mù (睦/睦) friendly; to befriend, 135  
 Mù (穆/穆) peaceful; serene, 133  
 mǎ (馬/马) horse, 78  
 mǎ yǐ (螞蟻/蚂蚁) ant, 89  
 měi (美/美) beautiful, 137  
 Měng (猛/猛) bold; fierce, 134  
 ma (嗎/吗), 79  
 ma (嗎/吗) (?), 36–38, 78, 81, 84, 93  
 ma (嗎/吗) (question), 98, 99  
 ma (嘛/嘛), 89  
 ma (麼/么) (for questions), 22  
 miāo (喵/喵) “meow|hyperpage, 6  
 miē (咩/咩) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 miǎo (淼/淼) extensive; vast, 135  
 miǎo (渺/渺) endlessly vast, 135  
 miàn (面/面) face to face, 33  
 miàn mù (面目/面目) face, 56  
 mián (眠/眠) sleep, 124  
 Miáo (苗/苗) a sprout, 133  
 míng (明/明) bright; brilliant, 135  
 mín (民/民) the people, 135  
 míng (明/明) bright, 66, 123, 138  
 míng nián (明年/明年) next year, 66  
 míng tiān (明天/明天) tomorrow, 77  
 míng zì (名字/名字) a name, 78, 79  
 miào (妙/妙) wonderful; intriguing; ingenious, 137  
 mǎ (馬/马) horse, 22  
 mǔ qīn (母親/母亲) mother, 22  
 ná (拿/拿) take, 56

ná (拿/拿) to take, 73  
 nán dào (難道/难道) is it possible that, 37, 38  
 nán dào (難道/难道) is it possible that ..., 37  
 nán guò (難過/难过) sad, 91, 93  
 néng (能/能) can, 74, 102  
 nǚ (女/女) woman, 4  
 nǚ hái (女孩/女孩) girl, 34, 35  
 nǎ lǐ (哪裡/哪里) where, 36  
 nǎi ge (哪個/哪个) which, 36  
 nǐ (你/你) you, 29, 31, 36, 37, 41, 48, 53, 54, 93, 98, 99, 103, 105  
 nǐ de (你的/你的) your, 23, 30, 93  
 nǐ mén (你們/你们) you, 29, 30  
 nǚ lì (努力/努力) exert, 74, 102  
 nǚ lì (努力/努力) to strive, 75, 101  
 nà me (那麼/那么) so, 57  
 nài lì (耐力/耐力) endurance, 96  
 nài xīn (耐心/耐心) patience, 96  
 nài xìng (耐性/耐性) patience, 96, 97  
 nào zhōng (鬧鐘/闹钟) alarm clock, 64  
 Nán (南/南) south, 133  
 nán (難/难) difficult, 124  
 ní (妮/妮) maid, 140  
 Nà (納/纳) to receive, 133  
 nà (那/那) that, 130  
 nà lǐ (那裡/那里) there, 118  
 nài (耐/耐) to endure, 135  
 nèi jī (內積/内积) inner-product, 147  
 nòng (弄/弄) make, 124  
 nǎ ge (哪個/哪个) which, 120  
 nǎ lǐ (哪裡/哪里) where, 89  
 nǐ (你/你) you, 77–79, 81, 82, 84, 128, 129  
 ne (呢/呢), 39, 41, 57, 78, 89  
 ne (呢/呢) (a sound), 31  
 nián (年/年) a year, 65  
 niú (牛/牛) cow, 7, 34, 62  
 niǎo (孃/孃) delicate; graceful, 137  
 niǔ kòu (鈕扣/钮扣) clothing button, 33  
 Nián (年/年) year, 133  
 níng (寧/宁) peace; serenity, 137  
 Niú (牛/牛) ox, 132  
 niàn (念/念) to miss; to long for, 137  
 Niè (聶/聂), 133

o (喔/喔) (a sound), 129  
 ōu zhōu (歐洲/欧洲) Europe, 54  
 pá (爬/爬) to climb, 71, 73, 75  
 péng yǒu (朋友/朋友) friend, 69  
 pā (啪/啪) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 pēng (怦/怦) eager, 135  
 pēng (砰/砰) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 pī (匹/匹) equal to, 34  
 pīn mìng (拼命/拼命) desperately, 63, 64  
 pīn yīn (拼音/拼音) pinyin, 18  
 pīng (乒/乒) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 pū (撲/撲) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 pǎo (跑/跑) ran, 95  
 pǎo (跑/跑) run, 61, 63  
 pà (怕/怕) to fear, 74, 102  
 pàng (胖/胖) fat, 35, 60  
 Péi (裴/裴) the look of a flowing gown, 133  
 Péng (彭/彭), 132  
 Pí (皮/皮) skin; fur, 133  
 Pān (潘/潘) water, 132  
 pū (撲/扑) beat, 145  
 pèi (沛/沛) abundance, 135  
 pǎo (跑/跑) run, 87  
 Pǔ (溥/溥) great; wide; vast, 133  
 pián yí (便宜/便宜) petty gain, 97  
 píng cháng (平常/平常) usual, 41  
 piān (偏/偏) slightly, 56  
 piàn (片/片) slice, 34  
 piàn kè (片刻/片刻) brief moment, 106  
 piàn yǔ (片語/片语) phrase, 111  
 piào liàng (漂亮/漂亮) pretty, 98, 99  
 píng guǒ (蘋果/苹果) apple, 89  
 piān (偏/偏) slanting, 145  
 piān xù (偏序/偏序) partial order, 148  
 piāo zǒu (飄走/飘走) to float away, 129  
 qí qí (奇奇/奇奇) Kiki, 56  
 qí shí (其實/其实) in fact, 38  
 qín fèn (勤奮/勤奋) diligent, 101  
 qín láo (勤勞/勤劳) diligent, 96, 101  
 qíng (情/情) sentiment, 97, 99, 100  
 qíng kuàng (情況/情况) situation, 46

quán (全/全) entire, 61, 95  
 qī yuè (七月/七月) July, 67  
 qīn (親/亲) close, 96  
 qīng (輕/轻) light, 35  
 qīng (青/青) blue, 62  
 qīng chén (清晨/清晨) early morning, 68  
 qīng sōng (輕鬆/轻松) relaxed, 101  
 qǐ (起/起) to rise, 71  
 qǐ gài (乞丐/乞丐) beggar, 71  
 qǐ lái (起來/起来) rise up, 93  
 qǐng jiào (請教/请教) to consult, 37  
 qǐng wèn (請問/请问) excuse me, 37  
 qì (氣/气) air, 92, 93  
 qì chē (汽車/汽车) car, 33  
 qì jí (氣極/气极) extremely angry, 92  
 qù (去/去) go, 51, 54  
 qù (去/去) to go, 4, 40, 55, 60  
 qù guò (去過/去过) went, 54  
 qù nián (去年/去年) last year, 66  
 qù shì (去世/去世) pass away, 69  
 què (卻/却) but, 39  
 què (卻/却) however, 39  
 qí (祈/祈) to pray, 135  
 qí (祺/祺) lucky, 138  
 Qí (齊/齐) equal, 133  
 Qí (齊/齐) orderly, 139  
 qí yì (奇異/奇异) unusual, 126  
 quán (全/全) completely, 124  
 Quán (泉/泉) spring; fountain, 133  
 qī (七/七) seven, 83, 120  
 quē (缺/缺) deficient, 124  
 qī (七/七) 7, 113–115  
 qī (六/六) 7, 114  
 qù (去/去) to go, 89  
 qǐ (杞/杞) a species of willow, 135  
 qǐ (綺/绮) beautiful, 124  
 qǐ (綺/绮) beautiful; resplendent, 137  
 qǐ lái (起來/起来) to rise, 60  
 qǐ wǔ (起舞/起舞) rise and dance, 124  
 qián (前/前) front, 110  
 qián tiān (前天/前天) day before yesterday, 66  
 qiú (求/求) ball, 55  
 qiú (球/球) ball, 33  
 qiān xū (謙虛/谦虚) humble, 96  
 qiāo mén (敲門/敲门) to knock at the door, 7  
 qiū qiān (鞦韆/鞦韆) swing,



43

qiàn (茜/茜) madder, 40  
 qián (前/前) before, 126  
 Qián (錢/钱) money, 132  
 qián biān (前邊/前边) front side, 88  
 qín (勤/勤) diligent; industrious, 135  
 Qín (秦/秦) Qin Dynasty, 132  
 qíng (情/情) feelings; love, 137  
 qíng (晴/晴) clear, 124  
 qíng (晴/晴) fine; fair, 137  
 qióng (瓊/琼) fine jade, 137  
 qióng (瓊/琼) jade, 123  
 qiú (遒/遒) strong; vigorous, 135  
 qiān (千/千) 1000, 115, 116  
 qiān (謙/谦) humble, 135  
 qiān lǐ (千里/千里) long distance, 125  
 qiān qiè (親切/亲切) cordial, 80  
 qīng (清/清) pure; virtuous, 135  
 qīng (青/青) blue, 139  
 qīng chǔ (清楚/清楚) clear, 128  
 qīng tiān (青天/青天) blue sky, 123  
 qīng yǐng (清影/清影) pure shadow, 124  
 qiū (秋/秋) autumn, 139  
 Qiū (邱/邱) hill, 132  
 qǐng (請/请) please, 80  
 qǐng (請/请) to request, 81  
 quán lì (全力/全力) to use all one's strength, 105

rén (人/人) person, 3, 37  
 rén (儿/儿) person, 3  
 rén dōu (人都/人都) everyone, 94  
 rén jiā (人家/人家) household, 32  
 réng rán (仍然/仍然) still, 38  
 rú (如/如) as, 44  
 rú guǒ (如果/如果) if, 38  
 ràng (讓/让) let, 99  
 rè ài (熱愛/热爱) love, 96  
 rè xīn (熱心/热心) warm-hearted, 96  
 rèn zhēn (認真/认真) conscientious, 101  
 rù (入/入) to enter, 3  
 ráo (饒/饶) abundant, 135  
 rén (人/人) people, 124, 125  
 rén (仁/仁) benevolence; kindness, 135  
 Rén (任/任), 132  
 rén cí (仁慈/仁慈) kindness, 96

rén jiān (人間/人间) world of man, 124  
 rén qún (人群/人群) crowd, 97  
 rén qún (人群/人群) crowd, 128  
 róng (榮/荣) glory; honor, 135  
 róng (融/融) glowing, 135  
 róu (柔/柔) soft and tender, 137  
 rú cǐ (如此/如此) 'twas, 126  
 rèn shì (認識/认识) know, 79  
 rùi (瑞/瑞) auspicious, 138  
 rùi (瑞/瑞) lucky, 138  
 rùi (睿/睿) wise and clever, 135  
 rùn (潤/润) moist, 140  
 ràng (讓/让) to cause, 128  
 Rǔn (阮/阮) (ancient musical instrument), 133  
 sān (三/三) three, 67  
 sān yuè (三月/三月) March, 67  
 sān (三/三) 3, 69  
 sēn (森/森) luxuriant vegetation, 135, 140  
 sēn (森/森) trees, 4  
 sī (嘶/嘶) (onomatopoeia), 6  
 sī jī (司機/司机) driver, 104  
 sōng (鬆/松) loose, 93  
 sōng shǔ (松鼠/松鼠) squirrel, 71  
 suī rán (雖然/虽然) although, 38  
 suǒ yǒu (所有/所有) all, 94  
 suǒ yǒu (所有/所有) to possess, 110  
 sàn (散/散) to come loose, 105, 106  
 sàn xīn (散心/散心) relax, 105, 106  
 sì (四/四) four, 67  
 sì yuè (四月/四月) April, 67  
 suì (歲/岁) years of age, 71  
 shí (十/十) 10, 113, 114  
 sān (三/三) 3, 115, 116  
 sān (三/三) three, 120  
 sān jiǎo (三角/三角) triangle, 145  
 sī (思/思) to think, 138  
 sī (絲/丝) silk, 137  
 sōng (嵩/嵩) mountain song, 135  
 Sū (蘇/苏), 132  
 Sūn (孫/孙) grandchild; descendant, 132  
 sān (三/三) 3, 113–115  
 Sài (塞/塞) to compete, 135  
 sì (四/四) 4, 115, 116  
 sì (四/四) four, 120

Sòng (宋/宋), 132  
 sù (素/素) pure white silk, 137  
 Sù (肅/肃) respectful; majestic, 133  
 suì (歲/岁) a year of age, 79  
 suì (遂/遂) to satisfy; to fulfill, 135  
 sì (五/五) 4, 113  
 sì (四/四) 4, 113–115  
 suǒ yǒu (所有/所有) possess, 130  
 shé me (什麼/什么) what, 36, 56, 103  
 shéi (誰/谁) who, 36  
 shí yuè (十月/十月) October, 67  
 shí (十/十) 10, 69  
 shí (時/时) time, 73, 74  
 shí èr yuè (十二月/十二月) December, 68  
 shí hòu (時候/时候) time, 71  
 shí jiān (時間/时间) time, 65, 102  
 shí tài (時態/时态) tense (grammar), 112  
 shí yī yuè (十一月/十一月) November, 68  
 shí zài (實在/实在) really, 62  
 shú shu (叔叔/叔叔) uncle, 62, 63  
 shān (山/山) mountain, 3, 4  
 shān yáng (山羊/山羊) goat, 63  
 shāng rén (商人/商人) businessman, 103  
 shāng xīn (傷心/伤心) heartbroken, 92  
 shēn (身/身) body, 43, 61, 95  
 shēn chū (伸出/伸出) to stick out, 43, 48  
 shēng (生/生) to give birth, 131, 140  
 shēng (聲/声) sound, 94  
 shēng huó (生活/生活) life, 71  
 shēng qì (生氣/生气) angry, 92  
 shēng yī-n (聲音/声音) sound, 7  
 shī (尸/尸) corpse, 4  
 shī (師/师) instructor, 103  
 shī (濕/湿) wet, 40  
 shī fù (師傅/师傅) master worker, 101  
 shī qù (失去/失去) lose, 69  
 shī zi (獅子/狮子) lion, 34  
 shū (書/书) book, 151  
 shū (書/书) book, 151  
 shū (書/书) book, 151  
 shū (書/书) book, 31, 151

shū zhuō (書桌/书桌) desk, 35  
 shū zi (梳子/梳子) comb, 31  
 shūai (摔/摔) to fall, 62  
 shūo (說/说) say, 47  
 shūo (說/说) speak, 98, 99  
 shūo (說/说) to say, 56, 98  
 shǎng cì (賞賜/赏赐) award, 41  
 shǒu (手/手) hand, 31  
 shuǐ (水/水) water, 3, 60  
 shàng (上/上) above, 4, 51  
 shàng (上/上) on top of, 8, 43  
 shàng (上/上) up, 66, 75  
 shàng bān (上班/上班) to be at work, 40  
 shì (事/事) matters, 97  
 shì (式/式) form, 112  
 shì (是/是) is, 37–39, 56, 68, 69, 103  
 shì qíng (事情/事情) a matter, 33  
 shòu (瘦/瘦) thin, 35, 44  
 shòu shāng (受傷/受伤) injured, 74  
 shòu shāng (受傷/受伤) to get injured, 74, 102  
 shù (樹/树) tree, 33, 71, 73  
 shù zhī (樹支/树枝) branch, 32  
 shuì (睡/睡) to sleep, 54, 104–106  
 shuì jiào (睡覺/睡觉) sleep, 53, 104  
 shuì zháo (睡著/睡着) to fall asleep, 8  
 sháo (韶/韶) a form of music; beautiful, harmonious, 137  
 shé (舌/舌) tongue, 83  
 shé me (什麼/什么) what, 78, 79, 81, 120  
 shí (十/十) 10, 114–116  
 shí (十/十) ten, 120  
 shí (實/实) real, 145  
 shí (時/时) time, 126  
 Shí (石/石) rocks, 132  
 shí (石/石) stone, 139  
 shù (數/数) number, 144  
 shān (山/山) mountain, 135  
 shān (珊/珊) tinkling of jade, 137, 140  
 shēn (深/深) profound, 128  
 shēn biān (身邊/身边) side, 129  
 shēng qì (生氣/生气) angry, 80  
 Shī (施/施) to carry out, 132  
 shī (詩/诗) poetry, 138  
 shī sàng (失喪/失丧) lost, 126  
 Shū (舒/舒) to unfold, 135

shūo (說/说) say, 81  
 shūo (說/说) speak, 79  
 shūo (說/说) to say, 82, 83  
 shàn (善/善) good; virtuous, 135  
 Shàn (單/单), 133  
 shàn (贍/贍) to provide, 135  
 shào (邵/邵) to encourage; graceful, 137  
 Shào (邵/邵), 132  
 shè miǎn (赦免/赦免) to pardon, 126  
 shèn (慎/慎) cautious; prudent, 135  
 shèng (盛/盛) abundant; rich, 135  
 shì (世/世) generation, 138  
 shì (事/事) affairs, 124  
 shì (士/士) scholar, 135  
 shì (是/是) is, 120, 121, 123  
 shì (是/是) that, 126  
 shòu (受/受) to receive, 62  
 shù lùn (數論/数论) number theory, 145  
 shù xué (數學/数学) mathematics, 143, 144  
 shuò (碩/硕) great; large, 135  
 Shěn (沈/沈), 132  
 shǐ (使/使) to make, 126  
 Shǐ (史/史) history, 132  
 shǒu (守/守) to protect, 135  
 shǒu zhǐ (手指/手指) finger, 120  
 Shuǐ (水/水) water, 133  
 tái (台/台) platform, 34  
 táng (堂/堂) hall, 34  
 táo (逃/逃) to flee, 74  
 táo zi (桃子/桃子) peach, 73  
 téng tòng (疼痛/疼痛) a pain, 74, 102  
 tíng (停/停) stop, 72  
 tóng xīn (同心/同心) with one heart, 102  
 tóu (頭/头) head, 8, 34, 43, 48, 102, 104  
 tú rán (突然/突然) suddenly, 35, 71  
 tā (他/他) he, 8, 30, 39, 54, 56, 69, 72–74, 95, 97  
 tā (他/他) him, 56  
 tā (她/她) her, 42, 51  
 tā (她/她) she, 22, 30, 55, 72, 75, 93  
 tā (它/它) it, 30  
 tā de (他的/他的) his, 30, 56  
 tā de (她的/她的) her, 30  
 tā de (它的/它的) it's, 30  
 tā mén (他們/他们) their, 30  
 tā mén (他們/他们) them, 30, 41  
 tā mén (他們/他们) they, 48,

106  
 tā mén (她們/她们) them, 30  
 tā mén (它們/它们) them, 30  
 tā men (他們/他们) they, 43  
 tān lán (貪婪/贪婪) greedy, 60  
 tāng mǔ (湯姆/汤姆) Tom, 41, 57, 71  
 tīng (聽/听) hear, 23  
 tīng (聽/听) listen, 47  
 tōng (通/通) through, 98  
 tōu lǎn (偷懶/偷懒) to slack, 101  
 tōu zǒu (偷走/偷走) to steal, 71  
 tuī (推/推) to push, 31  
 tuō (拖/拖) to drag, 74  
 tǎo yàn (討厭/讨厌) to dislike, 94  
 tǎo yàn (討厭/讨厌) to loathe, 31, 92  
 tǐ (體/体) style, 152  
 tǐ liàng (體諒/体谅) to show understanding for, 98  
 tǔ (土/土) soil, 102  
 tuǐ (腿/腿) leg, 61  
 tuǐ (腿/腿) legs, 95  
 tà (嗒/嗒) dejected, 6  
 tàn (歎/歎) sigh, 42  
 tàn qì (嘆氣/叹气) to sigh, 94  
 tàn wàng (探望/探望) to look about, 43, 47, 48  
 tù (兔/兔) rabbit, 45, 64  
 tù zi (兔子/兔子) rabbit, 43, 74, 95  
 Tái (臺/台) a lookout; an observatory, 133  
 tái zǒu (抬走/抬走) to carry away, 89  
 tán (曇/曇) clouds, 137  
 tán (潭/潭) deep water; profound, 135  
 Tán (譚/谭) to talk, 132  
 tán lùn (談論/谈论) to talk about, 82  
 tán tiān (談天/谈天) to chat, 82, 83  
 Táng (唐/唐) the Tang Dynasty, 132  
 Táo (陶/陶) pottery, 133  
 Tóng (童/童) child, 133  
 tóu (頭/头) head, 120–122  
 tú lùn (圖論/图论) graph theory, 144  
 Túi (頹/颓) to crumble, 133  
 tā (他/他) he, 79, 82, 118, 120  
 tā (它/它) it, 89  
 tā mén (他們/他们) they, 81  
 Tāng (湯/汤) hot water; soup, 133



tī (踢/踢) kick, 87  
 tōng dào (通到/通到) to lead to, 89  
 tūi lǐ (推理/推理) logic, 144  
 tài (太/太) extremely, 78  
 Tài (太/太) very big, 133  
 tuò (拓/拓) open, 145  
 tuò pǔ (拓撲/拓撲) topology, 147  
 tāo lùn (討論/讨论) to discuss, 82  
 tāo yàn (討厭/讨厌) to loathe, 89  
 tǒng jì (統計/统计) compile statistics, 145  
 tiáo (條/条) long strip, 34  
 tiáo jiàn (條件/条件) conditions, 38  
 tiān (天/天) day, 43, 73  
 tiān (天/天) sky, 7, 66, 72  
 tiān (天/天) the sky, 65, 66  
 tiān é (天鵝/天鹅) swan, 35  
 tiǎo (窈/窕) slender; charming, 137  
 tián (恬/恬) quiet; undisturbed, 137  
 tián (甜/甜) sweet; agreeable, 137  
 Tián (田/田) agricultural land, 132  
 tíng (停/停) stop, 87  
 tíng (廷/廷) monarch's court, 139  
 tíng (霆/霆) sudden thunder, 139  
 tiān (添/添) to increase, 135  
 tiān shàng (天上/天上) heaven, 123  
 tīng (聽/听) listen, 83  
 tīng dào (聽到/听到) hear, 54  
 tīng lì (聽力/听力) listening comprehension, 83  
 tīng zhe (聽著/听着) listen to, 83  
 tiào (跳/跳) jump, 87  
 Wáng (王/王) King, 152  
 wáng zǐ (王子/王子) prince, 55, 57  
 wáng zǐ (王子/王子) prince, 94  
 wéi ní (惟妮/惟妮) Winnie, 100  
 wéi yī (唯一/唯一) only, 69  
 wén (聞/闻) smell, 47  
 wén fǎ (文法/文法) grammar, 109, 111  
 wú (無/无) without, 105  
 wú liáo (無聊/无聊) bored, 92  
 wā (哇/哇) (a particle), 7  
 wā (哇/哇) wow, 42  
 wēi (威/威) dignity; authority;

awe, 135  
 wēi (威/威) might, 141  
 Wēn (溫/温) warm, 133  
 wēng (喻/喻) (onomatopoeia), 7  
 Wēng (翁/翁) father, 133  
 wū (鳴/鸣) (onomatopoeia), 7  
 wū pó (巫婆/巫婆) witch, 20  
 wū yā (烏鴉/乌鸦) crow, 40, 48, 60, 63  
 wū zi (屋子/屋子) house, 59  
 wǎn (婉/婉) amiable; pleasant, 137  
 Wǎn (宛/宛) crooked, 133  
 wǎn (琬/琬) (a kind of jade tablet), 138  
 wǎn cān (晚餐/晚餐) dinner, 39, 102  
 wěi (尾/尾) tail, 34  
 wǒ (我/我) I, 22, 23, 29, 39, 41, 42, 51, 53, 56, 62, 71, 73, 93, 98–100, 102, 103  
 wǒ (我/我) me, 98, 99  
 wǒ cái (我才/我才) I myself, 31  
 wǒ de (我的/我的) my, 22, 30, 71  
 wǒ mén (我們/我们) we, 29  
 wǒ men (我們/我们) we, 38  
 wǔ (五/五) five, 67  
 wǔ yuè (五月/五月) May, 68  
 wǔ (午/午) noon, 104, 106  
 wài (外/外) outside, 7  
 wài pó (外婆/外婆) maternal grandmother, 20  
 wèi (位/位) (mw), 35  
 wèi (位/位) location, 34  
 wèi (為/为) for, 36  
 wèn tí (問題/问题) question, 36  
 Wáng (王/王) king, 132, 139  
 wéi (微/微) tiny, 143  
 wéi (惟/惟) to think; to meditate, 135  
 wéi (維/维) to hold fast, 135  
 Wéi (韋/韦) tanned leather, 132  
 Wéi dé (韋得/韦得) Wilbur, 141  
 wéi fēn (微分/微分) differential, 144, 145  
 wén (文/文) a composition; culture, 138  
 Wén (聞/闻) to hear, 133  
 Wú (吳/吴), 132, 140  
 wú (梧/梧) a support, 135  
 wú (無/无) without, 124  
 Wāng (汪/汪) pool of water, 132  
 Wū (巫/巫) witch; wizard,

133  
 Wū (烏/乌) crow; raven, 133  
 wū yā (烏鴉/乌鸦) crow, 89  
 wàn (萬/万) 10<sup>4</sup>, 115, 116  
 Wàn (萬/万) ten thousand, 132  
 wàng (旺/旺) prosperous, 135  
 wàng (望/望) to watch; to hope, 138  
 wàng (王/王) king, 118, 119  
 wèi (為/为) for, 120  
 Wèi (魏/魏) lofty; stately, 132  
 Wèi (魏/魏) lofty; stately; magnificent, 133  
 Wèi (魏/魏) magnificent, 138  
 wèi lái (未來/未来) coming, 112  
 wèn (問/问) ask, 123  
 wèn (問/问) to ask, 60  
 wèn (問/问) to request, 81  
 wèn hào (問號/问号) question mark, 111  
 wèn tí (問題/问题) problem, 80  
 wù (悟/悟) to become aware of; to realize, 135  
 wù (晤/晤) to meet; enlightened; wise, 135  
 wù huì (誤會/误会) misunderstanding, 81  
 wǔ (五/五) 5, 113–115  
 wǔ (四/四) 5, 113  
 wǎn ān (晚安/晚安) good night, 77  
 wǎng (往/往) toward, 88  
 Wěi (尾/尾) tail, 133  
 wěn (穩/稳) stable; steady, 135  
 wěng (莢/莢) flourishing; lush, 138  
 wǒ (我/我) I, 48, 78, 79, 81, 85, 120, 121, 123, 126, 129, 130  
 wǒ (我/我) my, 126, 129  
 wǒ ài (我愛/我爱) my love, 128  
 wǒ de (我的/我的) my, 120, 128, 129  
 wǔ (五/五) five, 120  
 wǔ (伍/伍) army, 128  
 wǔ (搗/搗) to cover, 84  
 Wǔ (武/武) military, 132  
 wǔ (舞/舞) to dance, 137  
 wǔ dòng (舞動/舞动) to dance, 128  
 wa (哇/哇) wow, 60  
 xíng róng (形容/形容) describe, 109  
 xíng róng (形容/形容) to describe, 35

xíng shēng (形聲/形声) phonetic compound, 3  
 xué shēng (學生/学生) student, 103  
 xī shí (吸食/吸食) to suck, 72  
 xīn (心/心) heart, 97, 99, 100  
 xīn dì (心地/心地) moral character, 91  
 xīn qíng (心情/心情) mood, 93  
 xīng fèn (興奮/兴奋) excited, 92  
 xīng qí (星期/星期) week, 65–68  
 xīng xīng (猩猩/猩猩) gorilla, 63  
 xū (虛/虚) empty, 97  
 xū yào (需要/需要) need, 47  
 xǐ (洗/洗) wash, 64  
 xǐ huān (喜歡/喜欢) like, 47, 53  
 xǐ huān (喜歡/喜欢) to like, 43, 94  
 xǐ huān (喜歡/喜欢) to like, 56  
 xiǎo (小/小) small, 35  
 xiǎo tōu (小偷/小偷) thief, 22  
 xiǎo tóu (小頭/小头) small head, 22  
 xǐng lái (醒來/醒来) to wake up, 104  
 xǔ duō (許多/许多) much, 41  
 xìng qù (興趣/兴趣) interest, 92  
 xìng yùn (幸運/幸运) fortunate, 57  
 xí (錫/锡) tin, 139  
 Xú (徐/徐) slowly; gently; calmly, 132  
 Xúan (玄/玄) far and obscure, 133  
 xué (學/学) study, 144, 145  
 Xún (荀/荀), 133  
 xún huí (尋回/寻回) found, 126  
 xī (悉/悉) to know, 135  
 xī (溪/溪) mountain stream, 135  
 xī (皙/皙) fair, white, 135  
 xī (義/義) (a legendary ruler), 139  
 xī (膝/膝) knee, 122  
 xū (胥/胥) together, 139  
 Xū (須/须) must, 133  
 Xūan (宣/宣) to announce, 133  
 Xūe (薛/薛) (a kind of marsh grass), 132  
 xūn (勳/勳) merits; honors, 135  
 xiàn xìng (線性/线性) linear,

144  
 xiè xiè (謝謝/谢谢) thanks, 80, 81  
 xù (旭/旭) radiance of day-break, 135  
 xù (續/续) to continue; to renew, 138  
 xuàn (絢/绚) bright and brilliant, 137  
 xǐ (喜/喜) a joyful thing, 138  
 xǐ (禧/禧) happiness; blessings, 138  
 Xǔ (許/许), 132  
 xuě (雪/雪) snow, 137  
 xián (嫌/嫌) to detest, 92  
 xié lì (協力/协力) to unite efforts, 102  
 xíng xiàng (形象/形象) image, 42  
 xióng (熊/熊) bear, 75  
 xiān (仙/仙) celestial being, 4  
 xiāng (相/相) mutually, 96  
 xiāng fǎn (相反/相反) on the contrary, 39  
 xiāng jiāo (香蕉/香蕉) banana, 53  
 xiōng dì (兄弟/兄弟) brothers, 62  
 xiū (咻/咻) din, 7  
 xiū xi (休息/休息) rest, 105  
 Xiǎn (洗/洗), 133  
 xiǎng (想/想) like, 100  
 xiǎng (想/想) think, 98  
 xiǎng (想/想) to think, 97, 98  
 xiǎng (想/想) would like to, 41  
 xiǎng (響/响) sound, 7  
 xiǎng shòu (享受/享受) to enjoy, 106  
 xiǎng yào (想要/想要) would like to, 100  
 Xiǎo (小/小) little, 140  
 xiǎo (小/小) little, 40, 42, 45, 59, 63, 64  
 xiǎo (小/小) small, 97  
 xiǎo (曉/晓) daybreak; dawn, 137  
 xiǎo māo (小貓/小猫) kitten, 40  
 xiǎo yā (小鴨/小鸭) duckling, 61  
 xià (下/下) below, 4  
 xià (下/下) down, 62, 66  
 xià (下/下) to form an opinion, 99  
 xià (嚇/吓) scared, 74, 95  
 xià (嚇/吓) to scare, 39, 61, 95  
 xià lái (下來/下来) come down, 72  
 xià lái (下來/下来) to come

down, 51  
 xià wǔ (下午/下午) after noon, 106  
 xiàn (現/现) present, 65  
 xiàn zài (現在/现在) at present, 112  
 xiàn zài (現在/现在) now, 68  
 xiàng (像/像) to resemble, 57  
 xiàng (象/象) elephant, 61  
 xiàng xíng (象形/象形) pictograph, 3  
 xiào (笑/笑) to laugh, 63  
 xiào (笑/笑) to smile, 4  
 xìn (信/信) letter, 32  
 xiá (俠/侠) chivalry, 135  
 xiá (峽/峡) a gorge, 135  
 xiá (黠/黠) smart; clever, 135  
 xián (嫻/娴) refined; gracious, 137  
 xián (絃/絃) the string of a musical instrument, 137  
 xián (賢/贤) capable; versatile, 135  
 xián (閒/閒) quiet; calm, 135  
 xiáng (祥/祥) auspicious, 135  
 xié (協/协) to agree; to help, 135  
 xíng (行/行) to walk, 138  
 Xióng (熊/熊) bear, 132  
 xiā (瞎/瞎) blind, 126  
 xiān shēng (先生/先生) mister, 118, 119  
 xiāng (香/香) sweet-smelling, 137  
 Xiāo (蕭/萧) oxtail southern wood; respectful, 132  
 xīn (心/心) heart, 126, 137  
 xīn (新/新) new; fresh, 135  
 xīn (欣/欣) glad, 137  
 xīn (欣/欣) glad; joyful, 137  
 xīn wō (心窩/心窝) heart of hearts, 129  
 xīng (星/星) star, 140  
 xīng (興/兴) to rise; to thrive, 135  
 Xià (夏/夏) summer, 132  
 xià (夏/夏) summer, 138  
 xiàn (現/现) to emerge, 135  
 Xiàng (向/向) to face, 133  
 xiàng (相/相) to examine; to help, 138  
 xiào (孝/孝) dutiful, 139  
 xiào (笑/笑) to laugh, 83  
 Xiè (謝/谢) to thank, 132, 139  
 xiè (謝/谢) to thank, 78  
 xìng (性/性) property, 148  
 xìn (信/信) to believe, 126  
 xìng (幸/幸) well-being, 138  
 xìng (興/兴) cheerful; happy, 135

xiù (秀/秀) brilliant; beautiful; graceful, 137  
 xiǎo (小/小) little, 89  
 xiǎo (小/小) small, 129  
 xiǎo yā (小鴨/小鴨) duckling, 118  
 xiǎo zhǐ (小指/小指) little finger, 121  
 yá shuā (牙刷/牙刷) toothbrush, 35  
 yá yī (牙醫/牙医) dentist, 104  
 yán sè (顏色/颜色) color, 43  
 yī (一/一) one, 35, 70, 74, 98, 104  
 yí cì (一次/一次) once, 56  
 yí ge (一個/一个) a, 22  
 yí zhèn (一陣/一阵) a burst, 71  
 yóu (游/游) to swim, 60  
 yóu dēng (油燈/油灯) oil lamp, 34  
 yú (魚/鱼) fish, 34, 57  
 yú shì (於是/于是) thus, 38  
 yī (一/一) one, 67  
 yī shēng (醫生/医生) doctor, 103  
 yī yuè (一月/一月) January, 67  
 yī (一/一) one, 43, 73, 75, 101  
 yī huǐ (一會兒/一会儿) in a little while, 66  
 yī shēng (醫生/医生) doctor, 104  
 yī tiān (一天/一天) one day, 45  
 yī wèi (一位/一位) a, 69  
 yī zhī (一隻/一只) a, 45  
 yīng gāi (應該/应该) should, 42  
 yō (唷/唷), 7  
 yōu xián (悠閑/悠闲) leisurely, 60  
 yōu xián (悠閑/悠闲) leisurely, 101  
 yǎ (雅/雅) refined; polished, 137  
 yǎn (儼/严) majestic; respectable, 135  
 yǎn (眼/眼) eye, 97  
 yǎo (杳/杳) deep and expansive, 135  
 yě (也/也) also, 4, 64, 69, 95  
 yě (野/野) wild, 42  
 yě láng (野狼/野狼) wolves, 38  
 yǐng zi (影子/影子) shadow, 63  
 yǒng gǎn (勇敢/勇敢) bravery, 95  
 yǒng yuǎn (永遠/永远) al-

ways, 38  
 yǒng yuǎn (永遠/永远) forever, 70  
 yǒu (有/有) has, 22  
 yǒu (有/有) have, 37, 45, 74, 92, 102  
 yǔ (語/语) language, 42  
 yǔ yán (語言/语言) language, 23, 111  
 yàn wù (厭惡/厌恶) to abhor, 94  
 yàng (樣/样) shape, 93  
 yào (要/要) to want, 51  
 yào (要/要) want, 36, 41, 47, 53, 54, 56, 97, 100  
 yào (要/要) will, 56  
 yì (一/一) one, 93, 94  
 yì (弋/弋) stake, 4  
 yì diǎn (一點/一点) a little, 59  
 yì shù (藝術/艺术) art, 103  
 yì tóu (一頭/一头) one (mw), 44  
 yì zhī (一隻/一只) a, 71, 73  
 yòu (又/又) again, 40  
 yù (愈/愈) more, 43, 73  
 yù yán (預言/预言) prediction, 23  
 yuàn (願/愿) willing, 99  
 yuàn yì (願意/愿意) to be willing, 99  
 yuàn yì (願意/愿意) to wish, 47  
 yuè (月/月) the moon, 65, 66  
 yuè (越/越) more, 43  
 yá (涯/涯) water's edge, 135  
 yán (嚴/严) beautiful, 135  
 Yán (嚴/严) stern; strict, 132  
 yán (妍/妍) beautiful, 138  
 yán (巖/巖) a rock, 135  
 yán (言/言) speech, 83  
 Yáng (揚/扬) to raise, 132  
 Yáng (楊/杨) poplar, 133, 139  
 Yáo (姚/姚) handsome, 132  
 yáo (瑤/瑶) precious jade, 137  
 Yí (宜/宜) right; fitting, 133  
 yí (怡/怡) harmony; jubilation, 137  
 yí cì (一次/一次) once, 120  
 yí tiào (一條/一条) a, 120  
 Yóu (尤/尤) to feel bitter, 133  
 Yóu (猶/犹) similar to, 133  
 Yú (余/余) I, 132  
 yú (愉/愉) happy; contented, 138  
 yú (愉/愉) happy; joyful, 137  
 Yú (於/于) in, 134  
 yú (瑜/瑜) perfect gem, 137  
 Yúan (元/元) first, 138  
 yúan (園/园) garden, 118

yúan (圓/圆) round, 124  
 yúan (援/援) to lead; to rescue, 136  
 Yúan (袁/袁) the graceful look of a flowing robe, 132, 138  
 yúan tóu (源頭/源头) fountainhead, 130  
 yā (呀/呀) (sound), 118, 119  
 yān (嫣/嫣) captivating; fascinating, 137  
 yāng (泱/泱) great; profound, 135  
 yī (一/一) 1, 115, 116  
 yī (一/一) one, 84, 85, 120  
 Yī (伊/伊) he; she, 133  
 yī (咿/咿) (sound), 118, 119  
 yī huǐ (一會兒/一会儿) in a little while, 77  
 yīn (陰/阴) overcast, 124  
 yōng (雍/雍) harmony; peaceful, 136  
 yōu (優/优) excellent; abundant, 136  
 yōu (呦/呦) (sound), 118, 119  
 yī (一/一) 1, 113, 114  
 Yàn (晏/晏) clear, 133  
 yàn (雁/雁) wild goose, 137  
 yào (樂/乐) to love, 137  
 yào (耀/耀) to shine; to dazzle, 138  
 yào (要/要) want, 81, 129  
 Yè (葉/叶) leaf, 132  
 yì (億/亿) 10<sup>8</sup>, 116  
 yì (奕/奕) great; grand; abundant, 136  
 yì (屹/屹) to rise high, 135  
 Yì (易/易) to exchange, 133  
 yì (毅/毅) firm; endurance; fortitude, 136  
 yì (益/益) to increase, 136  
 Yì (義/义) justice, 134  
 yì (翼/翼) wings; to help, 136  
 yì (肄/肄) to study; to toil, 136  
 yì (藝/艺) art; skill, 136  
 yì (誼/谊) friendship, 138  
 yì (軼/轍) to excel, 136  
 yìn (蔭/蔭) to shelter, 136  
 yìn (蔭/荫) shade, 136  
 yòu (又/又) again, 120  
 yòu (又/又) but, 123  
 yòu biān (右邊/右边) right side, 88  
 yòu hand (右手/右手) right, 121  
 Yù (喻/喻) parable; to explain, 133  
 yù (域/域) frontier, 136  
 yù (欲/欲) desire, 123  
 Yù (玉/玉) precious stone,



## 133

yù (裕/裕) abundance; generous, 136  
 yù (譽/譽) fame; honor, 136  
 yù (豫/豫) comfort; to travel, 136  
 Yù (郁/郁) colorfully ornamented, 133  
 yù yǔ (玉宇/玉宇) splendid hall, 123  
 yuè (嶽/嶽) a high mountain, 136  
 yuè (月/月) moon, 123, 124  
 yuè (月/月) the moon, 137  
 Yùe (樂/樂) music, 133  
 yuè (簫/簫) a kind of flute, 137  
 Yùe (越/越) to go beyond, 133  
 yùn (韻/韻) rhymes, 137  
 yǎn (眼/眼) eye, 126  
 yǎn (眼/眼) eyes, 122  
 yǎng (養/養) raise, 118  
 yǎo (咬/咬) bite, 120  
 yǎo le (咬了/咬了) bit, 120  
 yě (也/也) also, 129  
 yǐ (已/已) already, 126  
 yǐ (旖/旖) romantic; tender, 137  
 yǒng (勇/勇) courageous; fearless, 136  
 yǒng (詠/詠) to sing; to hum, 137  
 yǒng yǒu (擁有/擁有) to have, 129  
 yǒu (有/有) have, 118, 119, 123, 124, 128  
 yǒu (有/有) to have, 81  
 yǔ (宇/宇) roof, 140  
 Yǔ (禹/禹), 134  
 yǔ (羽/羽) feather; wing, 138  
 yǔ (語/語) language, 83  
 yǔ (雨/雨) rain, 138  
 yíng (熒/熒) candle light, 136  
 yíng (盈/盈) to fill, 138  
 yíng (贏/贏) to win, 136  
 yīn (殷/殷) flourishing, 136  
 yīn (音/音) sound; musical note, 137  
 yīn wèi (因為/因為) because, 120  
 yīng (櫻/櫻) cherry; cherry blossoms, 137  
 yīng (瑛/瑛) glitter of jade, 137  
 Yīng (英/英) a flower, 133  
 yīng yǒu (應有/應有) deserved, 124  
 yīng yǔ (英語/英語) English, 79, 84  
 Yīn (尹/尹) to govern, 132

yǐn hào (引號/引號) quotation marks, 111  
 yǐng (穎/穎) outstanding; remarkable, 138  
 yuàn (願/願) willing, 99, 100  
 zé (則/則) as for him, 31  
 zúo (昨/昨) yesterday, 66  
 zúo tiān (昨天/昨天) yesterday, 39  
 zēng (增/增) to increase, 136  
 Zēng (曾/曾) (a 4th generation relationship), 132  
 Zēng (曾/曾) 3 generation difference, 133  
 zī (吱/吱) a squeak, 7  
 Zōng (宗/宗) ancestor, 152  
 Zǎi (宰/宰) to preside, 133  
 zǎo (早/早) early, 61, 70  
 zě me (怎麼/怎么) how, 64, 93  
 zě yàng (怎樣/怎样) how, 39  
 zěn me (怎麼/怎么) how, 36  
 zǐ jù (子句/子句) clause, 38  
 zǒng (總/總) always, 56  
 zǒng shì (總是/总是) always, 97  
 zǒu (走/走) walk, 73  
 zǒu dào (走到/走到) walked, 106  
 zài (再/再) further, 64  
 zài (在/在) at, 8, 44, 51, 60  
 zài (在/在) to exist, 65  
 zì cóng (自從/自从) ever since, 69  
 zì huì (字彙/字汇) vocabulary, 111  
 zì mǔ (字母/字母) alphabet, 111  
 zùì hòu (最後/最后) last, 74  
 zuò (作/作) to do, 37, 46  
 zuò (做/做) do, 103  
 zuò (做/做) to do, 42, 74  
 Zōng (宗/宗) ancestor, 133  
 Zōu (鄒/鄒), 132  
 zài (在/在) at, 118, 124, 128, 129  
 zài jiàn (再見/再见) good bye, 77  
 zàn (贊/贊) to assist; to support, 136  
 zì fǎn (自反/自反) reflexive, 148  
 zùì (罪/罪) guilt, 126  
 zùì hòu (最後/最后) last, 89  
 zuò xià (坐下/坐下) to sit down, 88  
 zǒu (走/走) to walk, 78  
 zǒu (走/走) walk, 87  
 Zǔ (祖/祖) grandfather; grandmother, 133  
 zǔ hé (組合/组合) combina-

tion, 143  
 zǔi (嘴/嘴) mouth, 83  
 zǔi bā (嘴巴/嘴巴) mouth, 84  
 zǔo (佐/佐) to assist, 138  
 zǔo biān (左邊/左边) left side, 88  
 zháo (著/着), 105  
 zhāng (張/張) to spread, 35  
 zhāng wàng (張望/张望) to look around, 47, 48  
 zhāng yú (章魚/章鱼) octopus, 59  
 zhāo hū (招呼/招呼) call, 77  
 zhēn (珍/珍) precious; rare, 137  
 zhēn (甄/甄) potter's wheel, 138  
 zhēn (真/真) real, 56  
 zhēn (真/真) really, 42, 56  
 zhēn (貞/貞) chastity; pure, 137  
 zhēng (崢/崢) lofty; outstanding, 136  
 zhī (隻/只) single, 35  
 zhōng (中/中) medium, 152  
 zhōng (鐘/钟) a bell, 68  
 zhōng chéng (忠誠/忠诚) faithfulness, 96  
 zhōng hòu (忠厚/忠厚) honest and kind, 96  
 zhōng yú (終於/终于) finally, 75, 106  
 zhōng yāng (中央/中央) middle, 44  
 zhūa (抓/抓) grabbed, 55  
 zhūo nòng (捉弄/捉弄) to play a joke on, 42  
 zhǎi (窄/窄) narrow, 35  
 zhǎn (嶄/嶄) towering, 136  
 zhǎn (盞/盞) small cup, 34  
 zhǎo (爪/爪) claw/talon, 4  
 zhǎo dào (找到/找到) to find, 56  
 zhěn tóu (枕頭/枕头) pillow, 8  
 zhǐ (只/只) only, 102  
 zhǐ hǎo (只好/只好) could only, 100  
 zhǐ shì (指事/指事) ideograph, 3  
 zhǐ tiáo (紙條/纸条) slip of paper, 35  
 zhǐ yào (只要/只要) provided that, 38  
 zhǒng (腫/肿) swollen, 62  
 zhǔ cí (主詞/主词) subject, 45  
 zhǔ yì (主意/主意) idea, 42  
 zhǔan yǎn (轉眼/转眼) in the twinkling of an eye, 70  
 zhǔan zhù (轉注/转注) se-

mantic derivation, [3](#)  
 zhǔn shí (準時/准时) on time, [70](#)  
 zhàn (佔/佔) to seize, [97](#)  
 zhàn (站/站) to stand, [44](#), [87](#)  
 zhè (這/这) these, [62](#)  
 zhè (這/这) this, [7](#), [65](#), [74](#)  
 zhè ge (這個/这个) this, [106](#)  
 zhè lǐ (這裡/这里) here, [99](#)  
 zhè me (這麼/这么) like this, [38](#), [72](#)  
 zhè xiē (這些/这些) these, [35](#)  
 zhè yàng (這樣/这样) like this, [74](#)  
 zhèn dìng (鎮定/镇定) calm, [92](#)  
 zhèng (正/正) in the process of, [71](#), [73](#)  
 zhèng zài (正在/正在) in the process of, [50](#)  
 zhì (置/置) to place at, [110](#)  
 zhòng (重/重) heavy, [35](#)  
 zhòng yīn (重音/重音) stress/accent, [111](#)  
 zhù yīn (注音/注音) ZhuYin, [18](#), [152](#)  
 zhé (哲/哲) a thinker; wise, [136](#)  
 zhí (值/值) value, [144](#)  
 Zhā (查/查), [134](#)

Zhān (詹/詹) verbosity, [133](#)  
 Zhāng (張/张) to spread, [132](#)  
 zhāng (璋/璋) an ancient jade ornament, [136](#)  
 zhāng (璋/璋) jade tablet, [138](#)  
 Zhāng (章/章) a piece of writing, [133](#)  
 zhāo (昭/昭) clear, [139](#)  
 zhāo (朝/朝) morning, [136](#)  
 zhēn (真/真) true, [126](#)  
 zhī (之/之) of, [126](#)  
 zhī (之/之) to arrive at, [139](#)  
 zhī (知/知) know, [81](#)  
 zhī (知/知) knowledge, [138](#)  
 Zhī (芝/芝), [133](#)  
 zhōng (忠/忠) faithful; devoted, [136](#)  
 Zhōng (鍾/钟) bell, [132](#)  
 Zhōu (周/周), [140](#)  
 Zhōu (周/周) Zhou Dynasty, [132](#)  
 Zhū (朱/朱) bright red, [132](#)  
 zhū (朱/朱) bright red, [124](#)  
 zhū (珠/珠) pearl, [137](#)  
 Zhūang (莊/庄) solemn, [133](#)  
 zhūo le (捉了/捉了) caught, [120](#)  
 Zhàn (戰/战) war, [133](#)  
 Zhàn (湛/湛) deep; profound,

[133](#)  
 zhào (照/照) illuminate, [124](#)  
 zhào (照/照) to shine upon, [138](#)  
 Zhào (趙/赵), [139](#)  
 Zhào (趙/赵) (an ancient feudal state), [132](#)  
 zhè (這/这) this, [56](#)  
 zhè lǐ (這裡/这里) here, [118](#)  
 zhèng (正/正) proper, [136](#)  
 Zhèng (鄭/郑) solemn, [132](#), [139](#)  
 Zhì (摯/摯) sincere, [133](#)  
 Zhì (智/智) capable; wisdom, [133](#)  
 zhì (陟/陟) to ascend, [136](#)  
 zhù (住/住) to cease, [84](#)  
 zhù (助/助) to help, [136](#)  
 zhěng (拯/拯) to save; to deliver, [136](#)  
 zhǔan (轉/转) revolve, [124](#)  
 zhǔan (轉/转) to turn, [89](#)  
 zhǔan shēn (轉身/转身) to turn about, [87](#)  
 zhe (著/着) (adv. part.), [47](#)  
 zhe (著/着) (adv. particle), [129](#)  
 zhe (著/着) (adverbial), [7](#)  
 zhou (舟/舟) boat, [4](#)  
 zi (子/子) son, [8](#)



## ENGLISH WORD INDEX

- 10<sup>4</sup> 萬/万 (wàn), 115, 116  
 10<sup>8</sup> 億/亿 (yì), 116  
 ' 之/之 (zhì), 101  
 's (possesses) 的/的 (de), 60  
 's 的/的 (de), 7, 60, 62, 63, 69, 71, 94, 97, 100, 106, 121, 128  
 'twas 如此/如此 (rú cǐ), 126  
 ('s) 的/的 (de), 7, 30, 42–44, 74  
 (?) 嗎/吗 (ma), 36–38, 78, 81, 84, 93  
 ("gǔ=merchant) 賈/贾 (Jiǎ), 131  
 (a 4th generation relationship) 曾/曾 (Zēng), 132  
 (a change of state) 了/了 (le), 71  
 (a change of state) 了/了 (le), 39, 49, 59, 74  
 (a jade tablet) 圭/圭 (guī), 134  
 (a kind of jade tablet) 琬/琬 (wǎn), 138  
 (a kind of marsh grass) 薛/薛 (Xūe), 132  
 (a legendary ruler) 羲/羲 (xī), 139  
 (a particle) 吧/吧 (bā), 5  
 (a particle) 哇/哇 (wā), 7  
 (a plural particle) 曹/曹 (Cáo), 131  
 (a sound) 呢/呢 (ne), 31  
 (a sound) 喔/喔 (o), 129  
 (adj) 的/的 (de), 37  
 (adv. part.) 著/着 (zhe), 47  
 (adv. particle) 著/着 (zhe), 129  
 (adverbial) 著/着 (zhe), 7  
 (an ancient feudal state) 趙/赵 (Zhào), 132  
 (an ancient place) 郝/郝 (Hǎo), 131  
 (ancient musical instrument) 阮/阮 (Rǔan), 133  
 (change of state) 了/了 (le), 7, 8, 69  
 (complimentary verb) \_\_\_\_\_ (), 55  
 (either) 不是/不是 (bú shì), 40, 41  
 (for questions) 麼/么 (ma), 22  
 (for suggestions) 吧/吧 (ba), 22  
 (indicates a change of state) 了/了 (le), 78  
 (initial verb) \_\_\_\_\_ (), 55  
 (mw) 位/位 (wèi), 35  
 (onomatopoeia) 乒/乒 (pīng), 6  
 (onomatopoeia) 呱/呱 (gūa), 6  
 (onomatopoeia) 咚/咚 (dōng), 5  
 (onomatopoeia) 咩/咩 (miē), 6  
 (onomatopoeia) 哎/哎 (āi), 5  
 (onomatopoeia) 哞/哞 (móu), 6  
 (onomatopoeia) 啊/啊 (ā), 5  
 (onomatopoeia) 啦/啦 (la), 6  
 (onomatopoeia) 啪/啪 (pā), 6  
 (onomatopoeia) 喔/喔 (ō), 6  
 (onomatopoeia) 鳴/鸣 (wū), 7  
 (onomatopoeia) 噲/噲 (wēng), 7  
 (onomatopoeia) 嘩/哗 (bì), 5  
 (onomatopoeia) 嘎/嘎 (gā), 5  
 (onomatopoeia) 嘟/嘟 (dū), 5  
 (onomatopoeia) 嘩/哗 (hūa), 6  
 (onomatopoeia) 嘶/嘶 (sī), 6  
 (onomatopoeia) 嘆/嘆 (pū), 6  
 (onomatopoeia) 噹/当 (dāng), 5  
 (onomatopoeia) 嘆/嘆 (hùo), 6  
 (onomatopoeia) 砰/砰 (pēng), 6  
 (or) 就是/就是 (jiù shì), 40  
 (quantifier) 個/个 (ge), 22, 32  
 (quantifier) 朵/朵 (duǒ), 32  
 (quantifier) 棵/棵 (kē), 33  
 (quantifier) 輛/辆 (liàng), 33  
 (question) 嗎/吗 (ma), 98, 99  
 (sound) 呀/呀 (yā), 118, 119  
 (sound) 呦/呦 (yōu), 118, 119  
 (sound) 咿/咿 (yī), 118, 119  
 (to the extent of) 得/得 (de), 61, 94  
 (to the extent that) 得/得 (de), 61, 64, 74, 95  
 -ly 的/的 (de), 60, 100  
 "gurgle 咕嚕/咕嚕 (gū lū), 7, 62  
 "hi" 嗨/嗨 (hāi), 6  
 "meow 喵/喵 (miāo), 6  
 0 零/零 (líng), 113  
 1 一/一 (yī), 115, 116  
 1 一/一 (yī), 113, 114  
 10 十/十 (shí), 113, 114  
 10 十/十 (shí), 69  
 10 十/十 (shí), 114–116  
 100 百/百 (bǎi), 114–116  
 1000 千/千 (qiān), 115, 116  
 2 二/二 (èr), 69  
 2 二/二 (èr), 113, 114  
 2 二/二 (liǎng), 115  
 3 generation difference 曾/曾 (Zēng), 133  
 3 三/三 (sān), 69  
 3 三/三 (sān), 115, 116  
 3 三/三 (sān), 113–115

4 五/五 (sì), 113  
 4 四/四 (sì), 115, 116  
 4 四/四 (sì), 113–115  
 5 五/五 (wǔ), 113–115  
 5 四/四 (wǔ), 113  
 6 五/五 (liù), 114  
 6 六/六 (liù), 113–115  
 7 七/七 (qī), 113–115  
 7 六/六 (qī), 114  
 8 八/八 (bā), 4  
 8 八/八 (bā), 113–115  
 9 九/九 (jiǔ), 113–115

\_\_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_\_ (), 41  
 \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_ (), 40  
 .../... (), 71, 73  
 丁/丁 (Dīng), 131  
 了/了 (le), 41, 54, 71, 73, 81,  
 89, 93, 100, 105, 120  
 任/任 (Rén), 132  
 何/何 (Hé), 131  
 𠂇/𠂇 (fāng), 4  
 吧/吧 (ba), 82  
 吳/吳 (Wú), 132, 140  
 呀/呀 (a), 60  
 呂/呂 (Lǚ), 132  
 呢/呢 (ne), 39, 41, 57, 78, 89  
 周/周 (Zhōu), 140  
 唷/唷 (yō), 7  
 單/單 (Shàn), 133  
 嗎/嗎 (ma), 79  
 嘛/嘛 (ma), 89  
 埕/埕 (Chéng), 131  
 宋/宋 (Sòng), 132  
 廖/廖 (Liào), 132  
 彭/彭 (Péng), 132  
 把/把 (bǎ), 8, 55, 60  
 把/把 (bǎ), 82, 89, 120  
 查/查 (Zhā), 134  
 桂/桂 (Guì), 133  
 楚/楚 (Chǔ), 132  
 段/段 (Duàn), 138  
 沈/沈 (Shěn), 132  
 洗/洗 (Xiǎn), 133  
 狄/狄 (Dí), 132  
 的/的 (de), 120  
 禹/禹 (Yǔ), 134  
 聶/聶 (Niè), 133  
 芝/芝 (Zhī), 133  
 范/范 (Fàn), 139  
 荀/荀 (Xún), 133  
 著/著 (zháo), 105  
 葛/葛 (Gě), 133  
 蔣/蔣 (Jiǎng), 132, 139  
 蘇/蘇 (Sū), 132  
 許/許 (Xǔ), 132  
 趙/趙 (Zhào), 139  
 邵/邵 (Shào), 132  
 鄒/鄒 (Zōu), 132  
 鄧/鄧 (Dèng), 131, 140  
 鄭/鄭 (Chéng), 139  
 陳/陳 (Chén), 140

馮/馮 (Féng), 131, 132, 138  
 a beauty 黛/黛 (dài), 136  
 a bell 鐘/鐘 (zhōng), 68  
 a burst 一陣/一阵 (yí zhèn),  
 71  
 a cause 因素/因素 (yīn sù),  
 128  
 a click 咯/咯 (gé), 5  
 a composition; culture 文/文  
 (wén), 138  
 a count (nobility) 伯/伯 (bó),  
 134  
 a dot 點/点 (diǎn), 68  
 a flood 洪/洪 (Hóng), 131  
 a flower 花朵/花朵 (huā duǒ),  
 51  
 a flower 英/英 (Yīng), 133  
 a form of music; beauti-  
 ful, harmonious 韶/韶 (sháo),  
 137  
 a fragrant plant 芭/芭 (bā),  
 136  
 a gorge 峽/峽 (xiá), 135  
 a grade 班/班 (Bān), 132  
 a high mountain 嶽/嶽 (yuè),  
 136  
 a joyful thing 喜/喜 (xǐ), 138  
 a kind of flute 簫/簫 (yùe),  
 137  
 a large bell 鐸/鐸 (Dúo), 132  
 a large turtle 蔡/蔡 (Cài), 131  
 a ligature 連字/连字 (lián zì),  
 111  
 a little 一點/一点 (yì diǎn), 59  
 a lookout; an observatory  
 臺/台 (Tái), 133  
 a mark 號/号 (hào), 111  
 a matter 事情/事情 (shì qíng),  
 33  
 a moment, 8  
 a moment ago 剛才/刚才  
 (gāng cái), 66  
 a name 名字/名字 (míng zì),  
 78, 79  
 a pain 疼痛/疼痛 (téng tòng),  
 74, 102  
 a piece of writing 章/章  
 (Zhāng), 133  
 a place 處/处 (chù), 128  
 a play 劇/剧 (jù), 37  
 a port 港/港 (gǎng), 131, 140  
 a rock 巖/巖 (yán), 135  
 a section 段/段 (Duàn), 131  
 a short while 一下/一下 (yí  
 xià), 8  
 a species of willow 杞/杞 (qǐ),  
 135  
 a sprout 苗/苗 (Miáo), 133  
 a squeak 吱/吱 (zī), 7  
 a support 梧/梧 (wú), 135  
 a teacher 傅/傅 (Fù), 131

a thinker; wise 哲/哲 (zhé),  
 136  
 a time 番/番 (fān), 75  
 a very strong wind 狂風/狂风  
 (kuáng fēng), 71  
 a view 景/景 (jǐng), 140  
 a well 井/井 (jǐng), 134  
 a year of age 歲/岁 (suì), 79  
 a year 年/年 (nián), 65  
 a 一位/一位 (yī wèi), 69  
 a 一個/一个 (yí ge), 22  
 a 一條/一条 (yí tiào), 120  
 a 一隻/一只 (yī zhī), 45  
 a 一隻/一只 (yī zhī), 71, 73  
 a 個/个 (ge), 65, 66, 104, 106  
 abalone 鮑/鲍 (Bào), 132  
 able 會/会 (huì), 79, 84, 85,  
 130  
 above 上/上 (shàng), 4, 51  
 absolutely 絕對/绝对 (jué  
 duì), 130  
 abstruse 奧/奥 (Ào), 141  
 abundance 沛/沛 (pèi), 135  
 abundance; generous 裕/裕  
 (yù), 136  
 abundant 豐/丰 (fēng), 134  
 abundant 饒/饶 (ráo), 135  
 abundant; rich 盛/盛 (shèng),  
 135  
 achoo 哈啾/哈啾 (hā jiū), 7  
 add 加/加 (jiā), 145  
 addition 加法/加法 (jiā fǎ),  
 145  
 adjective, 35  
 adverb 副詞/副词 (fù cí), 109  
 affairs 事/事 (shì), 124  
 afraid 害怕/害怕 (hài pà), 91  
 after noon 下午/下午 (xià  
 wǔ), 106  
 after 後/后 (hòu), 69  
 again 又/又 (yòu), 40  
 again 又/又 (yòu), 120  
 agricultural land 田/田 (Tián),  
 132  
 air 氣/气 (qì), 92, 93  
 alarm clock 鬧鐘/闹钟 (nào  
 zhōng), 64  
 alas 唉/唉 (āi), 94  
 alert 機/机 (jī), 98  
 all out 好好/好好 (hǎo hǎo),  
 41  
 all the way 一路/一路 (yí lù),  
 129  
 all 凡/凡 (fán), 4, 97  
 all 所有/所有 (suǒ yǒu), 94  
 all 都/都 (dōu), 38, 43, 56,  
 60, 63, 72, 97  
 all 都/都 (dōu), 118, 129  
 almost 幾乎/几乎 (jī hū), 59  
 almost 快/快 (kuài), 59, 60  
 almost 擠/挤 (jǐ), 60



alphabet 字母/字母 (zì mǔ), 111  
 alphabet(n) 字母, 20  
 already 已/已 (yǐ), 126  
 also 也/也 (yě), 4, 64, 69, 95  
 also 也/也 (yě), 129  
 although 雖然/虽然 (suī rán), 38  
 altogether 共/共 (gòng), 146  
 always 從來/从来 (cóng lái), 72  
 always 永遠/永远 (yǒng yuǎn), 38  
 always 總/总 (zǒng), 56  
 always 總是/总是 (zǒng shì), 97  
 always 長向/长向 (cháng xiàng), 124  
 amiable; pleasant 婉/婉 (wǎn), 137  
 an ancient jade ornament 璋/璋 (zhāng), 136  
 analyze 分析/分析 (fēn xī), 143, 144  
 ancestor 宗/宗 (Zōng), 152  
 ancestor 宗/宗 (Zōng), 133  
 ancient 古/古 (Gǔ), 133  
 ancient 古/古 (gǔ), 124  
 and 和/和 (hàn), 38, 74, 94, 102, 106  
 and 和/和 (hé), 122  
 and 和/和 (hàn), 130  
 and 而且/而且 (ér qiě), 72  
 angry 生氣/生气 (shēng qì), 92  
 angry 生氣/生气 (shēng qì), 80  
 ant 螞蟻/蚂蚁 (mǎ yǐ), 89  
 anxious 焦急/焦急 (jiāo jí), 60  
 apart 離/离 (lí), 124  
 apologize 抱歉/抱歉 (bào qiàn), 80  
 appear, 93  
 apple 蘋果/苹果 (píng guǒ), 89  
 April 四月/四月 (sì yuè), 67  
 are 是/是 (shì), 128–130  
 arithmetic 計算/计算 (jì suàn), 143  
 army 伍/伍 (wǔ), 128  
 arrive late 遲到/迟到 (chí dào), 70  
 art 藝術/艺术 (yì shù), 103  
 art; skill 藝/艺 (yì), 136  
 article 冠詞/冠词 (guān cí), 109  
 as for him 則/则 (zé), 31  
 as regards 對/对 (duì), 41  
 as soon as possible 儘早/尽早 (jǐn zǎo), 70

as soon as possible 儘早/尽早 (jǐn zǎo), 82  
 as well, 39  
 as 如/如 (rú), 44  
 as 既/既 (jì), 126  
 ask 問/问 (wèn), 123  
 at present 現在/现在 (xiàn zài), 112  
 at 在/在 (zài), 8, 44, 51, 60  
 at 在/在 (zài), 118, 124, 128, 129  
 attract 吸引/吸引 (/ -xī yǐn), 39  
 August 八月/八月 (bā yuè), 67  
 auspicious 瑞/瑞 (rùi), 138  
 auspicious 祥/祥 (xiáng), 135  
 autumn 秋/秋 (qiū), 139  
 award 賞賜/赏赐 (shǎng cì), 41  
 awkward 拘束/拘束 (jū shù), 128  
 baby's cry 呱呱/呱呱 (gū gū), 118  
 back side 後邊/后边 (hòu biān), 88  
 bad 壞/坏 (huài), 42  
 bad 壞/坏 (huài), 38  
 bag of bones/thin as a rail, 44  
 ball 求/求 (qiú), 55  
 ball 球/球 (qiú), 33  
 banana 香蕉/香蕉 (xiāng jiāo), 53  
 bandits 寇/寇 (Kòu), 133  
 barge 舸/舸 (gě), 22  
 bear 熊/熊 (xióng), 75  
 bear 熊/熊 (Xióng), 132  
 beat 打/打 (dǎ), 41  
 beat 打/打 (dǎ), 77  
 beat 撲/扑 (pū), 145  
 beautiful jade 琳/琳 (lín), 140  
 beautiful lady 姬/姬 (jī), 136  
 beautiful 佳/佳 (jiā), 136  
 beautiful 嚴/严 (yán), 135  
 beautiful 妍/妍 (yán), 138  
 beautiful 綺/绮 (qǐ), 124  
 beautiful 美/美 (měi), 137  
 beautiful 麗/丽 (lì), 137, 140  
 beautiful; resplendent 綺/绮 (qǐ), 137  
 beaver 海狸/海狸 (hǎi lí), 73  
 because 因為/因为 (yīn wèi), 120  
 become 變/变 (biàn), 145  
 become 變成/变成 (biàn chéng), 35  
 bed 床/床 (chuáng), 35  
 bee 范/范 (Fàn), 131  
 before 前/前 (qián), 126  
 beggar 乞丐/乞丐 (qǐ gài), 71  
 behind 後/后 (hòu), 70

behind 背後/背后 (bèi hòu), 129  
 bell 鍾/钟 (Zhōng), 132  
 below 下/下 (xià), 4  
 benevolence; kindness 仁/仁 (rén), 135  
 bewildered 困惑/困惑 (kùn hù), 129  
 beyond understanding, 61, 94  
 big 大/大 (dà), 3, 35, 45, 66, 94, 102  
 Bin-Bin 彬彬/彬彬 (bīn bīn), 7  
 bird cage 樊/樊 (Fán), 132  
 bit 咬了/咬了 (yǎo le), 120  
 bite 咬/咬 (yǎo), 120  
 black 盧/卢 (Lú), 132  
 black 黑/黑 (hēi), 63, 72  
 blind 瞎/瞎 (xiā), 126  
 blue sky 青天/青天 (qīng tiān), 123  
 blue 青/青 (qīng), 62  
 blue 青/青 (qīng), 139  
 boat 舟/舟 (zhou), 4  
 boat 船/船 (chuán), 4  
 body 身/身 (shēn), 43, 61, 95  
 bold; fierce 猛/猛 (Měng), 134  
 bone 骨/骨 (gǔ), 44  
 book 書/书 (shū), 151  
 book 書/书 (shū), 151  
 book 書/书 (shū), 151  
 book 書/书 (shū), 31, 151  
 bored 無聊/无聊 (wú liáo), 92  
 boss 老板/老板 (lǎo bǎn), 103  
 branch 樹支/树枝 (shù zhī), 32  
 brave 虎/虎 (hǔ), 134  
 bravery 勇敢/勇敢 (yǒng gǎn), 95  
 bridge 梁/梁 (Liáng), 132  
 brief moment 片刻/片刻 (piàn kè), 106  
 brief 簡/简 (Jiǎn), 133  
 bright and brilliant 燦/灿 (càn), 134  
 bright and brilliant 絢/绚 (xùn), 137  
 bright red 朱/朱 (Zhū), 132  
 bright red 朱/朱 (zhū), 124  
 bright 亮/亮 (liàng), 7  
 bright 亮/亮 (liàng), 135  
 bright 明/明 (míng), 66, 123, 138  
 bright 朗/朗 (lǎng), 139  
 bright; brilliant 明/明 (míng), 135  
 bright; luminous 炳/炳 (bǐng), 134  
 brightness 炯/炯 (jiǒng), 134

brilliant; beautiful; graceful  
秀/秀 (xiù), 137  
brothers 兄弟/兄弟 (xiōng dì), 62  
building blocks 積木/积木 (jī mù), 33  
building 樓/楼 (lóu), 123, 128  
Burmese(緬甸語), 46  
businessman 商人/商人 (shāng rén), 103  
busy 忙/忙 (máng), 102  
but also 而且/而且 (ér qiě), 41  
but 卻/却 (què), 39  
but 又/又 (yòu), 123  
but 可是/可是 (kě shì), 64  
butterfly 蝴蝶/蝴蝶 (hú dié), 35, 45, 51, 72  
by 被/被 (bèi), 39, 73  
cage 籠子/笼子 (lóng zi), 69  
cake 蛋糕/蛋糕 (dàn gāo), 57  
call 招呼/招呼 (zhāo hū), 77  
called 叫/叫 (jiào), 78, 79  
calm 鎮定/镇定 (zhèn dìng), 92  
came 來了/来了 (lái le), 45  
can 可以/可以 (kě yǐ), 106  
can 能/能 (néng), 74, 102  
can't stand it, 62  
candle light 熒/荧 (yíng), 136  
cannot refrain 不禁/不禁 (bù jīn), 63  
capable; versatile 賢/贤 (xián), 135  
capable; wisdom 智/智 (Zhì), 133  
captivating; fascinating 嫵/嫵 (yān), 137  
car 汽車/汽车 (qì chē), 33  
carrot, 32  
castle 城堡/城堡 (chéng bǎo), 55  
cat 貓/猫 (māo), 55  
caught 捉了/捉了 (zhuō le), 120  
cautious; prudent 慎/慎 (shèn), 135  
celestial being 仙/仙 (xiān), 4  
character(n) 字位, 20  
Charlie 查裡/查里 (chá lǐ), 39  
charming 佼/佼 (jiǎo), 134  
chastity; pure 貞/贞 (zhēn), 137  
checks 格/格 (gé), 22  
cheerful 歡/欢 (huān), 124  
cheerful; happy 興/兴 (xīng), 135  
cherry;cherry blossoms 櫻/樱 (yīng), 137  
chestnut tree 栗/栗 (lì), 133  
chicken 雞/鸡 (jī), 60

child 童/童 (Tóng), 133  
Chinese 國語/国语 (guó yǔ), 84, 85  
Chinese 漢語/汉语 (hàn yǔ), 18  
chirping sound 啾/啾 (jiū), 6  
chivalry 俠/侠 (xiá), 135  
chopsticks 筷子/筷子 (kùai zi), 35  
chunk 塊/块 (kuài), 33  
chunk 塊/块 (kuài), 118, 119  
clause 子句/子句 (zǐ jù), 38  
claw/talon 爪/爪 (zhǎo), 4  
clean and pure 梵/梵 (fàn), 137  
clean and white 琅/琅 (láng), 135  
clean 乾淨/干净 (gān jìng), 64  
clear 昭/昭 (zhāo), 139  
clear 晏/晏 (Yàn), 133  
clear 晴/晴 (qíng), 124  
clear 清楚/清楚 (qīng chǔ), 128  
clever 靈/灵 (líng), 98  
close 親/亲 (qīn), 96  
cloth 巾/巾 (jīn), 4  
clothing button 鈕扣/钮扣 (niǔ kòu), 33  
clouds 曇/昙 (tán), 137  
cold sweat 冷汗/冷汗 (lěng hàn), 95  
cold 冷/冷 (lěng), 40  
cold 寒/寒 (hán), 123  
color 顏色/颜色 (yán sè), 43  
colorfully ornamented 郁/郁 (Yù), 133  
comb 梳子/梳子 (shū zi), 31  
combination 組合/组合 (zǔ hé), 143  
come down 下來/下来 (xià lái), 72  
come 來/来 (lái), 51, 98–100  
comfort 安慰/安慰 (ān wèi), 126  
comfort; to travel 豫/豫 (yù), 136  
coming 未來/未来 (wèi lái), 112  
common; normal 常/常 (Cháng), 131  
company 公司/公司 (gōng sī), 33  
competition 比賽/比赛 (bǐ sài), 22  
compile statistics 統計/统计 (tǒng jì), 145  
completed; accomplished 成/成 (Chéng), 132  
completely 全/全 (quán), 124  
completely 都/都 (dōu), 95

completeness 備/备 (bèi), 134  
computer 電腦/电脑 (diàn nǎo), 34  
concubine 妃/妃 (fēi), 139  
conditional, 38  
conditions 條件/条件 (tiáo jiàn), 38  
confused 糊塗/糊涂 (hú tú), 128  
conscientious 認真/认真 (rèn zhēn), 101  
consonant(n) 子音, 20  
continuous heavy rain 霖/霖 (lín), 135  
contrary 反/反 (fǎn), 148  
cook 廚師/厨师 (chú shī), 104  
cordial 親切/亲切 (qīn qiè), 80  
corpse 尸/尸 (shī), 4  
correct 對/对 (duì), 74  
cottage 木屋/木屋 (mù wū), 31  
couch grass 茅/茅 (Máo), 134  
could only 只好/只好 (zhǐ hǎo), 100  
country 國/国 (Guó), 138  
courageous; fearless 勇/勇 (yǒng), 136  
courtesy 禮/礼 (lǐ), 135  
cow 母牛/母牛 (mǔ niú), 44  
cow 牛/牛 (niú), 7, 34, 62  
cow 黃牛/黄牛 (huáng niú), 60  
craft; ability 倆/俩 (liǎng), 136  
craftsman 匠/匠 (jiàng), 136  
creeping plant 蘿/萝 (luó), 32  
crooked 宛/宛 (Wǎn), 133  
crow 烏鴉/乌鸦 (wū yā), 40, 48, 60, 63  
crow 烏鴉/乌鸦 (wū yā), 89  
crow; raven 烏/乌 (Wū), 133  
crowd 人群/人群 (rén qún), 97  
crowd 人群/人群 (rén qún), 128  
cry of hunger 嗷/嗷 (áo), 5  
curious 好奇/好奇 (hào qí), 95  
cutting edge of a sword 鋒/锋 (fēng), 139  
cypress 柏/柏 (Bó), 140  
dad 爸/爸 (bà), 22  
dad 爸爸/爸爸 (bà ba), 31, 41, 106  
dark 暗/暗 (àn), 59  
day after tomorrow 後天/后天 (hòu tiān), 66  
day before yesterday

前天/前天 (qián tiān), 66  
 day 天/天 (tiān), 43, 73  
 daybreak 旦/旦 (dàn), 136  
 daybreak; dawn 曉/曉 (xiǎo), 137  
 December 十二月/十二月 (shí èr yuè), 68  
 deep and expansive 查/查 (yǎo), 135  
 deep water; profound 潭/潭 (tán), 135  
 deep waters 澳/澳 (ào), 134  
 deep 泓/泓 (hóng), 134  
 deep; profound 湛/湛 (Zhàn), 133  
 deficient 缺/缺 (quē), 124  
 dejected 嗒/嗒 (tà), 6  
 delicate 嬌/嬌 (jiāo), 136  
 delicate; graceful 嫵/嫵 (niǎo), 137  
 delicately beautiful; graceful 曼/曼 (màn), 137  
 delicious 甘/甘 (Gān), 132  
 dentist 牙醫/牙醫 (yá yī), 104  
 depressed 沮喪/沮喪 (jǔ sàng), 91  
 describe 形容/形容 (xíng róng), 109  
 deserved 應有/應有 (yīng yǒu), 124  
 desire 欲/欲 (yù), 123  
 desk 書桌/書桌 (shū zhuō), 35  
 desperately 拼命/拼命 (pīn mìng), 63, 64  
 determination 決心/決心 (jué xīn), 96, 99  
 difference 差/差 (chà), 59  
 differential 微分/微分 (wēi fēn), 144, 145  
 difficult 難/難 (nán), 124  
 dignity; authority; awe 威/威 (wēi), 135  
 diligent 勤勞/勤勞 (qín láo), 96, 101  
 diligent 勤奮/勤奮 (qín fèn), 101  
 diligent; industrious 勤/勤 (qín), 135  
 din 咻/咻 (xiū), 7  
 dinner 晚餐/晚餐 (wǎn cān), 39, 102  
 diphthongs(雙元音), 15  
 discouraged 灰心/灰心 (hūi xīn), 91  
 disorder 亂/亂 (lùn), 98  
 dispersed 離散/離散 (lí sàn), 144  
 divide 除/除 (chú), 146  
 division 除法/除法 (chú fǎ), 146

do 做/做 (zuò), 103  
 doctor 醫生/醫生 (yī shēng), 103  
 doctor 醫生/醫生 (yī shēng), 104  
 document 件/件 (jiàn), 33  
 don't 不要/不要 (bú yào), 80, 89  
 don't 別/別 (bié), 80  
 door 戶/戶 (hù), 32  
 door 戶/戶 (hù), 124  
 door 門/門 (mén), 7  
 door 門/門 (Mén), 133  
 down 下/下 (xià), 62, 66  
 dragon 龍/龍 (Lóng), 132  
 dragon 龍/龍 (lóng), 140  
 drank 喝/喝 (hē), 63  
 drank 喝了/喝了 (hē le), 60  
 dread 恐/恐 (kǒng), 123  
 dream 夢/夢 (mèng), 138  
 drink 喝/喝 (hē), 47  
 driver 司機/司機 (sī jī), 104  
 drop 點/點 (diǎn), 84, 85  
 dry 乾/干 (gān), 153  
 duckling 小鴨/小鴨 (xiǎo yā), 61  
 duckling 小鴨/小鴨 (xiǎo yā), 118  
 dull 魯/魯 (Lǔ), 133  
 duration of time 久/久 (jiǔ), 70  
 duration 久/久 (jiǔ), 64  
 dutiful 孝/孝 (xiào), 139  
 each other 彼此/彼此 (bǐ cǐ), 81  
 each 各/各 (gè), 22  
 eager 怦/怦 (pēng), 135  
 ear 耳/耳 (ěr), 122  
 early morning 清晨/清晨 (qīng chén), 68  
 early 很/很 (hěn), 61, 70  
 early 早/早 (zǎo), 61, 70  
 earth 地/地 (dì), 83, 118, 119  
 eat 吃/吃 (chī), 36, 39, 47, 53, 54, 57, 94, 102  
 eaten 吃過/吃過 (chī guò), 53  
 edible roots 蔔/蔔 (bo), 32  
 eight 八/八 (bā), 22, 71  
 eight 八/八 (bā), 83, 120  
 either \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_, 40  
 elder brother 哥哥/哥哥 (gē ge), 74  
 elder brother 昆/昆 (kūn), 135  
 eldest child 孟/孟 (Mèng), 132  
 elegant; beautiful 斐/斐 (Fěi), 132  
 elephant 大象/大象 (dà xiàng), 34, 35

elephant 象/象 (xiàng), 61  
 elevator 電梯/電梯 (diàn tī), 128  
 embarrassed 尷尬/尷尬 (gān gà), 92  
 empty 虛/虛 (xū), 97  
 endlessly vast 渺/渺 (miǎo), 135  
 endlessly 不休/不休 (bù xiū), 129  
 endurance 耐力/耐力 (nài lì), 96  
 enemy 仇/仇 (Chóu), 132  
 energy 精/精 (jīng), 105  
 engineering 工程/工程 (gōng chéng), 103  
 English 英語/英語 (yīng yǔ), 79, 84  
 entire body 渾身/渾身 (hún shēn), 61  
 entire 全/全 (quán), 61, 95  
 entirely 並/并 (bìng), 57  
 entirely 並/并 (bìng), 57  
 equal to 匹/匹 (pǐ), 34  
 equal 等於/等於 (děng yú), 146  
 equal 齊/齊 (Qí), 133  
 equation 方程/方程 (fāng chéng), 144, 145  
 Europe 歐洲/歐洲 (ōu zhōu), 54  
 even if 就算/就算 (jiù suàn), 129  
 even 連/连 (lián), 63, 95  
 ever since 自從/自从 (zì cóng), 69  
 everyone there, 94  
 everyone 人都/人都 (rén dōu), 94  
 everyone 大家/大家 (dà jiā), 56  
 everywhere 到處/到处 (dào chù), 118  
 evil 惡/惡 (è), 37  
 exactly 剛/剛 (gāng), 99  
 excellent 令/令 (lìng), 135  
 excellent 佳/佳 (jiā), 137  
 excellent; abundant 優/优 (yōu), 136  
 excited 興奮/兴奋 (xīng fèn), 92  
 excuse me 請問/请问 (qǐng wèn), 37  
 exert 努力/努力 (nǔ lì), 74, 102  
 exhaust 盡/尽 (jìn), 105  
 exhausted 疲憊/疲惫 (pí bèi), 105  
 exhausted 盡/尽 (jìn), 97  
 exhausted 盡/尽 (jìn), 105  
 exhausting 吃力/吃力 (chī lì),



73

exhausting 吃力/吃力 (chī lì),

43

expenditure 費/费 (Fèi), 132

extensive; abundant 博/博 (bó), 134

extensive; vast 淼/淼 (miǎo), 135

extent 程度/程度 (chéng dù), 128

extremely angry 氣極/气极 (qì jí), 92

extremely 太/太 (tài), 78

exuberant 茂/茂 (mào), 135

exuberant; amiable 藹/藹 (ǎi), 137

eye 眼/眼 (yǎn), 97

eye 眼/眼 (yǎn), 126

eyebrows 眉/眉 (méi), 133

eyes 眼/眼 (yǎn), 122

fabulous; a kind of jasper 瑰/瑰 (guī), 136

face to face 面/面 (miàn), 33

face 臉/脸 (liǎn), 62, 102

face 臉/脸 (liǎn), 89

face 面目/面目 (miàn mù), 56

facial expression 表情/表情 (biǎo qíng), 94

facing 對/对 (duì), 98, 99

facing 對/对 (duì), 80

fail to perform the action, 55

failed to enter, 55

failed to grab, 55

failed to hit, 55

fair, white 暫/暂 (xī), 135

faithful; devoted 忠/忠 (zhōng), 136

faithfulness 忠誠/忠诚 (zhōng chéng), 96

falling of snow and rain 霏/霏 (fēi), 137

fame; honor 譽/誉 (yù), 136

far and obscure 玄/玄 (Xúan), 133

fat 胖/胖 (pàng), 35, 60

father 翁/翁 (Wēng), 133

faults 錯/错 (cuò), 78

feather; wing 羽/羽 (yǔ), 138

February 二月/二月 (èr yuè), 67

feel 覺得/觉得 (jué dé), 93

feelings; love 情/情 (qíng), 137

fence 韓/韩 (Hán), 131

fiery 烈/烈 (liè), 135

finally 終於/终于 (zhōng yú), 75, 106

fine jade 瓊/琼 (qióng), 137

fine; desirable 良/良 (liáng), 135

fine; fair 晴/晴 (qíng), 137

finger tip, 120

finger 手指/手指 (shǒu zhǐ), 120

fire 火/火 (hǒ), 134

firewood 柴/柴 (chái), 44

firm; endurance; fortitude 毅/毅 (yì), 136

first month of a season 孟/孟 (mèng), 139

first 元/元 (Yúan), 138

first 初/初 (chū), 126

fish 魚/鱼 (yú), 34, 57

five 五/五 (wǔ), 67

five 五/五 (wǔ), 120

fix eyes on 盯/盯 (dīng), 47

flood 洪/洪 (hóng), 138

flourishing 殷/殷 (yīn), 136

flourishing; lush 蓊/蓊 (wèng), 138

flower bud 蓓/蓓 (bèi), 136

flower garden 花園/花园 (huā yuán), 34

flower 朵/朵 (duó), 136

flower 花/花 (huā), 32

flower 花/花 (Huā), 133

flower 花朵/花朵 (huā duǒ), 128, 129

fly 飛/飞 (fēi), 45, 51

fly 飛/飞 (fēi), 87

flying around, 51

Font designer's name?, 152

foot 腳/脚 (jiǎo), 88

footstep 腳步/脚步 (jiǎo bù), 128

for 對/对 (duì), 130

for 為/为 (wèi), 36

for 為/为 (wèi), 120

force 力/力 (lì), 3

forest 林/林 (lín), 4

forest 林/林 (Lín), 132

forever 永遠/永远 (yǒng yǎn), 70

form 式/式 (shì), 112

fortunate 幸運/幸运 (xìng yùn), 57

found 尋回/寻回 (xún huí), 126

fountainhead 源頭/源头 (yuán tóu), 130

four 四/四 (sì), 67

four 四/四 (sì), 120

fragrance; perfume 芬/芬 (fēn), 136

fragrant fragrance 馥/馥 (fù), 136

fragrant orchid 蕙/蕙 (huì), 136

fragrant 菲/菲 (fēi), 136

fragrant; virtuous 芳/芳 (fāng), 136

freely flowing 暢通/畅通

(chàng tōng), 129

friend 朋友/朋友 (péng yǒu), 69

friendly; to befriend 睦/睦 (mù), 135

friendship 誼/谊 (yì), 138

from now on 從此/从此 (cóng cǐ), 70

from time to time 不時/不时 (bù shí), 72

from 從/从 (cóng), 43, 48

front door 大門/大门 (dà mén), 40

front side 前邊/前边 (qián biān), 88

front 前/前 (qián), 110

frontier 域/域 (yù), 136

full of oneself 得意/得意 (dé yì), 97

full 充滿/充满 (chōng mǎn), 129

full 滿/满 (mǎn), 102

full 飽/饱 (bǎo), 54, 104, 105

full; plentiful 滿/满 (mǎn), 135

function 函數/函数 (hán shù), 145

function 泛函/泛函 (fàn hán), 144

further 再/再 (zài), 64

furthermore 而且/而且 (ér qiě), 39

future tense(未來式), 46

garbage talk 廢話/废话 (fèi huà), 82

garden 園/园 (yuán), 118

generation 世/世 (shì), 138

geometry 幾何/几何 (jǐ hé), 144

gift 禮物/礼物 (lǐ wù), 32

gifted person 才/才 (cái), 137

ginger 姜/姜 (Jiāng), 131

girl 女孩/女孩 (nǚ hái), 34, 35

glad 欣/欣 (xīn), 137

glad 高興/高兴 (gāo xìng), 61, 91, 94

glad 高興/高兴 (gāo xìng), 79

glad; joyful 欣/欣 (xīn), 137

glare at 瞪著/瞪着 (dèng zhe), 47

glitter of jade 瑛/瑛 (yīng), 137

glorious 錦/锦 (jǐn), 138

glory; honor 榮/荣 (róng), 135

glowing 融/融 (róng), 135

glyph(n) 字形, 20

go back to 歸去/归去 (guī qù), 123

go out 出門/出门 (chū mén), 100

go 去/去 (qù), 51, 54  
 goat 山羊/山羊 (shān yáng), 63  
 gold 今幣/今幣 (jīn bì), 41  
 gold 金/金 (jīn), 132  
 good bye 再見/再見 (zài jiàn), 77  
 good deeds 好事/好事 (hǎo shì), 42  
 good fortune; a blessing 福/福 (fú), 134  
 good night 晚安/晚安 (wǎn ān), 77  
 good 好/好 (hǎo), 4, 42, 59, 69, 93, 136  
 good 好/好 (hǎo), 77, 78, 81  
 good-looking 丰/丰 (fēng), 137  
 good; beautiful 娥/娥 (é), 136  
 good; virtuous 善/善 (shàn), 135  
 gorilla 猩猩/猩猩 (xīng xīng), 63  
 government official 官/官 (Gūan), 133  
 grabbed 抓/抓 (zhūa), 55  
 grace 恩典/恩典 (ēn diǎn), 126  
 grace; kindness 恩/恩 (ēn), 137  
 graceful 娟/娟 (juān), 137  
 graceful 曼/曼 (màn), 139  
 graceful; elegant 婀/婀 (ē), 136  
 graceful; ladylike 嬋/嬋 (chán), 136  
 gradually 漸漸/漸漸 (jiàn jiàn), 97  
 grammar 文法/文法 (wén fǎ), 109, 111  
 grandchild; descendent 孫/孫 (Sūn), 132  
 grandfather; grandmother 祖/祖 (Zǔ), 133  
 granule 粒/粒 (lì), 33  
 graph theory 圖論/圖論 (tú lùn), 144  
 grapheme(n) 字位, 20  
 great; grand; abundant 奕/奕 (yì), 136  
 great; profound 決/決 (yāng), 135  
 great; wide; vast 溥/溥 (Pǔ), 133  
 great; wonderful 傀/傀 (guī), 134  
 great; large 碩/碩 (shuò), 135  
 greedy 貪婪/貪婪 (tān lán), 60  
 green 綠色/綠色 (lǜ sè), 37  
 greeting, 77

grey 灰/灰 (hūi), 102  
 grizzly bear 灰熊/灰熊 (hūi xióng), 69  
 guest 客/客 (kè), 135  
 guilt 罪/罪 (zuì), 126  
 Ha 呵/呵 (hē), 63  
 had better 還是/還是 (hái shì), 82  
 hair 毛/毛 (Máo), 132  
 half to death 半死/半死 (bàn sǐ), 39  
 hall 堂/堂 (táng), 34  
 hand 手/手 (shǒu), 31  
 handle 把/把 (bǎ), 31  
 handle 把/把 (bǎ), 22  
 handsome 姚/姚 (Yáo), 132  
 hang down 低/低 (dī), 124  
 happiness 快樂/快樂 (kùai lè), 130  
 happiness; blessings 禧/禧 (xǐ), 138  
 happy 快樂/快樂 (kùai lè), 72  
 happy 快樂/快樂 (kuài lè), 91, 93  
 happy 樂/樂 (lè), 138  
 happy 高興/高興 (gāo xìng), 45  
 happy; contented 愉/愉 (yú), 138  
 happy; joyful 愉/愉 (yú), 137  
 harmony 和/和 (hé), 134  
 harmony; jubilation 怡/怡 (yí), 137  
 harmony; peaceful 雍/雍 (yōng), 136  
 has 有/有 (yǒu), 22  
 hat 帽子/帽子 (mào zi), 71  
 hate 恨/恨 (hèn), 124  
 have been 被/被 (bèi), 126  
 have 有/有 (yǒu), 37, 45, 74, 92, 102  
 have 有/有 (yǒu), 118, 119, 123, 124, 128  
 he 他/他 (tā), 8, 30, 39, 54, 56, 69, 72-74, 95, 97  
 he 他/他 (tā), 79, 82, 118, 120  
 he; she 伊/伊 (Yī), 133  
 head 頭/頭 (tóu), 8, 34, 43, 48, 102, 104  
 head 頭/頭 (tóu), 120-122  
 health 康/康 (Kāng), 132  
 healthy 康/康 (kāng), 134  
 hear 看到/看到 (kàn dào), 54  
 hear 聽/聽 (tīng), 23  
 hear 聽到/聽到 (tīng dào), 54  
 heart of hearts 心窩/心窩 (xīn wō), 129  
 heart 心/心 (xīn), 97, 99, 100  
 heart 心/心 (xīn), 126, 137  
 heartbroken 傷心/傷心

(shāng xīn), 92  
 heaven 天上/天上 (tiān shàng), 123  
 heavy rain 大雨/大雨 (dà yǔ), 62  
 heavy 重/重 (zhòng), 35  
 her 她/她 (tā), 42, 51  
 her 她的/她的 (tā de), 30  
 here 這裡/這裡 (zhè lǐ), 99  
 here 這裡/這裡 (zhè lǐ), 118  
 hey 嘿/嘿 (hēi), 42  
 high and steep 催/催 (Cūi), 131  
 high 高/高 (gāo), 43  
 high 高/高 (gāo), 123  
 high-placed 貴/貴 (guì), 134  
 high; tall 高/高 (Gāo), 131  
 hill 邱/邱 (Qiū), 132  
 him 他/他 (tā), 56  
 his 他的/他的 (tā de), 30, 56  
 history 史/史 (Shǐ), 132  
 hit 打/打 (dǎ), 55  
 Hmmm 嗯/嗯 (èn), 39, 42  
 hold a wine glass 把酒/把酒 (bǎ jiǔ), 123  
 hole 孔/孔 (Kǒng), 132  
 hole 洞/洞 (dòng), 48  
 home 家/家 (jiā), 43, 48, 72, 75  
 honest and kind 忠厚/忠厚 (zhōng hòu), 96  
 honest 老實/老實 (lǎo shí), 96  
 honest 諒/諒 (liàng), 135  
 honest; to deepen 敦/敦 (dūn), 134  
 honey 蜜/蜜 (mì), 137  
 horse 馬/馬 (Mǎ), 132  
 horse 馬/馬 (mǎ), 34  
 horse 馬/馬 (mǎ), 78  
 horse 馬/馬 (mǎ), 22  
 hot water; soup 湯/湯 (Tāng), 133  
 house 屋子/屋子 (wū zi), 59  
 house 房/房 (Fáng), 132  
 house 房子/房子 (fáng zi), 33  
 household 人家/人家 (rén jiā), 32  
 household 家/家 (jiā), 33  
 how many 幾/几 (jǐ), 68  
 how many 幾/几 (jǐ), 79  
 how 何等/何等 (hé děng), 126  
 how 怎樣/怎樣 (zě yàng), 39  
 how 怎麼/怎么 (zě me), 64, 93  
 how 怎麼/怎么 (zě me), 36  
 however 卻/却 (què), 39  
 humble 謙/謙 (qiān), 135  
 humble 謙虛/謙虛 (qiān xū), 96

hundred 佰/佰 (bǎi), 128  
 hungry 餓/饿 (è), 7, 39, 40  
 hungry 餓/饿 (è), 62  
 hurriedly 急忙/急忙 (jí máng), 48, 70  
 hurriedly 趕緊/赶紧 (gǎn jiǎn), 70

I don't understand your language (yǔ yán)., 23  
 I don't understand your prediction (yù yán)., 23  
 I love my mother (mǔ qīn)., 22  
 I love my xylophone (mù qín)., 22  
 I myself 我才/我才 (wǒ cái), 31  
 I see a small head (xiǎo tóu)., 22  
 I see a thief (xiǎo tōu)., 22  
 I 余/余 (Yú), 132  
 I 我/我 (wǒ), 22, 23, 29, 39, 41, 42, 51, 53, 56, 62, 71, 73, 93, 98–100, 102, 103  
 I 我/我 (wǒ), 48, 78, 79, 81, 85, 120, 121, 123, 126, 129, 130  
 ice 冰/冰 (bīng), 139  
 idea 主意/主意 (zhǔ yì), 42  
 ideograph 指事/指事 (zhǐ shì), 3  
 ideograph(n) 形意文字, 20  
 if only 但願/但愿 (dàn yuàn), 125  
 if 如果/如果 (rú guǒ), 38  
 illuminate 照/照 (zhào), 124  
 image 形象/形象 (xiàng xiàng), 42  
 immediately 立刻/立刻 (lì kè), 95  
 immediately 立刻/立刻 (lì kè), 61  
 imperial palace 宮闕/宫阙 (gōng quē), 123  
 in a flurry 慌亂/慌乱 (huāng luàn), 70  
 in a little while 一會兒/一会儿 (yī huǐ), 66  
 in a little while 一會兒/一会儿 (yī huǐ), 77  
 in fact 其實/其实 (qí shí), 38  
 in someone's presence 當面/当面 (dāng miàn), 41  
 in the past 過去/过去 (guò qù), 112  
 in the process of 正/正 (zhèng), 71, 73  
 in the process of 正在/正在 (zhèng zài), 50  
 in the twinkling of an eye 轉眼/转眼 (zhuǎn yǎn), 70

in 於/于 (Yú), 134  
 indiscriminate talk 亂話/乱话 (làn huà), 82  
 injured 受傷/受伤 (shòu shāng), 74  
 inner-product 內積/内积 (nèi jī), 147  
 inside 裡/里 (lǐ), 43, 48, 69  
 inside 裡/里 (lǐ), 60, 118  
 inside 裡面/里面 (lǐ miàn), 59  
 insincerity 假意/假意 (jiǎ yì), 97  
 instead 反而/反而 (fǎn ér), 39  
 instructor 師/师 (shī), 103  
 integral 積分/积分 (jī fēn), 143, 144  
 intelligent; understanding 達/达 (dá), 134  
 interest 興趣/兴趣 (xìng qù), 92  
 interjection, 42  
 introduce 介紹/介绍 (jiè shào), 78  
 is it possible that ...難道/难道 (nán dào), 37  
 is it possible that 難道/难道 (nán dào), 37, 38  
 is 是/是 (shì), 74  
 is 是/是 (shì), 37–39, 56, 68, 69, 103  
 is 是/是 (shì), 120, 121, 123  
 it 它/它 (tā), 30  
 it 它/它 (tā), 89  
 it's 它的/它的 (tā de), 30  
 Italian(義大利語), 46

jade tablet 璋/璋 (zhāng), 138  
 jade 瓊/琼 (qióng), 123  
 January 一月/一月 (yī yuè), 67  
 jealous 嫉妒/嫉妒 (jí dù), 92  
 joy 歡樂/欢乐 (huan lè), 96  
 joyful 開心/开心 (kāi xīn), 130  
 joyous 樂/乐 (lè), 92  
 July 七月/七月 (qī yuè), 67  
 jump 跳/跳 (tiào), 87  
 June 六月/六月 (liù yuè), 68  
 just don't 才不/才不 (cái bù), 57  
 just 就/就 (jiù), 8, 59, 61, 71, 73, 95  
 just 才/才 (cái), 81  
 justice 義/义 (Yì), 134

Kangxi 康熙/康熙 (kāng xī), 8  
 kick out 趕走/赶走 (gǎn zǒu), 82  
 kick 踢/踢 (tī), 87  
 Kiki 奇奇/奇奇 (qí qí), 56  
 kind; loving 慈/慈 (cí), 136

kindness 仁慈/仁慈 (rén cí), 96  
 king 國王/国王 (guó wáng), 41, 61  
 King 王/王 (Wáng), 152  
 king 王/王 (Wáng), 132, 139  
 king 王/王 (wàng), 118, 119  
 kingfisher; emerald 翡/翡 (fěi), 137  
 kite 風箏/风筝 (fēng zhēng), 19  
 kitten 小貓/小猫 (xiǎo māo), 40  
 knee 膝/膝 (xī), 122  
 knife 刀/刀 (dāo), 3  
 know 知/知 (zhī), 81  
 know 認識/认识 (rèn shì), 79  
 knowledge 知/知 (zhī), 138

lake side 湖邊/湖边 (hú biān), 106  
 lake 湖/湖 (Hú), 134  
 lamp; lantern 燈/灯 (dēng), 134  
 land 陸/陆 (Lù), 132, 133  
 language 語/语 (yǔ), 42  
 language 語/语 (yǔ), 83  
 language 語言/语言 (yǔ yán), 23, 111  
 language(n) 語言, 20  
 last year 去年/去年 (qù nián), 66  
 last 最後/最后 (zuì hòu), 74  
 last 最後/最后 (zuì hòu), 89  
 late 遲/迟 (Chí), 132  
 lazy 懶惰/懒惰 (lǎn duò), 101  
 leaf 葉/叶 (Yè), 132  
 left side 左邊/左边 (zuǒ biān), 88  
 leg 腿/腿 (tuǐ), 61  
 legs 腿/腿 (tuǐ), 95  
 leisurely 悠閑/悠闲 (yōu xián), 60  
 leisurely 悠閑/悠閑 (yōu xián), 101  
 lesson 課/课 (kè), 34  
 let 讓/让 (ràng), 99  
 letter 信/信 (xìn), 32  
 life 生活/生活 (shēng huó), 71  
 light 輕/轻 (qīng), 35  
 like this 這樣/这样 (zhè yàng), 74  
 like this 這麼/这么 (zhè me), 38, 72  
 like 喜歡/喜欢 (xǐ huan), 47, 53  
 like 想/想 (xiǎng), 100  
 linear 線性/线性 (xiàn xìng), 144  
 lion 獅子/狮子 (shī zi), 34  
 listen to 聽著/听着 (tīng zhe),

83

listen 聽/听 (tīng), 47

listen 聽/听 (tīng), 83

listening comprehension  
聽力/听力 (tīng lì), 83

little finger 小指/小指 (xiǎo zhǐ), 121

little 小/小 (Xiǎo), 140

little 小/小 (xiǎo), 40, 42, 45, 59, 63, 64

little 小/小 (xiǎo), 89

live fish 活魚/活鱼 (huó yú), 120

location 位/位 (wèi), 34

lofty; outstanding 崢嶸 (zhēng), 136

lofty; stately 魏/魏 (Wèi), 132

lofty; stately; magnificent 魏/魏 (Wèi), 133

logic 推理/推理 (tuī lǐ), 144

long distance 千里/千里 (qiān lǐ), 125

long strip 條/条 (tiáo), 34

long time 長久/长久 (cháng jiǔ), 125

long 長/长 (cháng), 35

look at 看著/看着 (kàn zhe), 47, 48

loose 鬆/松 (sōng), 93

lose life 沒命/没命 (méi mìng), 59

lose 失去/失去 (shī qù), 69

lost 失喪/失丧 (shī sàng), 126

lotus 蓮/莲 (lián), 137

love 愛/爱 (ài), 22, 96

love 愛/爱 (ài), 129

love 愛/爱 (ài), 47

love 愛/爱 (ài), 130

love 熱愛/热爱 (rè ài), 96

lovely 嫵媚/婬媚 (chán jūan), 125

lucky 瑞/瑞 (ruì), 138

lucky 祺/祺 (qí), 138

luxuriant growth 薈/荟 (huì), 136

luxuriant vegetation 森/森 (sēn), 135, 140

Míng Dynasty 明/明 (Míng), 152

madder 茜/茜 (qiàn), 40

magnificent and clear  
宏亮/宏亮 (hóng liàng), 64

magnificent jade palace, 123

magnificent 宏/宏 (hóng), 134

magnificent 魏/魏 (Wèi), 138

maid 妮/妮 (nī), 140

main beam 棟/栋 (dòng), 31

majestic; respectable 儼/儼 (yǎn), 135

make 弄/弄 (nòng), 124

male phoenix 鳳/凤 (fèng), 136

Mama 媽媽/妈妈 (mā mā), 56, 100

manager 經理/经理 (jīng lǐ), 103

manners 禮貌/礼貌 (lǐ mào), 80, 81

many 多/多 (duō), 42

many 多/多 (duō), 128, 129

many 黎/黎 (Lí), 138

March 三月/三月 (sān yuè), 67

marquis 侯/侯 (Hóu), 131

master worker 師傅/师傅 (shī fù), 101

maternal grandmother  
外婆/外婆 (wài pó), 20

mathematics 數學/数学 (shù xué), 143, 144

matters 事/事 (shì), 97

May 五月/五月 (wǔ yuè), 68

me 我/我 (wǒ), 98, 99

medium 中/中 (zhōng), 152

melancholy 悶/闷 (mèn), 92

mercy; grace 恩惠/恩惠 (ēn huì), 126

merit; achievement 功/功 (gōng), 134

merits; honors 勳/勳 (xūn), 135

middle 中央/中央 (zhōng yāng), 44

might 威/威 (wēi), 141

military 武/武 (Wǔ), 132

mirror 鏡子/镜子 (jìng zi), 33

mister 先生/先生 (xiān shēng), 118, 119

misunderstanding 誤會/误会 (wù huì), 81

moist 潤/润 (rùn), 140

Mom 媽媽/妈妈 (mā ma), 106

monarch 君/君 (jūn), 139, 140

monarch's court 廷/廷 (tíng), 139

money 錢/钱 (Qián), 132

monophthongs(單元音), 15

monster 怪物/怪物 (guài wù), 57

mood 心情/心情 (xīn qíng), 93

moon 月/月 (yuè), 123, 124

moral character 心地/心地 (xīn dì), 91

more 愈/愈 (yù), 43, 73

more 越/越 (yuè), 43

morning 朝/朝 (zhāo), 136

morning; daybreak 晨/晨

(chén), 134

mother 媽/妈 (mā), 22

mother 媽媽/妈妈 (mā mā), 60

mother 媽媽/妈妈 (mā ma), 40

mother 母親/母亲 (mǔ qīn), 22

mountain song 嵩/嵩 (sōng), 135

mountain stream 溪/溪 (xī), 135

mountain stream 澗/涧 (jiàn), 136

mountain vapor 嵐/岚 (lán), 137

mountain 山/山 (shān), 3, 4

mountain 山/山 (shān), 135

mouse 老鼠/老鼠 (lǎo shǔ), 55

mouse 老鼠/老鼠 (lǎo shǔ), 89

mouth 口/口 (kǒu), 4, 33, 39, 93

mouth 口/口 (kǒu), 122

mouth 嘴/嘴 (zuǐ), 83

mouth 嘴巴/嘴巴 (zuǐ ba), 84

much 多/多 (duō), 70

much 許多/许多 (xǔ duō), 41

multiplication 乘法/乘法 (chéng fǎ), 146

multiply 乘/乘 (chéng), 146

mung beans 綠豆/绿豆 (lǜ dòu), 99, 100

muscle 筋/筋 (jīn), 105

music 樂/乐 (Yùe), 133

must 須/须 (Xū), 133

mutually 相/相 (xiāng), 96

my love 我愛/我爱 (wǒ ài), 128

my 我/我 (wǒ), 126, 129

my 我的/我的 (wǒ de), 22, 30, 71

my 我的/我的 (wǒ de), 120, 128, 129

mysterious; profound 奧/奥 (ào), 134

nail 丁/丁 (dīng), 3

narrow 窄/窄 (zhǎi), 35

nearby 附近/附近 (fù jìn), 106

nectar 花蜜/花蜜 (huā mì), 72

need 需要/需要 (xū yào), 47

neon light 霓虹/霓虹 (ní hóng), 128

nervous 緊張/紧张 (jǐn zhāng), 92

nevertheless 還是/还是 (hái shì), 39

new; fresh 新/新 (xīn), 135



newspaper 報紙/报纸 (bào zhǐ), 32, 37  
 next door 隔壁/隔壁 (gé bì), 69  
 next year 明年/明年 (míng nián), 66  
 nine 九/九 (jiǔ), 120  
 no matter 不管/不管 (bù guǎn), 129  
 no other than 就是/就是 (jiù shì), 41  
 no 沒/没 (méi), 40, 56, 72, 105  
 no 沒/没 (méi), 95  
 non-stop 不停/不停 (bù tíng), 100  
 nonstop 不停/不停 (bù tíng), 62, 63  
 nontonal(adj) 無聲的, 20  
 noon 午/午 (wǔ), 104, 106  
 nose 鼻/鼻 (bí), 62  
 nose 鼻/鼻 (bí), 122  
 not (have) 沒/没 (méi), 53, 54  
 not have 沒有/没有 (méi yǒu), 37, 57, 63, 64, 72, 102  
 not have 沒有/没有 (méi yǒu), 80  
 not only 不但/不但 (bú dàn), 39, 41, 69  
 not only 不但/不但 (bú dàn), 41  
 not only 不僅/不仅 (bù jǐn), 41  
 not permissible 不可/不可 (bù kě), 56  
 not permitted 不可/不可 (bù kě), 56  
 not yet 沒/没 (méi), 70  
 not 不/不 (bù), 36–39, 53–56, 74, 92, 99, 100, 102, 109  
 not 不/不 (bù), 23, 39, 42, 43, 53–56, 60–62, 64, 94, 98–100, 105  
 not 不/不 (bù), 59, 78, 81, 129  
 not 不/不 (bù), 80, 81, 84, 85, 124  
 not 沒/没 (méi), 63  
 not 沒/没 (méi), 80  
 not 莫/莫 (Mò), 133  
 not 非/非 (fēi), 56  
 noun 名詞/名词 (míng cí), 29, 110  
 November 十一月/十一月 (shí yī yuè), 68  
 now 今/今 (jīn), 126  
 now 現在/现在 (xiàn zài), 68  
 number theory 數論/数论 (shù lùn), 145  
 number 數/数 (shù), 144  
 number 號/号 (hào), 68, 69

numbness 麻/麻 (má), 22  
 numerous 黎/黎 (lí), 133  
 obtain 得/得 (dé), 126  
 October 十月/十月 (shí yuè), 67  
 octopus 章魚/章鱼 (zhāng yú), 59  
 of 之/之 (zhī), 126  
 of 把/把 (bǎ), 51  
 of 的/的 (de), 106  
 oil lamp 油燈/油灯 (yóu dēng), 34  
 old 老/老 (lǎo), 43, 69, 73  
 old 老/老 (lǎo), 118, 119  
 old 舊的/旧的 (jiù de), 37  
 on the contrary 相反/相反 (xiāng fǎn), 39  
 on time 準時/准时 (zhǔn shí), 70  
 on top of 上/上 (shàng), 8, 43  
 once 一次/一次 (yí cì), 56  
 once 一次/一次 (yí cì), 120  
 once 曾經/曾经 (céng jīng), 62  
 one (mw) 一頭/一头 (yì tóu), 44  
 one breath, 93  
 one day 一天/一天 (yī tiān), 45  
 one that 個/个 (ge), 62, 63  
 one 一/一 (yī), 84  
 one 一/一 (yī), 75  
 one 一/一 (yī), 35, 70, 74, 98, 104  
 one 一/一 (yī), 67  
 one 一/一 (yī), 43, 73, 75, 101  
 one 一/一 (yī), 93, 94  
 one 一/一 (yī), 84, 85, 120  
 one 一個/一个 (yí ge), 89  
 one's own 自己/自己 (zì jǐ), 43  
 only then 才/才 (cái), 74, 102  
 only 只/只 (zhǐ), 74  
 only 只/只 (zhǐ), 102  
 only 唯一/唯一 (wéi yī), 69  
 open 拓/拓 (tuò), 145  
 opposite 反/反 (fǎn), 56  
 or 還是/还是 (hái shì), 38  
 orchid 蘭/兰 (lán), 137  
 orderly 齊/齐 (qí), 139  
 ordinary 常/常 (cháng), 144  
 other people 別人/别人 (bié rén), 97  
 outside 外/外 (wài), 7  
 outstanding 杰/杰 (jié), 134  
 outstanding; remarkable 穎/颖 (yǐng), 138  
 outstandingly intelligent 篆/篆 (hào), 134  
 overcast 陰/阴 (yīn), 124

ox 牛/牛 (niú), 132  
 oxtail southern wood; re-spectful 蕭/萧 (xiāo), 132  
 palace 皇宮/皇宫 (huáng gōng), 106  
 parable; to explain 喻/喻 (yù), 133  
 paradise 樂園/乐园 (lè yuán), 130  
 paragraph 段/段 (duàn), 32  
 part 部/部 (bù), 31  
 partial order 偏序/偏序 (piān xù), 148  
 pass away 去世/去世 (qù shì), 69  
 past tense(過去式), 46  
 patience 耐心/耐心 (nài xīn), 96  
 patience 耐性/耐性 (nài xìng), 96, 97  
 pause 頓/顿 (dùn), 32  
 pavillion 閣/阁 (gé), 124  
 peace 凱/凯 (kǎi), 134  
 peace 和平/和平 (hé píng), 96  
 peace; serenity 寧/宁 (níng), 137  
 peaceful 安/安 (ān), 137, 140  
 peaceful 靖/靖 (jìng), 134  
 peaceful; serene 穆/穆 (mù), 133  
 peach 桃子/桃子 (táo zi), 73  
 pearl 珠/珠 (zhū), 137  
 pen 筆/笔 (bǐ), 151  
 people 人/人 (rén), 124, 125  
 perfect gem 瑜/瑜 (yú), 137  
 perfect 剛好/刚好 (gāng hǎo), 99  
 period (.) 句號/句号 (jù hào), 111  
 period of time 間/间 (jiān), 70  
 person 人/人 (rén), 3, 37  
 person 儿/儿 (ér), 3  
 personality 個性/个性 (gè xìng), 91  
 petty gain 便宜/便宜 (pián yí), 97  
 phone(n) 聲音, 20  
 phoneme(n) 音素/音位, 20  
 phonetic compound 形聲/形声 (xíng shēng), 3  
 phonetics(n) 語音系, 20  
 phrase 片語/片语 (piàn yǔ), 111  
 pictograph 象形/象形 (xiàng xíng), 3  
 pictograph(n) 象形文字, 20  
 picture 畫/画 (huà), 32  
 pillow 枕頭/枕头 (zhěn tóu), 8  
 pinyin 拼音/拼音 (pīn yīn), 18



place 處/处 (chù), 123  
 platform 台/台 (tái), 34  
 please 請/请 (qǐng), 80  
 pleased with oneself  
 得意/得意 (dé yì), 45  
 plum tree 李/李 (Lǐ), 140  
 plums 李/李 (Lǐ), 132  
 poetry 詩/诗 (shī), 138  
 police 警察/警察 (jǐng chá), 95  
 polite 客氣/客气 (kè qì), 81  
 politeness 禮貌/礼貌 (lǐ mào), 79  
 pond 池塘/池塘 (chí táng), 60  
 pool of water 汪/汪 (Wāng), 132  
 poplar 楊/杨 (Yáng), 133, 139  
 portion 份/份 (fèn), 32  
 possess 所有/所有 (sǒu yǒu), 130  
 potter's wheel 甄/甄 (zhēn), 138  
 pottery 陶/陶 (Táo), 133  
 power 力/力 (lì), 105  
 powerful 勁/劲 (jìng), 136  
 practical joke, 37  
 precious jade 瑤/瑶 (yáo), 137  
 precious stone 玉/玉 (Yù), 133  
 precious 寶貴/宝贵 (bǎo guì), 126  
 precious; rare 珍/珍 (zhēn), 137  
 prediction 預言/预言 (yù yán), 23  
 present tense(現在式), 46  
 present 現/现 (xiàn), 65  
 pretty 漂亮/漂亮 (piào liàng), 98, 99  
 prince 王子/王子 (wáng zǐ), 55, 57  
 prince 王子/王子 (wáng zǐ), 94  
 probability 機率/机率 (jī lǜ), 145  
 problem 問題/问题 (wèn tí), 80  
 professor 教授/教授 (jiào shòu), 103  
 profound 深/深 (shēn), 128  
 pronoun, 29  
 pronunciation 發音/发音 (fā yīn), 111  
 proof 據/据 (jù), 134  
 proper 正/正 (zhèng), 136  
 proper; good 昌/昌 (chāng), 134  
 property 性/性 (xìng), 148

prosperous 旺/旺 (wàng), 135  
 prosperous; abundant 隆/隆 (lóng), 135  
 proud 驕傲/骄傲 (jiāo ào), 97  
 provided that 只要/只要 (zhǐ yào), 38  
 prunes 梅/梅 (Méi), 133  
 pump 唧/唧 (jī), 6  
 punctuation 標點/标点 (biāo diǎn), 111  
 pure and white 瑯/瑯 (láng), 135  
 pure shadow 清影/清影 (qīng yǐng), 124  
 pure white silk 素/素 (sù), 137  
 pure 淨/淨 (jìng), 137  
 pure 潔/洁 (jié), 136  
 pure; clean; simple 淳/淳 (chún), 136  
 pure; virtuous 清/清 (qīng), 135  
 Qin Dynasty 秦/秦 (Qín), 132  
 quarter hour 刻/刻 (kè), 74  
 question mark 問號/问号 (wèn hào), 111  
 question 問題/问题 (wèn tí), 36  
 quiet; calm 閒/閒 (xián), 135  
 quiet; undisturbed 恬/恬 (tián), 137  
 quotation marks 引號/引号 (yǐn hào), 111  
 rabbit 兔/兔 (tù), 45, 64  
 rabbit 兔子/兔子 (tù zǐ), 43, 74, 95  
 radiance of daybreak 旭/旭 (xù), 135  
 radiant 暉/晖 (hūi), 134  
 radical 部首/部首 (bù shǒu), 8  
 rain 雨/雨 (yǔ), 138  
 raise 養/养 (yǎng), 118  
 ran 跑/跑 (pǎo), 95  
 real 實/实 (shí), 145  
 real 真/真 (zhēn), 56  
 really 實在/实在 (shí zài), 62  
 really 真/真 (zhēn), 42, 56  
 reason; logic 理/理 (lǐ), 135  
 reckless 胡/胡 (hú), 32, 98  
 red 紅/红 (hóng), 89  
 refined; gracious 嫻/嫻 (xián), 137  
 refined; polished 雅/雅 (yǎ), 137  
 reflexive 自反/自反 (zì fǎn), 148  
 relation 關係/关系 (gūan xī), 110

relation 關係/关系 (gūan xī), 80  
 relation 關係/关系 (gūan xī), 146, 148  
 relax 散心/散心 (sàn xīn), 105, 106  
 relaxed 輕鬆/轻松 (qīng sōng), 101  
 release 放走/放走 (fàng zǒu), 120  
 remarkable 傑/杰 (jié), 134  
 repeat 複/复 (fù), 144  
 residence of a high official 邸/邸 (Dǐ), 133  
 respectful; majestic 肅/肅 (Sù), 133  
 response 反應/反应 (fǎn yīng), 83  
 rest 休息/休息 (xiū xi), 105  
 reverential 龔/龚 (Gōng), 131  
 revolve 轉/转 (zhuǎn), 124  
 rhymes 韻/韵 (yùn), 137  
 rice 飯/饭 (fàn), 36  
 ride 乘/乘 (chéng), 123  
 ride 騎/骑 (qí), 87  
 right side 右邊/右边 (yòu biān), 88  
 right 右手/右手 (yòu hand), 121  
 right; fitting 宜/宜 (Yí), 133  
 rise and dance 起舞/起舞 (qǐ wǔ), 124  
 rise up 起來/起来 (qǐ lái), 93  
 river 川/川 (chūan), 134  
 river 江/江 (Jiāng), 131  
 road 路/路 (lù), 34, 44  
 road 路/路 (Lù), 133  
 road 道/道 (dào), 138  
 road; path 道/道 (dào), 134  
 rocks 石/石 (Shí), 132  
 romantic; tender 旖/旖 (yǐ), 137  
 roof beam 梁/梁 (liáng), 139  
 roof 宇/宇 (yǔ), 140  
 room 間/间 (jiān), 33  
 rooster 公雞/公鸡 (gōng jī), 7, 43, 64, 73  
 root; source 本/本 (běn), 137  
 roots 根/根 (gēn), 32  
 rose 玫/玫 (méi), 137  
 round 圓/圆 (yuán), 124  
 rugged 嶙/嶙 (lín), 135  
 run 跑/跑 (pǎo), 61, 63  
 run 跑/跑 (pǎo), 87  
 sad 難過/难过 (nán guò), 91, 93  
 sadness 悲/悲 (bēi), 124  
 saw 看了/看了 (kàn le), 95  
 say 說/说 (shuō), 47  
 say 說/说 (shuō), 81  
 scared 嚇/吓 (xià), 74, 95

scarlet;crimson 緋/緋 (fēi), 137  
 scenery 景/景 (jǐng), 133  
 scholar 士/士 (shì), 135  
 scorched 焦/焦 (jiāo), 133  
 script(n) 字母, 20  
 season 季/季 (jì), 133  
 see 看/看 (kàn), 47, 54, 93  
 see 看到/看到 (kàn dào), 22, 48, 56, 63  
 self 自/自 (zì), 83, 84  
 semantic derivation  
 轉注/轉注 (zhuǎn zhù), 3  
 semicolon 分號/分號 (fēn hào), 111  
 sentence 句子/句子 (jù zì), 111  
 sentiment 情/情 (qíng), 97, 99, 100  
 September 九月/九月 (jiǔ yuè), 67  
 set 集合/集合 (jí hé), 146  
 seven 七/七 (qī), 83, 120  
 several days 幾天/幾天 (jǐ tiān), 62  
 shade 蔭/蔭 (yìn), 136  
 shadow 影子/影子 (yǐng zi), 63  
 shape 樣/樣 (yàng), 93  
 share 共/共 (gòng), 125  
 she 她/她 (tā), 22, 30, 55, 72, 75, 93  
 shell 貝殼/貝殼 (bèi ké), 33  
 shells 貝/貝 (Bèi), 132  
 shield 干/干 (gān), 4  
 shining 煥/煥 (huàn), 134  
 shopping cart, 31  
 shore 岸/岸 (àn), 75  
 short 短/短 (duǎn), 35  
 short 矮/矮 (ǎi), 35  
 should 應該/應該 (yīng gāi), 42  
 should 該/該 (gāi), 81  
 shoulder 肩膀/肩膀 (jiān bǎng), 122  
 shovel 鏟子/鏟子 (chǎn zi), 31  
 side 身邊/身邊 (shēn biān), 129  
 side 邊/邊 (biān), 73–75  
 sigh 歎/歎 (tàn), 42  
 silk 絲/絲 (sī), 137  
 similar to 猶/猶 (Yóu), 133  
 similar to 何似/何似 (hé sì), 124  
 sin; crime 辜/辜 (Gū), 133  
 since 開始/開始 (kāi shǐ), 71  
 sincere 懇/懇 (kěn), 136  
 sincere 摯/摯 (Zhì), 133  
 sincere 誠懇/誠懇 (chéng kěn), 96

sincere; honest 誠/誠 (chéng), 134  
 sincerity 款/款 (kǎn), 136  
 sing 唱/唱 (chàng), 56  
 single 隻/只 (zhī), 35  
 situation 情況/情況 (qíng kuàng), 46  
 six 六/六 (liù), 67  
 six 六/六 (liù), 68  
 six 六/六 (liù), 120  
 skill 技/技 (jì), 101  
 skin; fur 皮/皮 (pí), 133  
 sky 天/天 (tiān), 7, 66, 72  
 slanting 偏/偏 (piān), 145  
 sleep 眠/眠 (mián), 124  
 sleep 睡覺/睡覺 (shuì jiào), 53, 104  
 sleep 覺/覺 (jiào), 104–106  
 sleepless 不眠/不眠 (bù mián), 129  
 slender; charming 窈/窈 (tiǎo), 137  
 slice 片/片 (piàn), 34  
 slightly 偏/偏 (piān), 56  
 slip of paper 紙條/紙條 (zhǐ tiáo), 35  
 slowly; gently; calmly 徐/徐 (Xú), 132  
 small cup 盞/盞 (zhǎn), 34  
 small head 小頭/小頭 (xiǎo tóu), 22  
 small table 几/几 (jī), 3  
 small 小/小 (xiǎo), 35  
 small 小/小 (xiǎo), 97  
 small 小/小 (xiǎo), 129  
 smart; clever 黠/黠 (xiá), 135  
 smell 聞/聞 (wén), 47  
 smoothly; fluently 暢/暢 (chàng), 134  
 snore 打呼/打呼 (dǎ hū), 104  
 snow 雪/雪 (xuě), 137  
 so as to 才能/才能 (cái néng), 38, 39  
 so many 多少/多少 (duō shǎo), 129  
 so 那麼/那麼 (nà me), 57  
 soft and tender 柔/柔 (róu), 137  
 soil 土/土 (tǔ), 102  
 solemn 莊/莊 (Zhūang), 133  
 solemn 鄭/鄭 (Zhèng), 132, 139  
 son 子/子 (zǐ), 4  
 son 子/子 (zǐ), 8  
 song 歌/歌 (gē), 22  
 sorrow 悲傷/悲傷 (bēi shāng), 92  
 sound 聲/聲 (shēng), 94  
 sound 聲音/聲音 (shēng yīn), 7  
 sound 響/響 (xiǎng), 7

sound(n) 聲音, 20  
 sound; musical note 音/音 (yīn), 137  
 south 南/南 (Nán), 133  
 space 空間/空間 (kōng jiān), 147  
 speak 說/說 (shuō), 98, 99  
 speak 說/說 (shuō), 79  
 speak 講/講 (jiǎng), 84, 85  
 spear; lance 戈/戈 (Gē), 132  
 specialist 家/家 (jiā), 103  
 speech 言/言 (yán), 83  
 splendid hall 玉宇/玉宇 (yù yǔ), 123  
 spring 春/春 (chūn), 136  
 spring; fountain 泉/泉 (Quán), 133  
 square 方/方 (Fāng), 131  
 squirrel 松鼠/松鼠 (sōng shǔ), 71  
 stable; steady 穩/穩 (wěn), 135  
 stable; sturdy 固/固 (gù), 134  
 stake 弋/弋 (yì), 4  
 star 星/星 (xīng), 140  
 steep; lofty 矗/矗 (chù), 134  
 stem 本/本 (běn), 31  
 stern; strict 嚴/嚴 (Yán), 132  
 still 仍然/仍然 (réng rán), 38  
 still 還/還 (hái), 38–41, 61, 70  
 still 還是/還是 (hái shì), 62  
 stomach 肚子/肚子 (dù zi), 7, 39, 62  
 stone 石/石 (shí), 139  
 stones 石頭/石頭 (shí tóu), 129  
 stool 几/几 (jī), 4  
 stop 停/停 (tíng), 72  
 stop 停/停 (tíng), 87  
 strawberry 草莓/草莓 (cǎo méi), 33  
 strength 力/力 (lì), 95  
 strength 力/力 (lì), 135  
 strength 長/長 (cháng), 101  
 stress/accent 重音/重音 (zhòng yīn), 111  
 strong and durable 堅/堅 (jiān), 134  
 strong; vigorous 邁/邁 (qiú), 135  
 student 學生/學生 (xué shēng), 103  
 study 學/學 (xué), 144, 145  
 stuffy nose 鼻塞/鼻塞 (bí sāi), 22  
 style 格/格 (gé), 110  
 style 體/體 (tǐ), 152  
 subject 主詞/主詞 (zhǔ cí), 45  
 subject 對象/對象 (duì xiàng), 69

substitute 代/代 (dài), 29, 110  
 substitute 代/代 (dài), 143, 144  
 subtract 減/減 (jiǎn), 146  
 subtraction 減法/減法 (jiǎn fǎ), 146  
 success 成功/成功 (chéng gōng), 74, 102  
 successfully grabbed, 55  
 successfully hit, 55  
 successfully perform the action, 55  
 sudden pouring rain 瀑/瀑 (bào), 136  
 sudden thunder 霆/霆 (tíng), 139  
 suddenly 忽然/忽然 (hū rán), 71  
 suddenly 突然/突然 (tú rán), 35, 71  
 summer 夏/夏 (Xià), 132  
 summer 夏/夏 (xià), 138  
 surprised 驚訝/驚訝 (jīng yà), 92  
 suspicious 可疑/可疑 (kě yí), 128  
 swan 天鵝/天鵝 (tiān é), 35  
 swan 鴻/鴻 (hóng), 134  
 sweat 汗/汗 (hàn), 102  
 sweet 甘/甘 (gān), 99, 100  
 sweet 甘甜/甘甜 (gān tián), 126  
 sweet-smelling 香/香 (xiāng), 137  
 sweet; agreeable 甜/甜 (tián), 137  
 swift 捷/捷 (jié), 134  
 swing 鞦韆/鞦韆 (qiū qiān), 43  
 swollen 腫/腫 (zhǒng), 62  
 syllable(n) 音節, 20  
 symbol 符號/符号 (fú hào), 18  
 symmetric 對稱/对称 (duì chèn), 148  
 tail 尾/尾 (wěi), 34  
 tail 尾/尾 (Wèi), 133  
 take 拿/拿 (ná), 56  
 talk 講話/讲话 (jiǎng huà), 47  
 tall evergreen tree 柯/柯 (Kē), 133  
 tall 高/高 (gāo), 35  
 tall 高/高 (gāo), 128  
 tanned leather 韋/韦 (Wéi), 132  
 teacher 老師/老师 (lǎo shī), 103  
 television 電視/电视 (diàn shì), 34  
 ten thousand 萬/万 (Wàn),

132  
 ten 十/十 (shí), 120  
 tense (grammar) 時態/时态 (shí tài), 112  
 thanks 謝謝/谢谢 (xiè xiè), 80, 81  
 that is all 而已/而已 (ér yǐ), 84  
 that 得/得 (dé), 102  
 that 得/得 (de), 102  
 that 是/是 (shì), 126  
 that 那/那 (nà), 130  
 the appearance of a clear stream 瀏/浏 (liú), 136  
 the flower of the leek 菁/菁 (jīng), 136  
 the graceful look of a flowing robe 袁/袁 (Yúan), 132, 138  
 the Han people 漢/汉 (Hàn), 152  
 the law 法/法 (fǎ), 111  
 the look of a flowing gown 裴/裴 (Péi), 133  
 the moon 月/月 (yuè), 65, 66  
 the moon 月/月 (yuè), 137  
 the people 民/民 (mín), 135  
 the present 今/今 (jīn), 65  
 the sky 天/天 (tiān), 65, 66  
 the string of a musical instrument 絃/絃 (xián), 137  
 the Tang Dynasty 唐/唐 (Táng), 132  
 the top 頂/顶 (dǐng), 134  
 their 他們/他们 (tā mén), 30  
 them 他們/他们 (tā mén), 30, 41  
 them 她們/她们 (tā mén), 30  
 them 它們/它们 (tā mén), 30  
 theory 論/论 (lùn), 145  
 there 那裡/那里 (nà lǐ), 118  
 thereupon 便/便 (biàn), 38  
 these 此/此 (cǐ), 124  
 these 這/这 (zhè), 62  
 these 這些/这些 (zhè xiē), 35  
 they 他們/他们 (tā mén), 48, 106  
 they 他們/他们 (tā mén), 43  
 they 他們/他们 (tā mén), 81  
 thief 小偷/小偷 (xiǎo tōu), 22  
 thin light silk 羅/罗 (Lúo), 132  
 thin 瘦/瘦 (shòu), 35, 44  
 things 東西/东西 (dōng xī), 59  
 think 思/思 (sī), 98  
 think 想/想 (xiǎng), 98  
 thirsty 渴/渴 (kě), 39, 40, 62  
 this 這/这 (zhè), 7, 65, 74  
 this 這/这 (zhè), 56  
 this 這個/这个 (zhè ge), 106  
 three 三/三 (sān), 67  
 three 三/三 (sān), 120  
 through 通/通 (tōng), 98

thunder 雷/雷 (Léi), 132  
 thunderstruck, 94  
 thus 於是/于是 (yú shì), 38  
 tiger 虎/虎 (hǔ), 78  
 time to leave 別時/别时 (bié shí), 124  
 time 時/时 (shí), 7  
 time 時/时 (shí), 73, 74  
 time 時/时 (shí), 126  
 time 時候/时候 (shí hòu), 71  
 time 時間/时间 (shí jiān), 32  
 time 時間/时间 (shí jiān), 65, 102  
 tin 錫/锡 (xí), 139  
 tinkling of jade 珊/珊 (shān), 137, 140  
 tinklings of jade 玲/玲 (líng), 137  
 tiny 微/微 (wēi), 143  
 tired 疲/疲 (pí), 105  
 tired 累/累 (lèi), 105  
 tired 累了/累了 (lèi le), 91  
 to abhor 厭惡/厌恶 (yàn wù), 94  
 to advance 晉/晋 (jìn), 134  
 to advance 進/进 (jìn), 134  
 to agree; to help 協/协 (xié), 135  
 to announce 宣/宣 (Xūan), 133  
 to answer 答/答 (dá), 84  
 to appear 出現/出现 (chū xiàn), 72  
 to arrange 陳/陈 (Chén), 131  
 to arrive at 之/之 (zhī), 139  
 to arrive at 到達/到达 (dào dá), 130  
 to arrive 到/到 (dào), 75  
 to ascend 陟/陟 (zhì), 136  
 to ascend; to climb 登/登 (dēng), 134  
 to ask oneself 自問/自问 (zì wèn), 84  
 to ask 問/问 (wèn), 60  
 to assist 佐/佐 (zǔ), 138  
 to assist; to support 贊/赞 (zàn), 136  
 to be able to 可/可 (Kě), 134  
 to be at work 上班/上班 (shàng bān), 40  
 to be in charge of 負責/负责 (fù zé), 31  
 to be in love 戀/恋 (liàn), 137  
 to be startled 驚/惊 (jīng), 94  
 to be willing 願意/愿意 (yuàn yì), 99  
 to beat 打/打 (dǎ), 105  
 to become aware of; to realize 悟/悟 (wù), 135  
 to believe 信/信 (xìn), 126  
 to block 擋/挡 (dǎng), 129

to blunder 胡/胡 (Hú), 131  
 to borrow 借/借 (jiè), 81  
 to bow the head 頷/頷 (fǔ), 139  
 to breathe on 哈/哈 (hā), 6  
 to bud; to shoot forth 萌/萌 (méng), 135  
 to build up 建立/建立 (jiàn lì), 42  
 to call out 呼喊/呼喊 (hū hǎn), 128  
 to call 叫/叫 (jiào), 7, 43, 62, 73  
 to carry away 抬走/抬走 (tái zǒu), 89  
 to carry on 繼/继 (jì), 134  
 to carry out 施/施 (Shī), 132  
 to catch a cold 感冒/感冒 (gǎn mào), 7  
 to cause 讓/让 (ràng), 128  
 to cease 住/住 (zhù), 84  
 to chat 聊天/聊天 (liáo tiān), 69  
 to chat 聊天/聊天 (liáo tiān), 82  
 to chat 談天/谈天 (tán tiān), 82, 83  
 to chatter 囉/啰 (luō), 6  
 to climb 爬/爬 (pá), 71, 73, 75  
 to collapse 垮/垮 (kuǎ), 105  
 to come down 下來/下来 (xià lái), 51  
 to come in 進來/进来 (jìn lái), 60  
 to come loose 散/散 (sàn), 105, 106  
 to come out 出來/出来 (chū lái), 73  
 to come over 過來/过来 (guò lái), 89  
 to come 來/来 (lái), 42, 43, 48, 60  
 to commend 誇獎/夸奖 (kūa jiǎng), 41  
 to compare 比/比 (bǐ), 43, 73  
 to compete 塞/塞 (sài), 135  
 to complete 畢/毕 (Bì), 132  
 to congratulate 賀/贺 (Hè), 131  
 to connect 連/连 (Lián), 133  
 to consult 請教/请教 (qǐng jiào), 37  
 to continue; to renew 續/续 (xù), 138  
 to correct 匡/匡 (Kuāng), 133  
 to cover 搗/搗 (wǔ), 84  
 to cross 渡/渡 (dù), 134  
 to crow 叫/叫 (jiào), 64  
 to crumble 頹/颓 (Túi), 133  
 to cry 哭/哭 (kū), 4  
 to cut down 砍掉/砍掉 (kǎn

diào), 73  
 to dance 舞/舞 (wǔ), 137  
 to dance 舞動/舞动 (wǔ dòng), 128  
 to dare; bold 敢/敢 (gǎn), 136  
 to decide 決定/决定 (jué dìng), 72  
 to defend 捍/捍 (hàn), 134  
 to describe 形容/形容 (xíng róng), 35  
 to detest 嫌/嫌 (xián), 92  
 to discover 發現/发现 (fā xiàn), 40, 74  
 to discuss 討論/讨论 (tǎo lùn), 82  
 to dislike 討厭/讨厌 (tǎo yàn), 94  
 to divine 卜/卜 (Bǔ), 132  
 to do 作/作 (zuò), 37, 46  
 to do 做/做 (zuò), 42, 74  
 to drag 拖/拖 (tuō), 74  
 to draw 畫/画 (huà), 51  
 to eat 吃/吃 (chī), 73  
 to emerge 現/现 (xiàn), 135  
 to encourage; graceful 邵/邵 (shào), 137  
 to endure 禁/禁 (jīn), 136  
 to endure 耐/耐 (nài), 135  
 to enjoy 享受/享受 (xiǎng shòu), 106  
 to enter 入/入 (rù), 3  
 to enter 進/进 (jìn), 55  
 to enter 進/进 (jìn), 81  
 to examine; to help 相/相 (xiàng), 138  
 to exceed 超/超 (chāo), 134  
 to excel 軼/轶 (yì), 136  
 to excel 駕/驾 (jià), 136  
 to exchange 易/易 (Yì), 133  
 to exert 賣力/卖力 (mài lì), 64  
 to exhale 呼/呼 (hū), 6, 8, 70, 92  
 to exist 在/在 (zài), 65  
 to exit 出/出 (chū), 42, 48, 95  
 to expand 擴/扩 (kuò), 136  
 to face 向/向 (Xiàng), 133  
 to fall asleep 睡著/睡着 (shuì zháo), 8  
 to fall 摔/摔 (shuāi), 62  
 to fear 怕/怕 (pà), 74, 102  
 to feel bitter 尤/尤 (Yóu), 133  
 to feel 感/感 (gǎn), 42  
 to fill 盈/盈 (yíng), 138  
 to find 找到/找到 (zhǎo dào), 56  
 to fix 定/定 (dìng), 99, 109  
 to flee 逃/逃 (táo), 74  
 to float away 飄走/飘走 (piāo zǒu), 129  
 to flow; mobile 流/流 (liú), 135

to fly 飛/飞 (fēi), 137  
 to form an opinion 下/下 (xià), 99  
 to freeze 凍/冻 (dòng), 61  
 to gallop 馳/驰 (chí), 140  
 to get injured 受傷/受伤 (shòu shāng), 74, 102  
 to get out 出去/出去 (chū qù), 82  
 to get 得/得 (dé), 55, 61  
 to get 得/得 (dé), 94  
 to give birth 生/生 (shēng), 131, 140  
 to give 給/给 (gěi), 41  
 to go beyond 越/越 (Yüè), 133  
 to go over 過去/过去 (guò qù), 89  
 to go 去/去 (qù), 4, 40, 55, 60  
 to go 去/去 (qù), 89  
 to govern 尹/尹 (Yǐn), 132  
 to guard 保/保 (bǎo), 134  
 to have 擁有/拥有 (yǒng yǒu), 129  
 to have 有/有 (yǒu), 81  
 to hear 聞/闻 (Wén), 133  
 to help 助/助 (zhù), 136  
 to hide 躲/躲 (duǒ), 74  
 to hit 打/打 (dǎ), 104  
 to hold fast 維/维 (wéi), 135  
 to hold in awe 敬畏/敬畏 (jìng wèi), 126  
 to increase 增/增 (zēng), 136  
 to increase 添/添 (tiān), 135  
 to increase 益/益 (yì), 136  
 to join 連接/连接 (lián jiē), 110  
 to kill 劉/刘 (Liú), 132  
 to knock at the door 敲門/敲门 (qiāo mén), 7  
 to knock 叩/叩 (kòu), 6, 7  
 to know 悉/悉 (xī), 135  
 to laugh 笑/笑 (xiào), 63  
 to laugh 笑/笑 (xiào), 83  
 to lay out 陳/陈 (Chén), 131, 140  
 to layout 陳/陈 (Chén), 140  
 to lead to 通到/通到 (tōng dào), 89  
 to lead; to rescue 援/援 (yuán), 136  
 to lean 靠/靠 (kào), 8  
 to leave 出走/出走 (chū zǒu), 72  
 to leave 離/离 (lí), 72  
 to like 喜歡/喜欢 (xǐ huān), 43, 94  
 to like 喜歡/喜欢 (xǐ huān), 56  
 to loathe 討厭/讨厌 (tǎo yàn), 31, 92



to loathe 討厭/讨厌 (tǎo yàn), 89  
 to long for; to adore 慕/慕 (mù), 135  
 to look about 探望/探望 (tàn wàng), 43, 47, 48  
 to look around 張望/张望 (zhāng wàng), 47, 48  
 to look at 看/看 (kàn), 43, 59, 75  
 to look down from above 臨/临 (lín), 134  
 to lose 失去/失去 (shī qù), 97  
 to love 愛/爱 (ài), 136  
 to love 樂/乐 (yào), 137  
 to make clear 闡/阐 (chǎn), 134  
 to make use of 假借/假借 (jiě jià), 3  
 to make 使/使 (shǐ), 126  
 to marvel 驚嘆/惊叹 (jīng tàn), 111  
 to meet together 會兒/会儿 (huǐ), 77  
 to meet; enlightened; wise 晤/晤 (wù), 135  
 to miss; to long for 念/念 (niàn), 137  
 to move away 搬走/搬走 (bān zǒu), 89  
 to move 動/动 (dòng), 110  
 to move 動/动 (dòng), 98  
 to move 移動/移动 (yí dòng), 88  
 to murmur 咕/咕 (gū), 5, 7  
 to negate 否定/否定 (fǒu dīng), 53  
 to obtain 得/得 (dé), 126  
 to offend 干/干 (gān), 153  
 to open 打開/打开 (dǎ kāi), 40  
 to operate 操作/操作 (cāo zuò), 46  
 to overcome 克/克 (kè), 135  
 to overcome 剋/克 (kè), 136  
 to oversee 督/督 (dū), 132  
 to oversee 董/董 (Dǒng), 131  
 to pardon 赦免/赦免 (shè miǎn), 126  
 to pass through 經過/经过 (jīng guò), 75  
 to pass 過/过 (guò), 72, 104  
 to pass 過/过 (guò), 81, 134  
 to pass 過著/过着 (guò zhe), 71  
 to permit 可/可 (kě), 56  
 to pick 采/采 (cǎi), 105  
 to place at 置/置 (zhì), 110  
 to plan 計較/计较 (jì jiào), 97  
 to play a joke on 捉弄/捉弄 (zhuō nòng), 42

to plug 杜/杜 (Dù), 131  
 to possess 所有/所有 (sǒu yǒu), 110  
 to pray 祈/祈 (qí), 135  
 to preside 宰/宰 (Zǎi), 133  
 to progress 迪/迪 (dí), 134  
 to protect 保/保 (bǎo), 4  
 to protect 保護/保护 (bǎo hù), 129  
 to protect 守/守 (shǒu), 135  
 to provide 贍/贍 (shàn), 135  
 to pull out 拔/拔 (bá), 61, 95  
 to pull 拉/拉 (lā), 129  
 to pursue 趕/赶 (gǎn), 136  
 to push 推/推 (tuī), 31  
 to put up a good fight 奮戰/奋战 (fèn zhàn), 75  
 to quarrel 吵架/吵架 (chǎo jià), 82  
 to raise hand 舉手/举手 (jǔ shǒu), 88  
 to raise 揚/扬 (Yáng), 132  
 to raise 舉/举 (jǔ), 88  
 to reach 到/到 (dào), 55, 60, 74  
 to receive with respect 奉/奉 (fèng), 134  
 to receive 受/受 (shòu), 62  
 to receive 納/纳 (Nà), 133  
 to receive 蒙/蒙 (méng), 126  
 to release 放鬆/放松 (fàng sōng), 130  
 to rely on 賴/赖 (Lài), 132  
 to repeatedly urge 叮嚀/叮咛 (dīng níng), 83  
 to request 問/问 (wèn), 81  
 to request 請/请 (qǐng), 81  
 to resemble 像/像 (xiàng), 57  
 to resolve 決定/决定 (jué dìng), 42  
 to return home 回家/回家 (hú jiā), 40  
 to rise high 屹/屹 (yì), 135  
 to rise in force 奮/奋 (fèn), 134  
 to rise 起/起 (qǐ), 80  
 to rise 起/起 (qǐ), 71  
 to rise 起來/起来 (qǐ lái), 60  
 to rise; to thrive 興/兴 (xīng), 135  
 to roar 吼/吼 (hǒu), 6  
 to roll 滾/滚 (gǔn), 82  
 to satisfy; to fulfill 遂/遂 (suì), 135  
 to save; to deliver 拯/拯 (zhěng), 136  
 to say 說/说 (shuō), 56, 98  
 to say 說/说 (shuō), 82, 83  
 to scare 嚇/吓 (xià), 39, 61, 95  
 to scold 罵/骂 (mà), 22, 41

to scrape 刮/刮 (guā), 71  
 to seal 封/封 (fēng), 32  
 to see 看/看 (kàn), 47, 99  
 to see 看/看 (kàn), 128  
 to see 看見/看见 (kàn jiàn), 126  
 to see 見/见 (jiàn), 3, 4, 41, 59, 153  
 to see 見/见 (jiàn), 77  
 to seem 好像/好像 (hǎo xiàng), 7  
 to seize 佔/佔 (zhàn), 97  
 to shake 發抖/发抖 (fā dǒu), 61, 95  
 to shelter 廕/廕 (yìn), 136  
 to shephard 牧/牧 (mù), 135  
 to shine upon 照/照 (zhào), 138  
 to shine; to dazzle 耀/耀 (yào), 138  
 to shiver 發抖/发抖 (fā dǒu), 61  
 to shout 喊叫/喊叫 (hǎn jiào), 82  
 to show understanding for 體諒/体谅 (tǐ liàng), 98  
 to show 表現/表现 (biǎo xiàn), 81  
 to sigh 嘆氣/叹气 (tàn qì), 94  
 to sing 唱歌/唱歌 (chàng gē), 83  
 to sing 歌唱/歌唱 (gē chàng), 103  
 to sing; to hum 詠/咏 (yǒng), 137  
 to sit down 坐下/坐下 (zù xià), 88  
 to slack 偷懶/偷懶 (tōu lǎn), 101  
 to sleep 睡/睡 (shuì), 54, 104–106  
 to smile 笑/笑 (xiào), 4  
 to sneer 嗤/嗤 (chī), 5  
 to spread 張/张 (zhāng), 35  
 to spread 張/张 (Zhāng), 132  
 to stand 站/站 (zhàn), 44, 87  
 to stand 起來/起来 (qǐ lái), 87  
 to start 起/起 (qǐ), 7  
 to start 開始/开始 (kāi shǐ), 71  
 to steal 偷走/偷走 (tōu zǒu), 71  
 to stick into 插/插 (chā), 129  
 to stick out 伸出/伸出 (shēn chū), 43, 48  
 to sting 叮/叮 (dīng), 5  
 to strive 努力/努力 (nǔ lì), 75, 101  
 to struggle 鬥/斗 (dòu), 134  
 to study; to toil 肄/肄 (yì), 136  
 to suck 吸食/吸食 (xī shí), 72

to support 扶/扶 (fú), 134  
 to surpass 邁/迈 (mài), 135  
 to sustain 肩/肩 (jiān), 136  
 to swim 游/游 (yóu), 60  
 to swing 盪/荡 (dàng), 43  
 to take away in the mouth  
 叼走/叼走 (diāo zǒu), 89  
 to take heed 留心/留心 (liú  
 xīn), 128  
 to take offense 介意/介意 (jiè  
 yì), 80, 81  
 to take 拿/拿 (ná), 73  
 to talk about 談論/谈论 (tán  
 lùn), 82  
 to talk indistinctly 囁/叽 (jī), 6  
 to talk 講話/讲话 (jiǎng huà),  
 82  
 to talk 譚/谭 (Tán), 132  
 to test 考驗/考验 (kǎo yàn),  
 128  
 to thank 感謝/感谢 (gǎn xiè),  
 41  
 to thank 謝/谢 (Xiè), 132, 139  
 to thank 謝/谢 (xiè), 78  
 to the extent of 得/得 (de), 7,  
 62  
 to the extent of 的/的 (de), 39  
 to the extent that 得/得 (dé),  
 128  
 to the extent that 得/得 (de),  
 61, 62, 70  
 to the extent 得/得 (de), 61  
 to think so 猜想/猜想 (cǎi  
 xiǎng), 98  
 to think 思/思 (sī), 138  
 to think 想/想 (xiǎng), 97, 98  
 to think; to meditate 惟/惟  
 (wéi), 135  
 to tremble 抖/抖 (dǒu), 62  
 to turn about 轉身/转身  
 (zhuǎn shēn), 87  
 to turn around and look 顧/顾  
 (Gù), 131  
 to turn one's head 回頭/回头  
 (húi tóu), 75  
 to turn 轉/转 (zhuǎn), 89  
 to understand 了/了 (liǎo),  
 61, 94  
 to understand 懂/懂 (dǒng),  
 136  
 to undo 解開/解开 (jiě kāi),  
 81  
 to unfold 舒/舒 (Shū), 135  
 to unite efforts 協力/协力 (xié  
 lì), 102  
 to uproot 拔/拔 (bá), 22  
 to use all one's strength  
 全力/全力 (quán lì), 105  
 to wait for 待/待 (dài), 66  
 to wait for 待/待 (dài), 77  
 to wait 等/等 (děng), 75

to wait/not until 等/等 (děng),  
 75  
 to wake up 醒來/醒来 (xǐng  
 lái), 104  
 to walk 行/行 (xíng), 138  
 to walk 走/走 (zǒu), 78  
 to want 要/要 (yào), 51  
 to watch; to hope 望/望  
 (wàng), 138  
 to wear 戴/戴 (Dài), 131  
 to win 贏/赢 (yíng), 136  
 to wish 願意/愿意 (yuàn yì),  
 47  
 to wrap 包/包 (Bāo), 132  
 to yawn 呵欠/呵欠 (hē qiàn),  
 104  
 to yawn 哈欠/哈欠 (hā qiàn),  
 104  
 Today she has a competition  
 (bǐ sài), 22  
 Today she has a stuffy nose  
 (bí sāi), 22  
 today 今夕/今夕 (jīn xī), 123  
 today 今天/今天 (jīn tiān), 22,  
 68, 69  
 toe 腳趾/脚趾 (jiǎo zhǐ), 122  
 together 一起/一起 (yì qǐ),  
 43  
 together 合/合 (hé), 124  
 together 胥/胥 (xū), 139  
 Tom 湯姆/汤姆 (tāng mǔ),  
 41, 57, 71  
 tomato 番茄/番茄 (fān qié),  
 33  
 tomorrow 明天/明天 (míng  
 tiān), 77  
 tonal(adj) 有聲的, 20  
 tone(n) 聲, 20  
 tongue 舌/舌 (shé), 83  
 too 不勝/不胜 (bù shēng),  
 123  
 toothbrush 牙刷/牙刷 (yá  
 shuā), 35  
 topology 拓撲/拓扑 (tuò pù),  
 147  
 tough 結/结 (jiē), 134  
 toward 往/往 (wǎng), 88  
 towel 毛巾/毛巾 (máo jīn), 34  
 towering 嶄/嶄 (zhǎn), 136  
 town 郭/郭 (Gūo), 131  
 traffic 交通/交通 (jiāo tōng),  
 95  
 tranquility 安寧/安宁 (ān  
 níng), 106  
 tranquility 靜/静 (jìng), 137  
 transitive 傳遞/传递 (chuán  
 dì), 148  
 tree trunk 幹/干 (gàn), 153  
 tree 樹/树 (shù), 33, 71, 73  
 trees 森/森 (sēn), 4  
 triangle 三角/三角 (sān jiǎo),

145  
 triumphant strains 凱/凯  
 (kǎi), 138  
 true 真/真 (zhēn), 126  
 trumpet 叭/叭 (bā), 5  
 tube; pipe 管/管 (Gǎn), 133  
 tune 調/调 (diào), 56  
 two 二/二 (èr), 67  
 two 二/二 (èr), 120

ultimately 根本/根本 (gēn  
 běn), 55  
 unable 不會/不会 (bú huì),  
 130  
 uncle 叔叔/叔叔 (shú shu),  
 62, 63  
 understand 了/了 (liǎo), 62  
 understand 懂/懂 (dǒng), 23  
 understanding 會意/会意  
 (huì yì), 3  
 unexpectedly 居然/居然 (jū  
 rán), 38  
 unhappily and unwillingly,  
 100  
 unselfish 慷/慷 (kāng), 134  
 until 直到/直到 (zhí dào), 72  
 unusual 奇異/奇异 (qí yì),  
 126  
 up 上/上 (shàng), 66, 75  
 upright 介/介 (jiè), 134  
 urgent 急/急 (jí), 70  
 urging 催著/催着 (cūi zhe),  
 100  
 usual 平常/平常 (píng  
 cháng), 41

valley 谷/谷 (gǔ), 134  
 value 值/值 (zhí), 144  
 valued 貴/贵 (guì), 139  
 variable 變數/变数 (biàn  
 shù), 144  
 vast; boundless 茫/茫  
 (máng), 135  
 vehicle 車子/车子 (chē zi), 31  
 verb 動詞/动词 (dòng cí), 45,  
 110  
 verbose 嚕/嚕 (lū), 6, 8  
 verbosity 詹/詹 (Zhān), 133  
 very big 太/太 (Tài), 133  
 very fine silk cloth 綾/绫  
 (líng), 137  
 very good 好好/好好 (hǎo  
 hǎo), 106  
 very 好/好 (hǎo), 45, 60  
 very 很/很 (hěn), 104  
 very 很/很 (hěn), 78, 79, 128,  
 129  
 vexed 苦惱/苦恼 (kǔ nǎo), 91  
 vigor 勁/劲 (jìn), 134  
 virtue 德/德 (dé), 134  
 vocabulary 字彙/字汇 (zì  
 huì), 111

voiced(adj) 濁音的, 20  
 voiceless(adj) 清音的, 20  
 vowel(n) 母音, 20

walk 走/走 (zǒu), 73  
 walk 走/走 (zǒu), 87  
 walked 走到/走到 (zǒu dào), 106  
 want 要/要 (yào), 36, 41, 47, 53, 54, 56, 97, 100  
 want 要/要 (yào), 81, 129  
 war 戰/战 (Zhàn), 133  
 warm 溫/温 (Wēn), 133  
 warmhearted 熱心/热心 (rè xīn), 96  
 wash 洗/洗 (xǐ), 99, 100  
 wash 洗/洗 (xǐ), 64  
 water flowing between stones 磷/磷 (lín), 135  
 water 水/水 (shuǐ), 3, 60  
 water 水/水 (Shuǐ), 133  
 water 潘/潘 (Pān), 132  
 water's edge 涯/涯 (yá), 135  
 way 辦法/办法 (bàn fā), 56  
 we 我們/我们 (wǒ mén), 29  
 we 我們/我们 (wǒ mén), 38  
 wealth 財/财 (cái), 134  
 wealthy 富/富 (fù), 134  
 wealthy 闊/阔 (kuò), 136  
 week 星期/星期 (xīng qī), 65–68  
 week 裡拜/里拜 (lǐ bài), 66, 67  
 welcome 歡迎/欢迎 (hūan yíng), 81  
 well 井/井 (jǐng), 33  
 well-being 幸/幸 (xìng), 138  
 went 去過/去过 (qù guò), 54  
 wet 濕/湿 (shī), 40  
 what year 何年/何年 (hé nián), 123  
 what 什麼/什么 (shé me), 36, 56, 103  
 what 什麼/什么 (shé me), 78, 79, 81, 120  
 wheat; barley; oats 麥/麦 (Mài), 133  
 wheeled devices 車/车 (chē), 31  
 when 幾時/几时 (jǐ shí), 123  
 where 哪裡/哪里 (nǎ lǐ), 36  
 where 哪裡/哪里 (nǎ lǐ), 89  
 which 哪個/哪个 (nǎi ge), 36  
 which 哪個/哪个 (nǎi ge), 120

while 當/当 (dāng), 73  
 whip 鞭子/鞭子 (biān zi), 32  
 white and bright 皓/皓 (hào), 134  
 white jasmine 莉/莉 (lì), 137  
 white 白/白 (bái), 64  
 white 白/白 (bái), 45  
 white 白/白 (Bái), 131  
 white 白/白 (bái), 139  
 who 誰/谁 (shéi), 36  
 whole body 一身/一身 (yī shēn), 95  
 why, 120  
 why 何事/何事 (hé shì), 124  
 wide 寬/宽 (kuān), 35  
 width of cloth 幅/幅 (fú), 32  
 Wilbur 韋得/韦得 (Wéi dé), 141  
 wild goose 雁/雁 (yàn), 137  
 wild 野/野 (yě), 42  
 will 將/将 (jiāng), 130  
 will 要/要 (yào), 56  
 willing 願/愿 (yuàn), 99  
 willing 願/愿 (yuàn), 99, 100  
 willow tree 柳/柳 (Liǔ), 133  
 willow twig 柳條/柳条 (liǔ tiáo), 32  
 wind 風/风 (fēng), 123, 129  
 wind; breeze 風/风 (fēng), 137  
 wings; to help 翼/翼 (yì), 136  
 Winnie 惟妮/惟妮 (wéi ní), 100  
 winter 冬天/冬天 (dōng tiān), 61  
 wisdom 慧/慧 (huì), 140  
 wise and clever 睿/睿 (ruì), 135  
 wise 慧/慧 (huì), 136  
 witch 巫婆/巫婆 (wū pó), 20  
 witch; wizard 巫/巫 (Wū), 133  
 with one heart 同心/同心 (tóng xīn), 102  
 with 和/和 (hàn), 56  
 without 無/无 (wú), 105  
 without 無/无 (wú), 124  
 wolf 狼/狼 (láng), 42, 61–63, 95  
 wolves 狼/狼 (láng), 42  
 wolves 野狼/野狼 (yě láng), 38  
 woman 女/女 (nǚ), 4  
 wonder if 不知/不知 (bù zhī),

123  
 wonderful; intriguing; ingenious 妙/妙 (miào), 137  
 wood/tree 木/木 (mù), 4  
 word 詞/词 (cí), 35, 109, 110  
 work 工/工 (gōng), 4  
 work 工作/工作 (gōng zuò), 74, 101–103  
 worker 工人/工人 (gōng rén), 103  
 world of man 人間/人间 (rén jiān), 124  
 worried 擔心/担心 (dān xīn), 92  
 would like to 想/想 (xiǎng), 41  
 would like to 想要/想要 (xiǎng yào), 100  
 wow 哇/哇 (wā), 42  
 wow 哇/哇 (wā), 60  
 Wright 萊特/莱特 (Lái tè), 62  
 Wright 萊特/莱特 (Lái tè), 141

xylophone 木琴/木琴 (mù qín), 22

year 年/年 (Nián), 133  
 years of age 歲/岁 (suì), 71  
 yellow 黃/黄 (Húang), 131  
 yellow 黃/黄 (huáng), 7  
 yesterday 昨/昨 (zúo), 66  
 yesterday 昨天/昨天 (zúo tiān), 39  
 you 你/你 (nǐ), 81, 89, 128–130  
 you 你/你 (nǐ), 29, 31, 36, 37, 41, 48, 53, 54, 93, 98, 99, 103, 105  
 you 你/你 (nǐ), 77–79, 81, 82, 84, 128, 129  
 you 你們/你们 (nǐ mén), 29, 30  
 you 爾/尔 (ěr), 141  
 your heart 你心/你心 (nǐ xīn), 129  
 your 你的/你的 (nǐ de), 23, 30, 93

zebra 斑馬/斑马 (bān mǎ), 34  
 Zhou Dynasty 周/周 (Zhōu), 132  
 ZhuYin 注音/注音 (zhù yīn), 18, 152





## GENERAL INDEX

(verb) around, [51](#)  
(verb) it down, [51](#)  
L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, [149](#)  
T<sub>E</sub>X-Gyre Project, [150](#)  
X<sub>Y</sub>L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, [149](#)  
\_\_\_\_\_ for your life, [63](#)  
x , [99](#)

A Pronouncing Dictionary of  
American English, [15](#)  
Adverb introduced using 個,  
[62](#)  
Adverbial phrase using  
連...都沒有, [63](#)  
Adverbial phrases, [61](#)  
Adverbial phrases using 的,  
[60](#)  
Adverbs, [59](#)  
again, [8](#)  
alphabet (n) 字母, [20](#)  
Amazing Grace, [126](#)  
and, [10](#), [39](#)  
Anti-civilities, [81](#)  
antisymmetric, [147](#)  
Apologies, [80](#)  
Arithmetic, [145](#)  
arrive, [10](#)  
arrow, [9](#)  
Assorted scripts, [2](#)  
Avant-Garde, [150](#)  
axe, [9](#)

badger, [10](#)  
bamboo, [9](#)  
Bamileke-Dschang, [46](#)  
bean, [10](#)  
BEEP Pronouncing Dictio-  
nary, [21](#)  
big, [9](#)  
bird, [10](#)  
bitter, [10](#)  
black, [10](#)

blood, [10](#)  
blue, [10](#)  
boat, [10](#)  
body, [10](#)  
bolt of cloth, [9](#)  
bone, [10](#)  
Boolean question sentences,  
[36](#)  
BoPoMoFo, [18](#)  
Both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, [40](#)  
both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, [40](#)  
bow, [9](#)  
branch, [9](#)  
Branches of mathematics,  
[143](#)  
Bright Moon, [123](#)  
bristle, [9](#)  
brush, [10](#)

Can you speak?, [84](#)  
Carnegie Mellon University  
Pronouncing Dictionary, [15](#)  
cart, [10](#)  
cauldron, [10](#)  
cave, [9](#)  
Character, [95](#), [97](#)  
character, [3](#)  
character (n) 字位, [20](#)  
child, [9](#)  
city, [10](#)  
Civilities, [79](#), [81](#)  
clan, [9](#)  
claw, [9](#)  
cliff, [8](#)  
clothes, [10](#)  
color, [10](#)  
Common adjectives describ-  
ing size, [35](#)  
Common verbs, [46](#), [82](#)  
comparable, [147](#)  
compare, [9](#)  
Complex from primitive, [4](#)

Conjunction and, [40](#)  
Conjunctions, [38](#)  
consonant (n) 子音, [20](#)  
consonants, [13](#), [15](#)  
Contrasting conjunctions, [39](#),  
[39](#)  
corpse, [9](#)  
cover, [8](#)  
cow, [9](#)

day by day, [73](#)  
Days of the week, [66](#)  
death, [9](#)  
deer, [10](#)  
definitions  
    comparable, [147](#)  
    incomparable, [147](#)  
    partial ordering relation,  
[147](#)

    partially ordered set,  
[147](#)  
dipper, [9](#)  
dish, [9](#)  
distinguish, [10](#)  
divination, [8](#)  
do not, [9](#)  
dog, [9](#)  
door, [9](#)  
dot, [8](#)  
dotted cliff, [9](#)  
dotted tent, [9](#)  
double x, [9](#)  
down box, [8](#)  
dragon, [11](#)  
drum, [10](#)  
dry, [9](#)  
Dyirbal, [46](#)

ear, [10](#)  
earth, [9](#)  
eat, [10](#)  
ee, [17](#)

Egyptian Hieroglyphs, **2**  
 eight, **8**  
 either \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_, **40, 40**  
 embroidery, **10**  
 Emotions, **91, 92**  
 Emphasizing negation using 並, **57**  
 enclosure, **9**  
 enter, **8**  
 equivalence relations, **146**  
 even, **11**  
 evening, **9**  
 examples  
     (verb) around, **51**  
     (verb) it down, **51**  
     \_\_\_\_\_ for your life, **63**  
     Adverb introduced using 個, **62**  
     Adverbial phrase using 連...都沒有, **63**  
     Adverbial phrases, **61**  
     Adverbial phrases using 的, **60**  
     Assorted scripts, **2**  
     Both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, **40**  
     Common adjectives describing size, **35**  
     Complex from primitive, **4**  
     Conjunction and, **40**  
     Conjunctions, **38**  
     Contrasting conjunctions, **39**  
     day by day, **73**  
     Egyptian Hieroglyphs, **2**  
     either \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_, **40**  
     Emphasizing negation using 並, **57**  
     for the purpose of, **42**  
     from time to time, **72**  
     I myself, **30**  
     in the process of, **71**  
     Intent, **99**  
     Interjections, **42**  
     More more, **43**  
     no explicit verb or conjunction, **45**  
     No matter how, **64**  
     not only \_\_\_\_\_ but also \_\_\_\_\_, **41**  
     Only then, **74, 75**  
     Onomatopoeias, **7**  
     Perfect aspect, **49**  
     pictographs, **3**  
     plural form using double 位, **35**  
     quantifiers for time, **75**  
     Sentences using *almost*, **59**

Simile, **44**  
 simple negation, **53**  
 Simultaneous action, **73**  
 since, **71**  
 suddenly, **71**  
 The “a grapheme, **1**  
 The 山 grapheme, **1**  
 U.S. National Park Service, **1**  
     verb tenses, **46**  
     verb-subject structure, **45**  
     What time is it?, **68**  
 Examples of common verbs, **47**  
 Expressions, **83**  
 Expressions of emotion, **94**  
 eye, **9**  
 face, **10**  
 falling tone, **21, 22**  
 fang, **9**  
 father, **9**  
 Fear, **94**  
 feather, **10**  
 field, **9**  
 fight, **10**  
 fire, **9**  
 first tone, **21, 22**  
 fish, **10**  
 flute, **11**  
 fly, **10**  
 FontLab Studio, **150**  
 foot, **10**  
 for the purpose of, **42**  
 fourth tone, **21, 22**  
 fragrant, **10**  
 frog, **10**  
 from time to time, **72**  
 functions, **146**  
     TECKit mapping, **150, 152**  
 fur, **9**  
 future tense, **46**  
 gate, **10**  
 gender, **29**  
 ghost, **10**  
 glyph, **1**  
 glyph (n) 字形, **20**  
 glyphs, **1, 2**  
 GnuFree Sans-Serif font family, **150**  
 go, **9**  
 go slowly, **9**  
 gold, **10**  
 Golden Hind, **153**  
 grain, **9**  
 Grammar terminology, **110**  
 grammatical case, **29**  
 grammatical number, **29**  
 grapheme, **1, 2**

grapheme (n) 字位, **20**  
 graphemes, **1**  
 grass, **10**  
 Gutenberg Press, **149**  
 had, **49**  
 hair, **10**  
 halberd, **9**  
 half tree trunk, **9**  
 hand, **9**  
 have, **49**  
 head, **10**  
 Head and Shoulders, **122**  
 heart, **9**  
 Hello and goodbye, **77**  
 hemp, **10**  
 Heros, **150**  
 hiding enclosure, **8**  
 high tone, **21, 22**  
 hook, **8**  
 horn, **10**  
 horse, **10**  
 Housman, Alfred Edward, **vii**  
 How are you?, **78**  
 I myself, **30**  
 ice, **8**  
 ideograph (n) 形意文字, **20**  
 ideographic, **2**  
 in the process of, **71**  
 inch, **9**  
 incomparable, **147**  
 insect, **10**  
 Intent, **99**  
 intent, **99**  
 Interjections, **42**  
 International Organization for Standardization, **18**  
 International Phoenetic Alphabet broad transcription, **23**  
 International Phoenetic Alphabet narrow transcription, **23**  
 International Phonetic Alphabet, **15**  
 Introductions, **78**  
 IPA, **15**  
 ir, **17**  
 jade, **9**  
 jar, **9**  
 Jobs, **103**  
 Kangxi radicals, **8**  
 knife, **8**  
 Koro, **13**  
 lack, **9**  
 lame, **9**  
 language (n) 語言, **20**  
 leaf, **10**

- leather, 10  
 leek, 10  
 legs, 8  
 lid, 8  
 life, 9  
 Like/dislike, 94  
 line, 8  
 Liquid Crystal, 150  
 logic operators, 146  
 logogram, 1  
 logographic, 3  
 logographs, 1  
 long, 10  
 long stride, 9  
 low tone, 21, 22
- man, 8  
 Mandarin Phonetic Symbols, 18  
 Mandarin Phonetic Symbols I, 18  
 many-to-one, 153  
 mathematics, 143  
     branches, 143  
 measure words, 31  
 meat, 10  
 melon, 9  
 millet, 10  
 minister, 10  
 Miscellaneous, 70  
 Miscellaneous Question words, 37  
 Months of the year, 67  
 moon, 9  
 More more, 43  
 morning, 10  
 mortar, 10  
 mound, 10  
 mountain, 9  
 mouth, 9  
 MW, 31
- names, 131  
 Negative character traits, 96  
 net, 9  
 neutral tone, 22  
 no explicit verb or conjunction, 45  
 No matter how, 64  
 no tone, 22  
 non-, 53  
 nontonal (adj) 無聲的, 20  
 nose, 11  
 not, 9, 53  
 not only \_\_\_\_\_, but also \_\_\_\_\_, 41  
 not only \_\_\_\_\_ but also \_\_\_\_\_, 41  
 Noto Sans CJK, 151  
 number, 46  
 Numbers, 113
- Occupations, 103  
 oh, 17  
 old, 10  
 Old McDonald, 118  
 On the move examples, 88  
 On the move sentences, 87  
 On the move words, 87  
 one, 8  
 one that, 62  
 One two three fish, 120  
 one-to-many, 153  
 oneself, 9  
 Only then, 74, 75  
 Onomatopoeias, 7  
 onomatopoeias, 5  
 open box, 8  
 oppose, 10  
 or not, 36  
 order relations, 146  
 ordered set, 147  
 ordering relation, 147
- partial ordering relation, 147  
 partially ordered set, 147  
 Parts of a day, 68  
 Parts of speech, 109  
 past tense, 46  
 perfect, 50, 51  
 Perfect aspect, 49  
 perfect progressive, 50, 51  
 Personal pronouns, 29  
 personal pronouns, 29  
 phone (n) 聲音, 20  
 phoneme, 13  
 phoneme (n) 音素/音位, 20  
 phonemes, 13, 15  
 phones, 13  
 phonetic, 2  
 phonetics (n) 語音系, 20  
 phonograms, 1  
 phonographs, 1  
 pictograph (n) 象形文字, 20  
 pictographs, 3, 3  
 pig, 10  
 plow, 10  
 plural, 46  
 plural form using double 位, 35  
 power, 8  
 present tense, 46  
 private, 8  
 pro-gressive, 50, 51  
 profound, 9  
 progressive, 50  
 properties
  - future tense, 46
  - ideographic, 2
  - logographic, 3
  - many-to-one, 153
  - one-to-many, 153
  - past tense, 46
  - phonetic, 2
- plural, 46  
 present tense, 46  
 sans-serif, 150, 151  
 serif, 151  
 simplified, 131  
 singular, 46  
 traditional, 131  
 pstricks, 149  
 Punctuation, 111
- quantifier, 31  
 quantifiers for countable nouns, 31  
 quantifiers for time, 75, 75  
 Question sentences, 37  
 Question words, 36  
 quotes
  - Housman, Alfred Edward, vii
  - Russell, Bertrand, vii
  - Stravinsky, Igor, vii
- radical, 8  
 rain, 10  
 rat, 10  
 red, 10  
 reflexive, 147  
 Relation properties, 148  
 relations, 146  
 rice, 9  
 right open box, 8  
 rising tone, 21, 22  
 river, 9  
 roof, 9  
 Rosetta Stone, 1  
 run, 10  
 Russell, Bertrand, vii
- sacrificial wine, 10  
 salt, 10  
 sans-serif, 150, 151  
 say, 9  
 scholar, 9  
 script, 2, 9  
 script (n) 字母, 20  
 seal, 8  
 second, 8  
 second tone, 21, 22  
 see, 10  
 self, 10  
 Sentences using *almost*, 59  
 serif, 151  
 set inclusion relations, 146  
 set operations, 146  
 Sets, 146  
 sets, 146  
 sheep, 9  
 shell, 10  
 shoot, 9  
 short tailed bird, 10  
 short thread, 9  
 sickness, 9

silk, 9  
 Simile, 44, 44  
 simple, 50, 51  
 simple negation, 53  
 simplified, 131  
 simplified Chinese, 3  
 Simultaneous action, 73  
 since, 71  
 singular, 46  
 slash, 8  
 slave, 10  
 Sleep and rest, 104  
 slice, 9  
 small, 9  
 snout, 9  
 sound, 10  
 sound (n) 聲音, 20  
 spear, 9  
 speech, 10  
 spirit, 9  
 spoon, 8  
 sprout, 9  
 square, 9  
 stand, 9  
 steam, 9  
 step, 9  
 stone, 9  
 stop, 9  
 stopping, 10  
 Stravinsky, Igor, vii  
 structures  
     pictographs, 3  
     Simile, 44  
 suddenly, 71  
 sun, 9  
 sweet, 9  
 syllable (n) 音節, 20


table, 8  
 Taking things away, 89  
 tall, 10  
 tanned leather, 10  
 TECKit mapping, 150, 152  
 ten, 8  
 Tense, 111  
 tense, 46  
 The “a grapheme, 1  
 The 山 grapheme, 1  
 third tone, 21, 22  
 Thought processes, 98  
 tiger, 10  
 tile, 9  
 Time, 65  
 to get, 61  
 to the extent that, 61  
 tonal (adj) 有聲的, 20  
 tone (n) 聲, 20  
 tongue, 10  
 tooth, 11  
 Topological spaces, 146  
 tortoise, 11  
 track, 9  
 traditional, 131  
 traditional Chinese, 3  
 transcription, 15  
 transitive, 147  
 tree, 9  
 tripod, 10  
 turban, 9  
 two, 8  
 two hands, 9  
 Types of relations, 148  
  
 U.S. National Park Service,  
 1, 1

uh, 17  
 un-, 53  
 use, 9  
  
 valley, 10  
 verb, 46  
 verb tenses, 46  
 verb **not** verb, 36  
 verb-subject structure, 45  
 village, 10  
 voiced (adj) 濁音的, 20  
 voiceless (adj) 清音的, 20  
 vowel (n) 母音, 20  
 vowels, 13, 15  
  
 walk, 10  
 walk enclosure, 10  
 water, 9  
 weapon, 9  
 west, 10  
 What do you think?, 98  
 What time is it?, 68  
 wheat, 10  
 white, 9  
 wind, 10  
 wine, 10  
 woman, 9  
 Work, 101, 102  
 work, 9  
 Work example sentence, 102  
 work expressions, 101  
 wrap, 8, 9  
 wrong, 10  
  
 yellow, 10  
 You are my Flower, 128  
  
 ZhuYin, 18

## License

This document is provided under the terms of the [Creative Commons](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/4.0/) license **CC BY-NC-ND 4.0**.  
 For an exact statement of the license, see

<https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/4.0/legalcode>

The icon  appearing throughout this document is based on one that was once at

<https://creativecommons.org/>

where it was stated, “Except where otherwise noted, content on this site is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license.”



...last page ...please stop reading ...

